

E

178

.2

M148

# THE MCKINLEY BINDERS

For use in connection with any loose-leaf system  
of note-taking.

MCKINLEY PUBLISHING CO.,

1619-1621 Ranstead Street, - Philadelphia, Pa.

Student's Name \_\_\_\_\_

Class \_\_\_\_\_

School \_\_\_\_\_

Subject \_\_\_\_\_



Class \_\_\_\_\_

Book \_\_\_\_\_

Copyright No. \_\_\_\_\_

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

# ILLUSTRATED TOPICS FOR AMERICAN HISTORY

ARRANGED BY

ALBERT E. MCKINLEY, Ph. D.

PUBLISHED BY

MCKINLEY PUBLISHING COMPANY

PHILADELPHIA, PA.

\$ 0.75  
©CL327937



# Topic U 1. Physical Basis of American History.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

1. Physical Features of North America.
  - a) Shape and Coast Line; principal indentations: West Indian Islands.
  - b) Mountains of North America.
    - 1) The Appalachians.
    - 2) The Cordillera: The Rockies. Sierra Nevada, Cascade.
  - c) Drainage of United States.
    - 1) Atlantic Coast.
    - 2) Central Valley.
    - 3) Valley of the St. Lawrence and Great Lakes.
    - 4) Plateau Region.
    - 5) Pacific Coast.
  - d) Climate.
    - 1) Isothermal lines.
    - 2) Rainfall.
    - 3) Comparison with climate of same latitude in Europe.
    - 4) Effect of climate upon Europeans.
  - e) Accessibility of Country.
    - 1) Atlantic Coast shut off by Alleghenies.
    - 2) Significance of Valley of St. Lawrence.
    - 3) Mississippi Basin.
    - 4) Western arid lands.
    - 5) Pacific Coast accessible only from Mexico.
2. Resources.
  - a) Character of soil and agricultural advantages.
    - 1) Atlantic coastal plain.
    - 2) Piedmont region.
    - 3) Great Mississippi Plain.
    - 4) "Great American Desert."
    - 5) Pacific Coast.
  - b) Material Resources.
    - 1) Forest area; original and present; kinds of usable timber.
    - 2) Location of principal metals, coal, and minerals.
    - 3) Fur-bearing animals; importance in American history.
    - 4) The buffalo, and deer.
    - 5) The fisheries.
3. Commercial Advantages.
  - a) Location with reference to Western Europe.
  - b) River systems as an aid to internal and foreign commerce.
  - c) Principal Indian portages.
  - d) Principal harbors on: Atlantic Coast. Gulf Coast, Pacific Coast.
4. Influence of Geographic Conditions upon American History.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Ashley, 1-11; Channing, 1-16; Hart, 17-25; Montgomery, 31-32, 42-43.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, *Economic History*, 1-16; Conan, *Industrial History*, 4-7; Fisher, *Colonial Era*, ch. 1; Mill, *International Geography*, ch. 37, 38, 39; Thwaites, *The Colonies*, 1-7.

For Topical Study.—

1. Brigham, *Geographic Influences*, ch. 1-3; Doyle, *English Colonies*, I, ch. 2; Farrand, *Basis of American History*, ch. 1-2; Semple, *American History and Its Geographic Conditions*; Shaler, *Man and Nature in America*; Shaler, U. S. I, ch. 1-3, 5-6.

2. Brigham, ch. 4-10; Farrand, ch. 3-4; Semple; Shaler, *Man and Nature in America*; Shaler, U. S. I, ch. 7-10.

3. Brigham, ch. 4, 11; Doyle, *English Colonies*, I, p. 6-8; Shaler, U. S. I, ch. 10.

Source References.—Hart, *Source Book*, 29-32.

The following selections have been chosen to show the natural environment of the early settlers in America. The first is a description of the Middle Atlantic region, taken from a remonstrance sent to Holland by the Dutch settlers of New Amsterdam. The second is the earliest description we possess of the buffalo; the description should be compared with the pictures presented with this topic. The other extracts are quotations from a large body of colonial legislation dealing with the wild beasts which infested the country around the settlements.

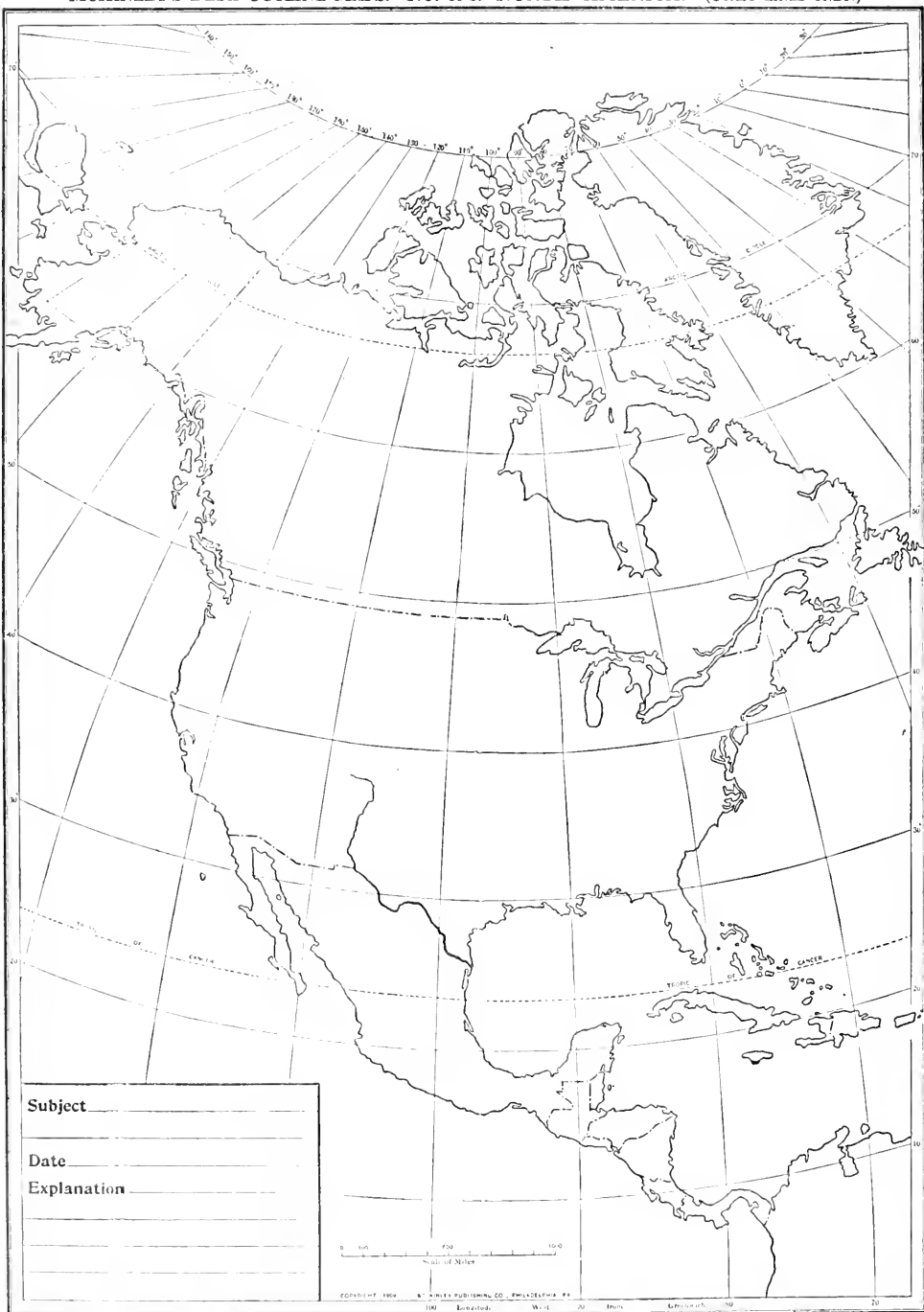
The land of itself is fertile, and capable of being entirely cultivated by an abundance of people, were it judiciously divided according to circumstances. The climate here is pleasant, and more temperate than in Netherland. The winds are changeable and blow from all points, but generally from the Southwest and Northwest. The summer furnishes the first of these, the winter the latter, which sometimes blows very sharply. . . . The Coast is generally clean and sandy; the Foreland doubles or is broken into Islands.

The Country generally is in many places hilly, with some high Mountains, likewise many very fine Flats and Maize lands, together with extensive Valleys, some of which are salt, others again are fresh; all very good Meadows. With the exception of the Maize lands, flats and valleys, which have few or no trees and could with little labor be converted into good tillage land, the soil is commonly covered with all sorts of timber, standing, however, without order as in other wildernesses.

The Seasons here are about the same as in Netherland, but the summer is warmer and begins more suddenly; the winter is cold, and far in the interior, or towards the most northern part, colder than in Netherland; 'tis likewise subject to a great deal of snow which also remains a long time, far in the interior, however, fully 3, 4 to 5 months on the ground; but near the Seacoast it is quickly dissolved by the Southerly wind. . . . It produces several kinds of timber, suitable for the construction of houses and ships, be they large or small, consisting of various sorts of oak, . . . various sorts of nut timber, such as oil nut, large and small; hickory, also large and small. . . . Chestnuts, as in Netherland, but they grow wild without regularity; three sorts of Beeches, . . . ax-handle wood, two sorts of canoe wood, ash, birch, pine, lathwood, *Imberen* or wild cedar, linden, alder, willow, thorn, elder, with divers other species. . . .

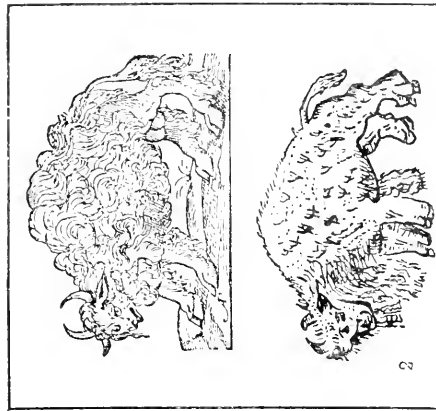
The fruits which the country naturally produces consist chiefly of acorns, some of them very sweet, nuts of various sorts, chestnuts, beechnuts, but not many, mulberries, plums, medlars, wild cherries and black currants, gooseberries, abundance of hazel nuts, small apples, a great abundance of strawberries throughout the entire country with considerable other fruits and roots of which the Indians make use. . . . Almost the whole country, as well the forests as the maize lands and flats, is full of vines, but principally—as if they had been planted there—around and along the banks of the brooks, streams and rivers which course and flow in abundance very conveniently and agreeably all through the land. The grapes are of many varieties; some white, some blue, some very fleshy and fit only to make raisins of; some again are juicy, some very large, others on the contrary small; their juice is pleasant and some of it white, like French or Rhenish Wine; that of others a very deep red; . . . the vines run far up the trees and are shaded by their leaves, so that the grapes are slow in ripening

(Continued on Page 4.)



## Map Work for Topic U 1.

Show on map the mountain systems, principal rivers and economic areas.



# EARLY EUROPEAN IDEAS OF AMERICAN ANIMALS.

Nos. 1, 3 and 4 are from old Dutch prints.

No. 2. Early sketches of the buffalo. The upper one is from Thorel's *Les Singularitez de la France Antarctique*, 1538; the lower sketch is from a Spanish drawing made about 1599; both reproduced by permission of Houghton, Mifflin and Co., from Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America*, II, 188, 189.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

and a little sour, but were cultivation and knowledge applied here, doubtless as fine wines would then be made as in any other wine-growing countries. . . .

The Wild animals here consist principally of lions [panthers], but they are few; bears, of which there are many; elks, a great number of deer, some of which are entirely white and others wholly black, but the latter are very rare. The Indians say that the white deer have a great retinue of other deer, by which they are highly esteemed, beloved and honored, and that it is quite the contrary with regard to those that are black. There are, besides, divers other large animals in the interior, but they are unknown to Christians; also wolves, but dangerous only to small cattle; likewise beavers, otters, fishers, catamounts, foxes, racoons, minks, hares, muskrats about as large as cats, martens and squirrels, some of which can even fly; there are, besides, woodchucks and divers other small animals, but for the most part, as we are informed, unknown to the Christians.

The country is in no wise deprived of its share of birds, for there are found great numbers of birds of prey, such as: two varieties of Eagles. . . . Also Hawks, Sakers, Sparrow-hawks, Duck-hawks, Chicken-hawks and various other sorts, all birds of prey, and capable of being trained and used for falconry, though some of them differ somewhat in shape from those in Netherland. Here is, also, a bird of a white color with a head like a cat's, and a body like a big owl. We know no name for it in Dutch [Great Horned Owl]. . . . The other land birds consist mostly of Turkeys, the same as in Netherland, but wild, and best and plenteist in winter; also various sorts of Partridges, some smaller, some larger, than in Netherland; Plover, wood and water Snipe, Pheasants, Heath-hens, also Cranes, Herons, Bitherns, multitudes of Pigeons closely resembling wood pigeons, but a little smaller; likewise Quails, Merlins, Thrushes, Sand-pipers. . . . There are also other small birds, some of which sing, but the names of most of them are unknown to us, and would also take too long to enumerate.

Different sorts of water fowl likewise are found there, which are all very good and fit to eat; such as Swans, . . . three species of Geese, . . . Ducks of various sorts, Widgeons, Divers, Coots, Spoonbills and several other kinds. . . .

The river Fish here is almost the same as in Netherland, and consists of Salmon, Sturgeon, Striped-bass, Drum-fish, Shad, Carp, Perch, Pike, Trout, Roach, Bull-heads, Suckers, Sun-fish, Eels, Nine-eyes or lampreys, but much more abundant and larger than in Netherland; there are various other species of fish, of which we know not the names.

In the salt water are found Cod-fish, Shell-fish, Weak-fish, Herring, Mackerel, Thorn-backs, Flounders, Plaice, Sheeps-heads, Black-fish, Sharks, . . . and divers others, together with Lobsters, Crabs, Conchs, from which the Indians make white and black wampum, abundance of oysters and mussels, with many other similar sorts of shell fish resembling each other, with the names of which we are not acquainted. There are, also, both sea and land tortoises.

The venomous reptiles found there, consist chiefly of Adders and Lizards, but they do little or no harm; there are various sorts of snakes, but not dangerous; if they possibly can, they retreat before people (else they are usually killed) except the rattle-snake, which has a rattle on the tail, wherewith it makes a very loud noise when-

ever it is angry, or intends to bite; it grows a joint longer every year. This snake is very malignant and not inclined to retreat before a man or other creature. Whoever is bit by one runs great risk of his life, if not immediately attended to; but the best of it is, they are not numerous; and the true *Serpentaria* grows spontaneously here, which is very highly prized by the Indians, as being an unfailing cure. . . .

*Documents Relating to the Colonial History of New York*, Vol. 1, pp. 275-278. Van der Donck's Remonstrance of New Netherland, July 28, 1649.

Now that I wish to describe the appearance of the bulls, it is to be noticed first that there was not one of the horses that did not take flight when he saw them first, for they have a narrow, short face, the brow two palms across from eye to eye, the eyes sticking out at the side, so that, when they are running, they can see who is following them. They have very long beards, like goats, and when they are running they throw their heads back with the beard dragging on the ground. There is a sort of girdle around the middle of the body. The hair is very woolly, like a sheep's, very fine, and in front of the girdle the hair is very long and rough like a lion's. They have a great hump, like a camel's. The horns are short and thick, so that they are not seen much above the hair. In May they change the hair in the middle of the body for a down, which makes perfect lions of them. They rub against the small trees in the little ravines to shed their hair, and they continue this until only the down is left, as a snake changes his skin. They have a short tail, with a bunch of hair at the end. When they run they carry it erect like a scorpion. . . .—From Winship's translation of Castaneda's account of Coronado's expedition, *Bureau of Ethnology Report*, 1892-93, Part I, p. 542.

It is enacted by the Court that all the Townes w<sup>thin</sup> the Gou<sup>ern</sup>ment shall make woofe trapps and bayte them and looke vnto them dayly vpon the penalty of X<sup>s</sup> a trap that shalbe neglected. the number that eich Towne is to make is as followeth.

Plymouth five Duxborough five Scituate foure Sandwich three Taunton two Boonestable three Yarmouth three & Marshfield two. (Plymouth, September 7, 1642; *Plymouth Records*, Laws, p. 38.)

BE IT ENACTED . . . That . . . if any Person or Persons shall kill or destroy any *Bear* or *Wild Cat* within any Town in this Government, being any of the Inhabitants of said Colony, such Person or Persons shall receive as a *Premium* or Reward therefor, the Sum of *Twenty Shillings* for each of them. . . . (Rhode Island, February, 1733-34; *Acts and Laws of Rhode Island*, ed. of 1745, p. 178.)

*In Act, for destroying Vermin in this Province.*

*Be it Enacted* . . . That from and after the Ratification of this Act, any Person or Persons that shall kill any of the Vermin hereafter mentioned, shall be intitled to a Claim upon the Parish where such Vermin was killed, the several Rewards as follows, *viz.* For every Panther, Ten Shillings, Proclamation Money; for every Wolf, Ten Shillings, Proclamation Money; and for every Wild-Cat, Two Shillings and Six Pence, Proclamation Money. . . . (North Carolina, 1748; *Acts of Assembly*, ed. of 1751, p. 261.)

# Topic U 2. The Indians of North America.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Pre-historic Man in America.  
Mound-builders, cliff dwellers, etc.
2. Indian Civilization in Mexico, Central America, and Peru.
3. Principal Indian Tribes of North America.  
Locate on map.
4. Study in detail the Indian Tribes of some section.  
One of:
  - a) Algonquins.
  - b) Iroquois.
  - c) Creeks, Choctaws, Cherokees, Chickasaws, etc.
  - d) Sioux.
  - e) Indians of Pacific Coast.
4. Indian Civilization.
  - a) Tribal organization.
  - b) Family relations; dwellings; house-life.
  - c) Religious customs and myths.
  - d) Methods of agriculture.
  - e) Hunting and fishing.
  - f) Modes of travel.
  - g) Intertribal relations and wars.
  - h) Numbers of the Indians.
5. Relations of the Indians to Europeans.
  - a) Occupation and purchase of their lands.
  - b) Organization of trade with Indians: by individuals, by companies, by colonial laws, *Coureurs de bois*.
  - c) Wars of extermination in English Colonies.
  - d) Treatment by Spaniards and by French.
  - e) Attempts to convert to Christianity by French, by Spaniards, and by English.
  - f) Effect of intercourse upon Europeans and upon Indians.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 1-6; Ashley, 11-17; Hart, 25-29; Johnston-MacDonald, 1-2; McLaughlin, 1-4; McMaster, 66-73; Montgomery, 32-38; Muzzey, 22-26.

For Collateral Reading.—Elson, U. S., 28-40; Fisher, Colonial Era, ch. 2; Sloane, French War, etc., 27-37; Thwaites, Colonies, 7-20.

For Topical Study.—

1. Doyle, Eng. Colonies, I, 9-10; Farrand, Basis of American History, ch. 5; Fiske, Discovery of America, I, 1-147; Winsor, America, I, ch. 6.

2. Winsor, America, I, ch. 3-1.

3. Farrand, ch. 6; Fiske, I, 1-147; Parkman, Jesuits in North America, Introduction; Conspiracy of Pontiac, ch. 1.

4. Farrand, ch. 7-12.

5. Doyle, Eng. Colonies, I, 12-17; Farrand, ch. 13-17; Fiske, I, 1-147; Hildreth, U. S., I, ch. 2; Parkman, Jesuits in North America, Introduction; Conspiracy of Pontiac, ch. 1; Shaler, Man and Nature in America, 180-188; Shaler, U. S., I, ch. 1; Winsor, America, ch. 5.

Source References.—Hart, Source Book, 23-26; Hart, Contemporaries, I, 203-206, 318-324, 501-507, 525-528, 557-559, 11, ch. 18; Old South Leaflets, Nos. 21, 22, 52, 87, 88, 143, 155.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### INDIAN TREATIES.

The Indian's language was symbolical and metaphorical; with him certain signs stood for long harangues or extended documents. The settlers easily learned the few catch words or phrases which meant so much to the Indian, and, putting aside the European conventionalities in their conferences with the Indians, they used almost to excess the language and symbols of the aborigines. That the Indians appreciated this consideration is shown by the reply of the Six Nations to Colonel William Johnson, on September 10, 1753: "We are pleased with everything you have said, and return you a great many thanks for speaking in our own way, which is more intelligible to us, because more conformable to the Customs and Manners of our Forefathers." (*Documentary History of New York*, II, 640.)

The following two extracts illustrate the metaphorical language of the Indians; they show the nature of the gifts made to the Indians and the method of punctuating their spoken discourse by the presentation of gifts. The spelling of the originals has been preserved.

The Governor delivered the following speech:

Brother Tredynsuncung, and you my Brethren now present—

Yesterday I sent two Gentlemen of the Council and the Provincial Interpreter to meet you at Germantown and to conduct you to this old Council Fire.

I now, in behalf of the Inhabitants of this Province, by this String of Wampum, bid you heartily welcome.

Gave a String.

Brother:

As I am assured you come on Business of Importance in the first place I with this String wash the Sweat off your Body, and wipe the dust out of your Eyes, that you may rest easy, and see your Brothers with a clean and cheerful Countenance.

A String.

Brother:

As you come thro' thick dark Woods, where many Bushes and prickly Bryars grow that may have hurt your legs, I with this String pull out the Bryars and anoint your Legs with healing salve.

A String.

Brother:

With this String I wash all bitterness and dust that may stick in your throat, and I clear the Passage from your heart to your mouth, that you may speak openly and freely whatsoever you may have to communicate to me.

A String.

Brothers:

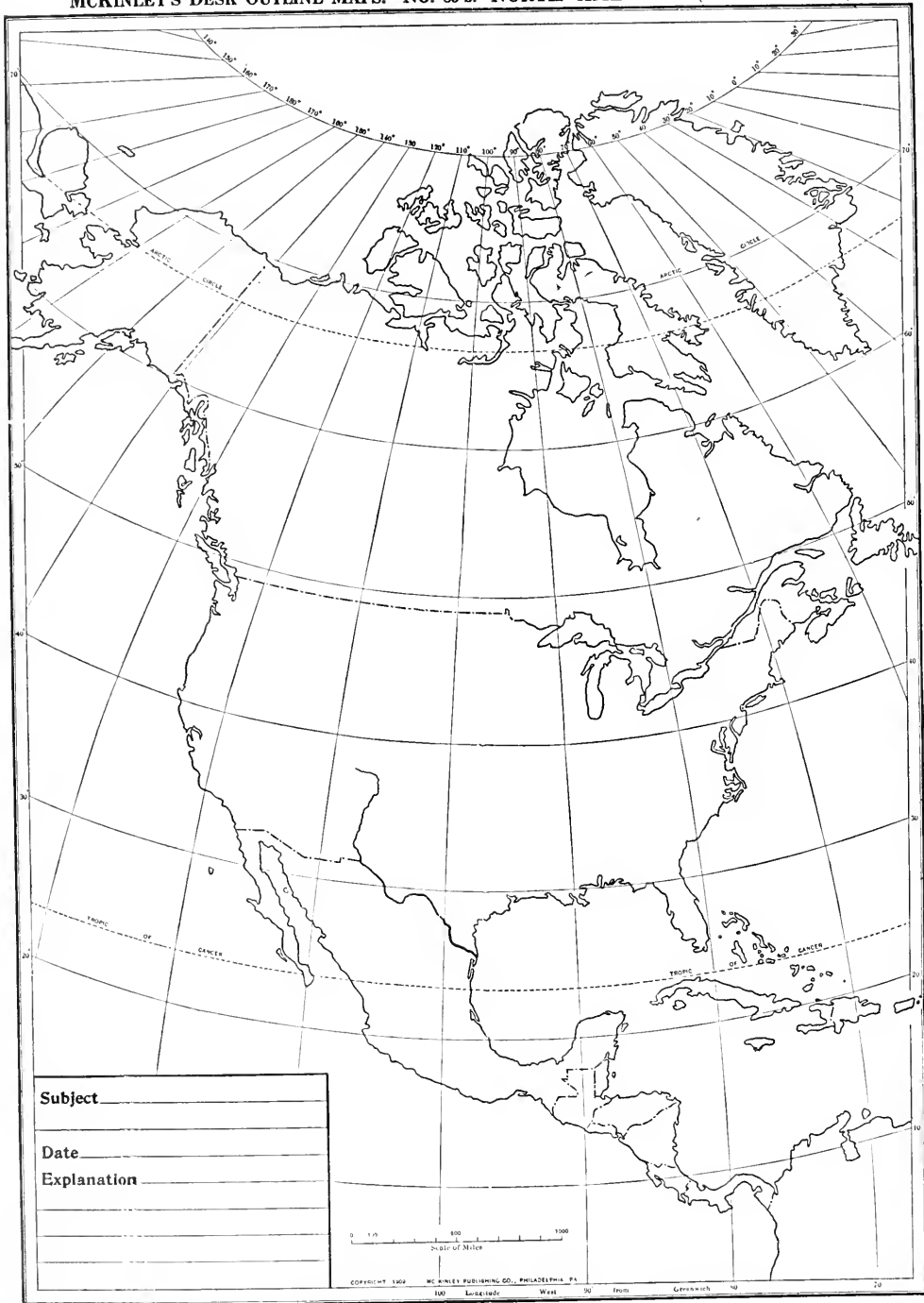
As your Cloaths are worn out and torn by the Briars in your long Journey, the good People of Pennsylvania present you with some others, which you will divide, amongst you as you think proper.

### A LIST OF THE GOODS PRESENTED TO THE INDIANS.

1 Piece of Stroud,	1 pec. 18 yds Calicoe,
1 Piece of Red Stroud,	2 doz. large white wro'
2 Pieces of white halfthick,	Buckles,
2 Pieces Purple ditto,	2 doz. Cutteen knives,
20 fine Tandem Ruffled	2 doz. large ditto,
Shirts,	1 doz. bulgee Silk Handker-
30 good plain Shirts,	chiefs,
3 Groce Star Garters,	1 thousand needles,
12 Strouds,	50 lb Tobacco,
3 pieces Blankets,	6 painted frame Glasses,
3 lb Vermillion,	24 neat pocket ditto,
3 fine laced Hatts,	1 Cag Pipes, conts 3 Groce,
2 doz. fine felt Hatts,	20 pr. Mens Shoes.

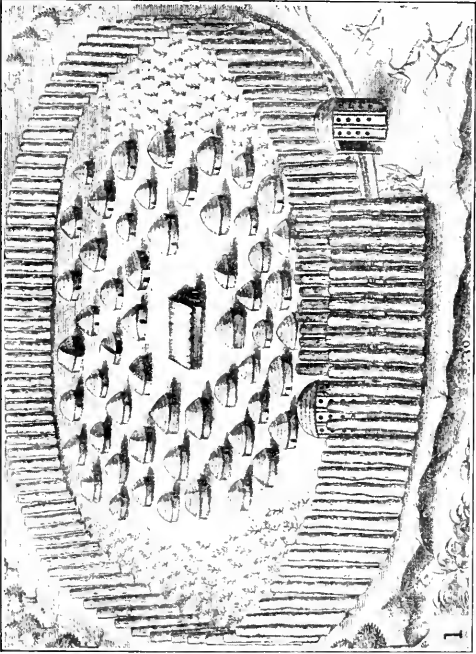
(Philadelphia, July 6, 1758; *Penna. Archives*, 1st Series, Vol. III, 457, 467.

(Continued on Page 4.)

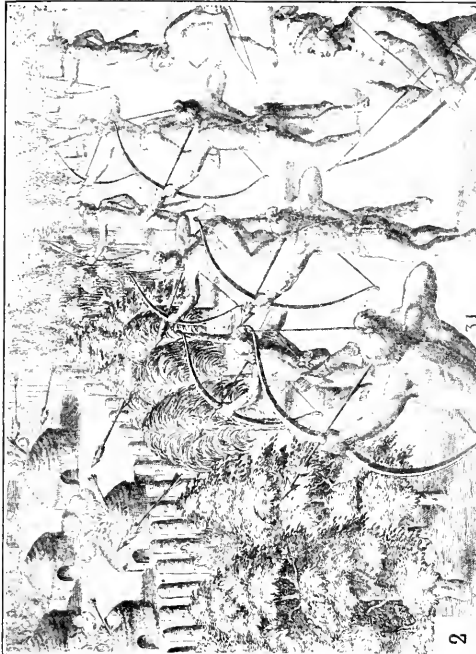


## Map Work for Topic U 2.

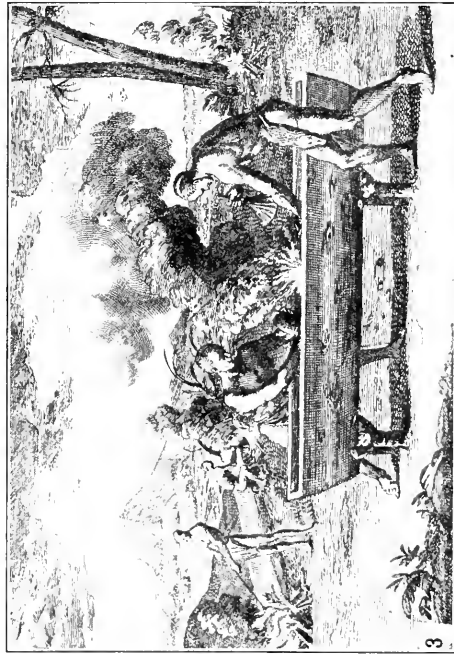
Show on the map the location of the principal Indian nations of North America.



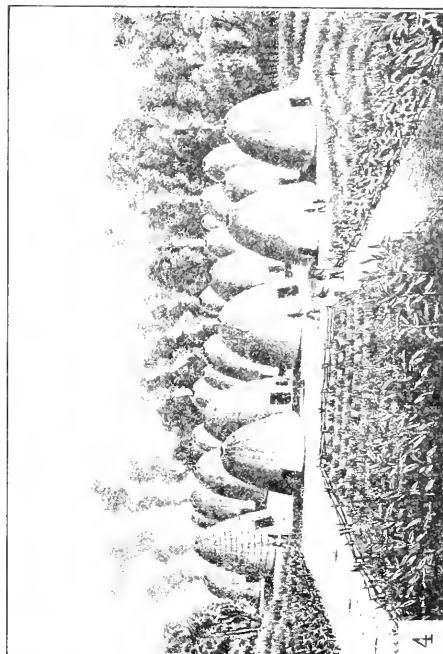
1



2



3



4

No. 1. An Indian village, showing construction of houses, of stockade and of guard houses. From an engraving by De Bry (of Frankfurt, Germany, c 1595).  
 No. 2. Attack upon an Indian village, by means of fire-brands attached to arrows. From De Bry.  
 No. 3. Indians making a canoe, or dug-out, using fire to burn out the log. From a Dutch artist of Leyden (1707).  
 No. 4. This is a modern view (1852) of an Indian village of the southwest. Compare with De Bry's view, particularly note the absence of a protecting stockade.  
 From a government publication.  
 Copyright, 1912, McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

Extracts from the Journal of Governor Benjamin Fletcher's Visit to Albany, Sept. 17-Oct. 5, 1696.

His Excell: called the Sachems together and spake. . . . Brethren

I do acquaint you from my most illustrious Master the King of Great Brittain France and Ireland that he will always extend his gracious proteccion to you and as a seal of it His Majesty has commanded me to deliver you these presents to keep bright the Covenant Chain from all rust and to strengthen it in behalfe of all his Majestyes subjects, not only of this Province, but those also of New England, Connecticut, the Jerseys, Pensilvania, Maryland and Virginia.

A List of the presents sent from the Kings Most Excellent Majesty & given to the Indians (viz<sup>1</sup>)

21 blew Coats [laced wth Broad Lace]	1 barrrell powder 400 weight lead
21 laced hatts	1000 flints
21 pt shoes with buckles	1 grose of tobacco pipes, wood & tinn
24 Shirts	
22 dozen hose	2 grose knives
30 gunn barrils & locks	6 pound vermilion
30 brass kettle	

prime cost in England of the above goods £200 sterling. . . .

Sanonguirese a Sachim of the Mohaques was Speaker Caijenquiragoe [Indian name for Gov. Fletcher]

We returne you thanks for what you have said the day before yesterday in condoling of our losse, and for the kettles which you gave us to boyle our victuals in the room of those that are lost by the enemy as also for the two Belts of Wampum given us as a token of yo<sup>r</sup> sincerity, by which our hearts are mightily rejoiced and lifted up in this our poor condition.

Brother C—

We are exceedingly rejoiced that the Great King over the Seas has sent us in this our low condition, by which our hearts are lifted up, we were ready to sink in a miserable perishing condition and this makes us revive again. He laid down six Beaver Skins. . . .

Brother C—

We again thank you for the message you have brought from the Great King.

And we pray you to send again to him for us with all vigour and speed, and to lay before the King what we have here said: faile not in writinge, faile not to let the King know it. We give these five beavers to the man that writes, to pay for the paper penn & ink.

Brother C—

We desire you to acquaint the Great King as before, that we are a small people and he has a great people and many cannoes with great guns; we desire you to write to him to know whether he will send them to destroy Canida or not, against the next time the trees grow green; and if he will not send forces to destroy Canida then to send us word thereof that we may make peace for ourselves, for ever, or for some time.

And we earnestly pray you will desire the Great King to send us an answer by the next time the trees grow green. He laid down a bundle of six bevers. . . .

Dackashata a Sachim of the Sinnekes was Speaker

Brother C—

We come to condole the losse you daily receive having daily alarms of skulking parties of the enemy doing mischief. Then laid down a belt of Wampum.

Brother C—

I am come with the whole House to consider what tends to the common good of the whole House.

Brother C—

We come here to quicken the fire, and renew the Covenant Chain.

Brother C—

We come to renew the Covenant Chain with all the brethren of New England, Connecticut, New Yorke, the Jerseys, Pensilvania, Maryland & Virginia that they may partake of the warmth of the fire.

Brother C—

We recommend to all that are in the Covenant Chain to be vigorous to keep it up.

Brother C—

When all is said I drinke to all yo<sup>r</sup> healths & then I deliver you the cupp.

Brother C—

There has been a cloud and we come to remove it, as the sun in the morning remove the dar[k]nesse of the night.

Brother C—

The Tree of safety and welfare planted here we confirme it.

Brother C—

As the tree is planted here and confirmed, so we make fast all the roots and branches of it, all the brethren of the Five Nations and the brethren of Virginia, Maryland, Pensilvania, the Jerseys, New Yorke, Connecticut, & New England.

Brother C—

We wish we may rest in quietnesse under that tree. We fill it with new leaves, and wish all that are in the Covenant Chain may have the benefite to sitt down quiett under its shadow. . . .

Brother C—

We wish the Cannoes may go to and again in safety that the Great King may know what we have here said and that we may have an answer. We now have made our word good: here is the cup. Then laid down some small bundles of bever saying,—It is but small, but is as it were saved out of the fire.

His Excell stood up and said:—

Brothren.

I have heard what you have said, and have here renewed the Covenant Chain with all the Five Nations the Mohaques, Onoydes, Onmondages, Caijouges, and Sinnekes, in behalf of the Brethren of this Province, Virginia, Maryland, Pensilvania, the Jerseys, Connecticut & New England; and I assure the Five Nations of his Majtyes proteccion. I have provided for you some victuals and drink to drink the King's health, and in confirmacon thereof that it may last as long as the sun & moon endures I give this Belt Wampum.

The principle Sachim of the Mohaques called—Oheee

The whole Assembly answered Heecccc Hogh.

The Principle Sachim of Oneyde called—Oheee

The whole Assembly answered Heecccc Hogh.

The principle Sachim of Onmondage called—Oheee

The whole Assembly answered Heecccc Hogh.

The principle Sachim of Caijouge called—Oheee.

The whole Assembly answered Heecccc Hogh.

The principle Sachim of Sinneke called—Oheee

The whole Assembly answered Heecccc Hogh.

In the evening His Excell. did appoint the principle Sachims to meet him at a private conference next morning.

(Albany, Sept. 17-Oct. 5, 1696; *Documents Relating to the Colonial History of New York*, IV, 233-239 passim.)

\*In the original the name is spelt out in each case.



# Topic U 3. European Background of American History.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. General Awakening of Europe in 15th and 16th Centuries.
2. The Renaissance.
  - a) Antecedents in Crusades and medieval trade.
  - b) The New Learning; study of classics.
  - c) Printing: Gutenberg, c. 1450; learning placed on a democratic basis.
  - d) An age of personal, individual activity, displacing the guilds and social organizations of Middle Ages.
  - e) An age of invention and discovery:
    - 1) In astronomy—Copernicus.
    - 2) In other sciences.
    - 3) Invention of gunpowder—overthrow of feudalism and chivalry.
    - 4) In geography—see below.
3. The Reformation.
  - a) Relation to Renaissance.
  - b) Prominent persons—Luther, Zwingli, Calvin, Knox, Loyola.
  - c) Results:
    - 1) Irreparable split in Christian church.
    - 2) Persecutions and civil wars:
      - (a) The Inquisition.
      - (b) The Revolt of the Netherlands.
      - (c) Wars in Germany, 1547-1555; 1618-1648.
      - (d) Wars in France, 1558-1598.
      - (e) Wars in England—the Puritan Revolt.
    - 3) Reform in Catholic Church: Council of Trent, Jesuits, etc.
    - 4) Multiplicity of sects.
    - 5) Eventual toleration in religion in countries where sects were nearly equally divided.
    - 6) New missionary activity among both Catholics and Protestants.
4. Conditions in Great Britain.
  - a) Strong national monarchy of Tudors.
  - b) Organization of English government.
    - 1) The Nation.
 

Executive—the King and his ministers.  
Legislature—Parliament: King, Lords and Commons.  
Judiciary—House of Lords, Privy Council, King's Courts.
    - 2) Local Government.
 

The County—sheriff, coroner, justice of peace, county court.  
The Parish or Town—local duties: care of church, of poor, of local roads, etc.  
The Borough—incorporated by King: usually governed by select few of population.  
The city—chartered by King: An elaborate government possessing few popular features.
  - c) Religious sects.
    - 1) Church of England—legally supported by public taxes.
    - 2) Puritans—believed in state church, but wished to purify it.
    - 3) Separatists—would establish congregations largely independent of each other and of the state.
    - 4) Catholics—treated as public enemies, although many were loyal to monarchy.
  - d) Social and Industrial Conditions.
    - 1) Growth of enclosed estates and spread of sheep-raising.
    - 2) Large number of vagrants.
    - 3) City population increasing.
    - 4) Growth of new industries, and search for new markets.
    - 5) Overthrow of guild system.
    - 6) Existence of many legal monopolies.
    - 7) Rise of chartered companies for commercial purposes.
5. Knowledge of Geography.
  - a) Medieval trade routes.
  - b) Journeys of Marco Polo and other travellers.
  - c) Early maps.
  - d) Explorations along African coast by Portuguese.
  - e) Ideas of the shape and size of the earth.
  - f) Inventions aiding geographical discovery: Mariner's compass, astrolabes, quadrant, nautical tables, map-making, globe-making.
6. Trade with the East.
  - a) Routes—Alexandria, Constantinople.
  - b) Controlled by Italian cities.
  - c) Articles of commerce.
  - d) Conquests by Turks and influence on commerce.
  - e) Demand for new routes.
7. Trading Companies.
  - a) An age of legal monopolies in commerce.
  - b) Commercial monopolies to trade with certain places given by France, England, Spain, the Dutch, etc., to select companies of their citizens.
  - c) Often became instrumental in discovery and settlement of new lands.
8. The National Monarchies of the 16th and 17th Centuries.
  - a) England—under Tudors and Stuarts.
  - b) France—under Louis XI, Francis I, and the Bourbons.
  - c) Spain united under Ferdinand and Isabella.
  - d) Austria—under Hapsburg family.
  - e) Sweden—under Gustavus Adolphus.
  - f) The Dutch—a confederation with an hereditary presidency.
  - g) Struggles of the new monarchies with one another: Hapsburgs and Bourbons; Spain and England; Spain and the Dutch; England and France.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Hart, 13-17; James and Sanford, 1-8; McLaughlin, 6-10.  
For Topical Study.—  
1. Robinson, Western Europe, ch. 22.  
2. Baneroff, I, 177-181; Cheyney, European Background, ch. 9-10; Robinson, ch. 23-29.  
3. Baneroff, I, 181-193; Cheyney, ch. 11-16; Robinson, ch. 25, 30.  
4. Fiske, Discovery of America, I, 295-334; Sparks, Expansion of American People, ch. 1; Winsor, I, ch. 1.  
5. Cheyney, ch. 1-4; Fiske, Discovery of America, I, 256-294.  
6. Cheyney, ch. 7-8.  
7. Cheyney, ch. 5-6.

Source References.—Hart, *Contemporaries*, 1, ch. 6, 7, 8; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. 1-10; Kendall, *Source Book of English History*, ch. 8-11; Lee, *Source Book of English History*, ch. 14-23; Prothero, *Select Statutes*; Robinson, *Readings in European History*, 1, ch. 22, 11, ch. 23-30.

Biography.—Lives of Prince Henry, the Navigator, Marco Polo.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### ORIENTAL TRADE AND ITS SIGNIFICANCE.

The first of the following extracts are selected in order to show the current European ideas respecting the Orient. Marco Polo, a Venetian, with his father and uncle, made a journey into the Far East, an account of which was made public in 1298, three years after the return of the family to Venice. The account had a wide influence in moulding western ideas respecting the east. Columbus himself possessed a copy of the travels of Marco Polo, and his annotations upon its margins, showing his great interest in the eastern trade, can be seen today.

The selections have been chosen to show mainly the conditions of trade and industry in the east. Note the articles of commerce mentioned, and the lines of trade; also the descriptions of golden scenes, always prefaced, however, with the remark that others say such things exist. Marco Polo describes accurately what he himself has seen; and always distinguishes between his own information and that derived from others.

The second extract is from a modern account of the Eastern trade and the influence of the Turks thereon. The third is a brief quotation from Prof. E. F. Cheyney's notable volume in the *American Nation*.

To this city [Pekin] every thing that is most rare and valuable in all parts of the world, finds its way, and more especially does this apply to India, which furnishes precious stones, pearls, and various drugs and spices. From the . . . provinces of the empire, whatever there is of value is carried thither, to supply the demands of those multitudes who are induced to establish their residence in the vicinity of the court. The quantity of merchandise sold there exceeds also the traffick of any other place; for no fewer than a thousand carriages and pack-horses loaded with raw-silk make their daily entry, and gold tissues and silks of various kinds are manufactured to an immense extent. . . .

The noble and handsome city of *Zai-tun*, which has a port on the seacoast celebrated for the resort of shipping, loaded with merchandize that is afterwards distributed through every part of the province of Manji. The quantity of pepper imported there is so considerable, that what is carried to Alexandria, to supply the demand of the western parts of the world, is trifling in comparison, perhaps not more than the hundredth part. It is indeed impossible to convey an idea of the concourse of merchants and the accumulation of goods, in this which is held to be one of the largest and most commodious ports in the world. . . . The ships are freighted by them [merchants] at the rate of thirty per cent. for fine goods, forty-four for pepper, and for lignum aloes, sandal-wood, and other drugs, as well as articles of trade in general, forty per cent.; so that it is computed by the merchants, that their charges, including customs and freight, amount to half the value of the cargo; and yet upon the half that remains to them, their profit is so considerable, that they are always disposed to return to the same market with a further stock of merchandize. . . .

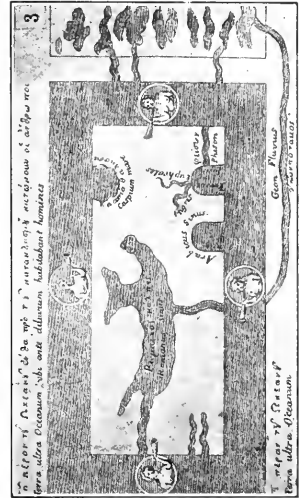
*Zipangu* [Japan] is an island in the eastern ocean, situated at the distance of about fifteen hundred miles from the main land or coast of *Manji* [China]. It is of considerable size; its inhabitants have fair complexions, are well made, and are civilized in their manners. Their

religion is the worship of idols. They are independent of every foreign power, and governed only by their own kings. They have gold in the greatest abundance, its sources being inexhaustible, but as the king does not allow of its being exported, few merchants visit the country, nor is it frequented by much shipping from other ports. To this circumstance we are to attribute the extraordinary richness of the sovereign's palace, according to what we are told by those who have access to the place. The entire roof is covered with a plating of gold, in the same manner as we cover houses, or more properly, churches, with lead. The ceilings of the halls are of the same precious metal; many of the apartments have small tables of pure gold considerably thick; and the windows also have golden ornaments. So vast, indeed, are the riches of the palace, that it is impossible to convey an idea of them. In this island there are pearls also, in large quantities, of a red (pink) colour, round in shape, and of great size; equal in value to, or even exceeding that of the white pearls. . . .

In this kingdom [of Aden at the entrance to the Red Sea] there are many towns and castles, and it has the advantage of an excellent port, frequented by ships arriving from India with spices and drugs. The merchants who purchase them with the intention of conveying them to Alexandria, unlode them from the ships in which they were imported, and distribute the cargoes on board of other smaller vessels, with which they navigate a gulf of the sea for twenty days, or more or less, according to the weather they experience. Having reached their port, they then load their goods upon the backs of camels, and transport them overland thirty days' journey, to the river Nile, where they are again put into small vessels, called *jerns*, in which they are conveyed by the stream of that river to Kairo, and from thence, by an artificial canal, called *Kalizene*, at length to Alexandria. This is the least difficult and the shortest route the merchants can take with their goods, the produce of India, from Aden to that city. In this port of Aden likewise the merchants ship a great number of Arabian horses, which they carry for sale to all the kingdoms and islands of India, obtaining high prices for them, and making large profits. . . .

The inhabitants of the city [Hang-cheu, China], are idolaters, and they use paper money as currency. The men as well as the women have fair complexions and are handsome. The greater part of them are always clothed in silk, in consequence of the vast quantity of that material produced in the province of *Kin-sai*, exclusively of what the merchants import from other provinces. Amongst the handicraft trades exercised in the place, there are twelve considered to be superior to the rest as being more generally useful; for each of which there are a thousand workshops, and each shop furnishes employment for ten, fifteen, or twenty workmen, and in a few instances as many as forty, under their respective masters. The opulent principals in these manufactories do not labour with their own hands, but on the contrary assume airs of gentility and affect parade. Their wives equally abstain from work. They have much beauty, as has been remarked, and are brought up with delicate and languid habits. The costliness of their dresses, in silks and jewelry, can scarcely be imagined. . . .

An island of very great size named *Java*, according to the reports of some well-informed navigators, is the largest in the world; being in circuit above three thousand miles. . . . The country abounds with rich commodities.



# PRE-COLUMBIAN MAPS.

- No. 1. The world according to an Arabian author of the twelfth century, from a manuscript of the fifteenth century. The earth is represented as an egg floating in a basin of water.
- No. 2. Map of the world according to Ptolemy's Mela, with modern lettering. Note the "fourth part" of the world south of the equator.
- No. 3. A highly generalized plan of the world from Topographia Christiana, by Cosmas Indicopleustes (c. 535-547 A. D.), a merchant, navigator, and later a monk of Alexandria.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

Pepper, nutmegs, spikewood, galangal, cubebs, cloves, and all the other valuable spices and drugs, are the produce of the island; which occasion it to be visited by many ships laden with merchandise, that yields to the owners considerable profit. The quantity of gold collected there exceeds all calculation and belief. From thence it is that the merchants of *Zai-tun* and of Manji [China] in general have imported, and to this day import, that metal to a great amount, and from thence also is obtained the greatest part of the spices that are distributed throughout the world. . . . —*The Travels of Marco Polo* (ed. by W. Marsden, London, 1818), p. 351, 521, 559, 569, 590, 725.

While Greek and Roman merchants had enriched themselves by the Indo-European trade, the actual seapassage from India to Egypt, like the actual caravan route from the Persian Gulf to the Levant, remained in the hands of Semitic races. Colonies of Arabs and Jews settled in an early century of our era, or perhaps before it, on the southern Bombay coast, where their descendants form distinct communities at the present day. The voyages of Sinbad the Sailor are a popular romance of the Indian trade under the caliphs of Baghdad, probably in the ninth century A. D. . . . Sinbad traverses the ocean regions from the Persian Gulf to Malabar, the Maldiv Islands, Ceylon, and apparently as far as the Malay Peninsula.

. . . Egypt had passed to the Saracens in 640 A. D. But under its . . . sultans the Indo-Egyptian trade continued to flourish, and probably gained rather than lost by the temporary interruption of the Syrian land-route during the Crusades. Ibn Batuta (1304-1377), who travelled for twenty-four years in Asia, Africa and the Mediterranean, declared Cairo to be the greatest city in the world "out of China," and mentions Alexandria as one of the five chief ports which he had seen. . . .

But the same Turkish avalanche that had thrown itself across the Syrian and Black Sea routes was also to descend on Egypt. The Venetians on their expulsion from Constantinople in 1261 transferred their eastern commerce to Alexandria, and after the capture of Constantinople by the Turks in 1453, Egypt for a time enjoyed almost a monopoly of the Indian trade. . . . The growth of the Ottoman navy from 1470 onwards began, however, to imperil the Mediterranean outlets of the Indo-Egyptian trade. It was in vain that Venice in 1454 made an un-Christian peace with the Moslem conquerors of Constantinople, and sought to secure the passage from the Adriatic to Alexandria by fortified stations and island strongholds along the route. Venice had ruined the naval power of Genoa, and the gallant defence of the Knights Hospitallers at Rhodes in 1480 could only delay, not avert, the Ottoman seizure of the Mediterranean highway.

In 1470 the Turks wrested the Negropont from Venice with a fleet of one hundred galleys and two hundred transports. Before ten years passed their squadrons swept the Adriatic and ravaged along the Italian coast. In their work of destruction the Turks were aided by an even more savage sea-force from the West. The rise of the Barbary corsairs . . . formed the maritime com-

plement of the Turkish conquests by land. . . . During a quarter of a century before this [1504] final development, the galleys of the African Moors outflanked the Venetian and Genoese fleets in the western Mediterranean, and thus strengthened the Turks in their struggle for the naval supremacy of the Levant.

The same year, 1480, which saw the temporary failure of the Ottomans at Rhodes saw also their capture of Otranto in Italy. In 1499 they crushed the naval force of Venice at Zouchio and Lepanto. By this time the Sea of Marmora and the Black Sea had become Turkish lakes. Turkish fleets and fortresses dominated the Hellespont, the Syrian coast, the Greek harbours, and most of the island trading-stations of the Aegean and the Levant. The use of the Ottomans as a sea-power thus blockaded the Mediterranean outlets of the Indo-Egyptian trade as their use as a land-power had obstructed the Indo-Syrian and Black Sea routes. . . .

The Ottoman seizure or obstruction of the Indian trade brought disaster not alone to the Mediterranean republics. The blow fell first on Genoa and Venice, but it sent a shock through the whole system of European commerce. The chief channel by which the products of Asia reached the central and northern nations of Christendom was the Hanseatic League. . . .

The Indian trade formed an important contributory to this Hanseatic commerce. When the Eastern traffic began to dry up, its European emporiums declined; when . . . the Cape route was substituted, they withered away. "Grass grew," says Motley, "in the fair and pleasant streets of Bruges, and sea-weed clustered about the halls of Venice." Augsburg which had financed the commerce of Central Europe dwindled into a provincial town. Novgorod suffered in addition to mercantile decay the abolition of its charters by Ivan III in 1475. . . . The Mediterranean marts of Eastern commerce, from Lisbon looking out on the Atlantic, to Venice once mistress of the Adriatic and the Levant, shared in varying degrees the common fate. In the first years of the sixteenth century the Indo-European trade of the Middle Ages lay strangled in the grip of the Turks.—Sir William Wilson Hunter, *A History of British India*, I, 47-53.

. . . One of the chief luxuries of the Middle Ages was the edible spices. The monotonous diet, the coarse food, the unskilful cookery of medieval Europe had all their deficiencies covered with a charitable mantle of Oriental seasoning. . . .

Pepper, the most common and at the same time the most valued of these spices, was frequently treated as a gift of honor from one sovereign to another, or as a courteous form of payment instead of money. . . . The amount of these spices demanded and consumed was astonishing. Venetian galleys, Genoese carracks, and other vessels on the Mediterranean brought many a cargo of them westward, and they were sold in fairs and markets everywhere. "Pepper-sack" was a derisive and yet not unappreciative epithet applied by German robber-baron to the merchants whom they plundered as they passed down the Rhine. . . . In romances and chronicles, in cook-books, trades-lists, and customs-tariffs, spices are mentioned with a frequency and consideration unknown in modern times.—Cheyney, *European Background of American History*, 10-12.

# Topic U 4. Period of Discovery and Exploration.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

### 1. Reasons for Exploration.

New route to Indies; economic interests; love of adventure; new converts to Christianity; northwest passage.

### 2. Reasons for Colonization.

Commercial advantage of trading companies; profits in fur-trade; surplus population in European states; political and religious rivalry at home; national advantage and rivalries; ambitious individuals; glowing accounts of new lands.

### 3. The Northmen.

- a) Proof of their voyages.
- b) Probable landfall.
- c) Lack of historic significance.

### 4. Columbus.

- a) Early life; interest in navigation; sources of his plans for westward voyages.
- b) Attempts to obtain assistance.
- c) First voyage; dates; incidents; landfall, immediate results of his discovery; what he thought he discovered.

### 5. The Naming of America.

- a) Americus Vesputius and his voyages.
- b) His name applied to (South) America by Waldseemüller, 1507.
- c) Current beliefs respecting contributions to geography by Columbus and by Vesputius.

### 6. Determination of the American Coast Line.

- a) Cabots.
- b) Columbus' later voyages.
- c) Vesputius.
- d) Balboa.
- e) de Leon.
- f) de Ayllon.
- g) Verrazano.

### 7. Determination of World Position of America.

- a) Theories of position of New World with reference to China and East Indies.
- b) Voyage of Magellan—positive proof of isolation of America.

### 8. Exploration of Interior—Spaniards.

### 9. Exploration of Interior—French.

### 10. Exploration of Interior—English.

Reasons for slight influence of English.

### 11. Contributions to American Geography.

Hakluyt, Purchas, Smith, etc.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 7-23; Ashley, 25-38; Channing, 19-46; Hart, 31-43; James & Sanford, 9-35; Johnston-MacDonald, 3-10; McLaughlin, 4-6, 10-27; McMaster, 9-18, 19-24; Montgomery, 1-31; Muzzey, 1-26.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, Economic History, 17-33; Elson, 1-27, 41-59; Fisher, Colonial Era, ch. 3; Sparks, Expansion, ch. 2-3; Thwaites, Colonies, 20-37.

For Special Study.—

3. Bourne, Spain in America, ch. 1; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 1.

4. Bancroft, U. S., I, 7-13; Bourne, ch. 2-4; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 1; Doyle, Eng. Colonies, I, ch. 1; Fiske, Discovery of America, I, 335-516; Hildreth, U. S., I, ch. 1; Thwaites, France in America, ch. 1; Wilson, American People, I, ch. 1; Winsor, America, I, ch. 2; II, ch. 1.

5. Bourne, ch. 7; Winsor, II, ch. 2.

6. Bancroft, U. S., I, 10-18; Bourne, ch. 6; Winsor, II, ch. 3-4; III, ch. 1-2; IV, ch. 1.

7. Bourne, ch. 9; Fiske, II, 2-312; Hildreth, U. S., I, ch. 1; Wilson, American People, I, ch. 1; Winsor, II, ch. 9.

8. Bancroft, U. S., I, 22-49; Bourne, ch. 10-11.

9. Bourne, ch. 10-11; Thwaites, France in America, ch. 1.

10. Bourne, ch. 10-11.

Source References.—American History Leaflets, I, 3, 9, 13; Caldwell & Persinger, Source History, 1-17; Hart, Source Book, 1-17; Hart, Contemporaries, I, ch. 3-5; Old South Leaflets, 30, 29, 33-36, 39, 71, 89, 90, 102; Original Narratives of Early American History, The Northmen, Columbus and Cabot, Biography—Lives of Columbus, Magellan, Drake and of other English seamen.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### THE LANDEALL OF COLUMBUS.

The original of Columbus's Journal is not to be found today; the extracts here printed are simply parts of summaries prepared by others from the Columbus documents. The first extract is from a narrative believed to be in the handwriting of Las Casas, a famous Spanish writer upon colonial history. The second is from the life of Columbus by his son Ferdinand, which contains some details not given in the first.

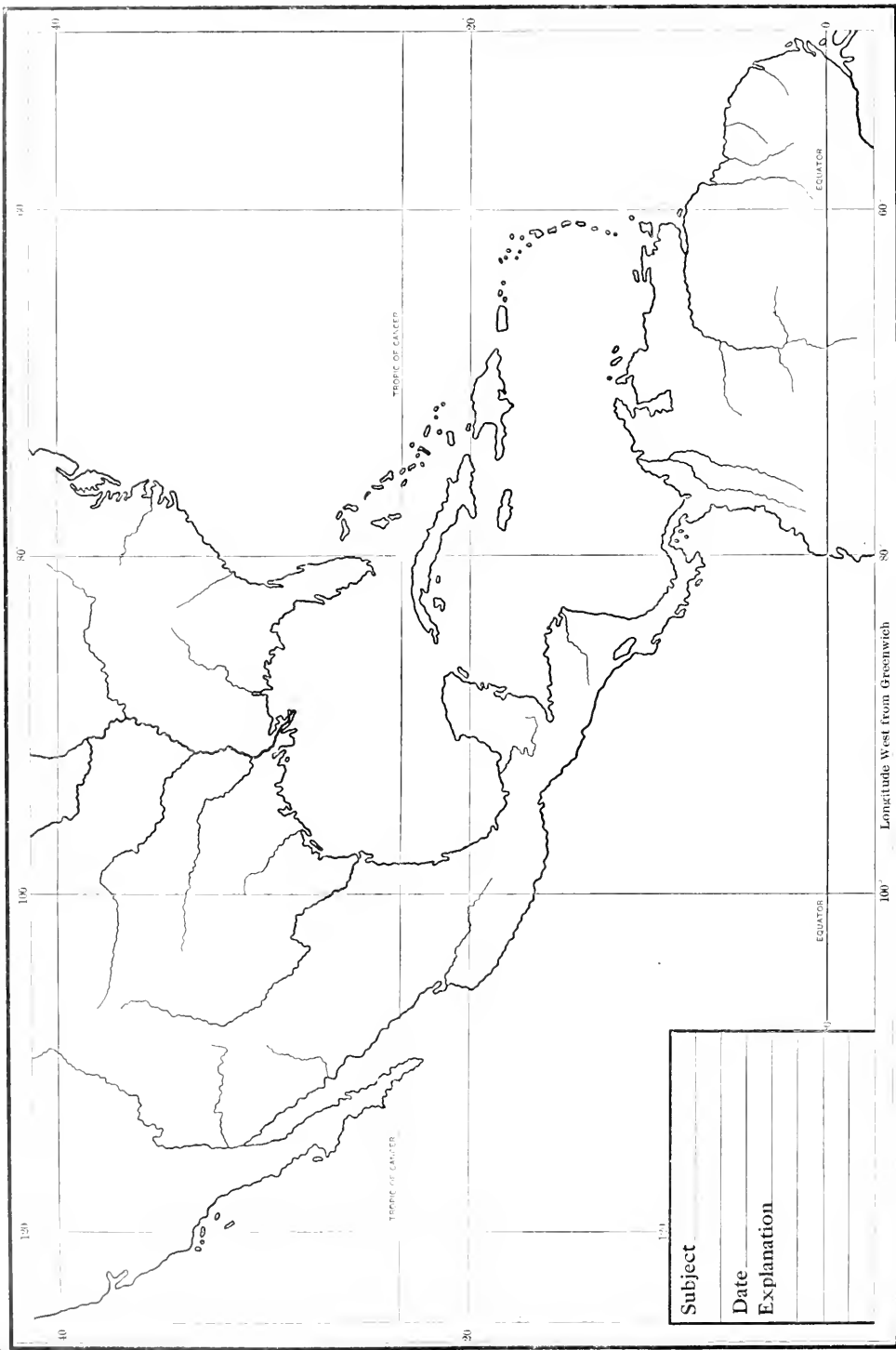
The two documents should be compared to discern the differences between the original narrative of Columbus and the account given by his son. The first is more nearly contemporary, while the second is written years afterwards, in order to present Christopher Columbus before the world in a most favorable light.

Thursday, 11th of October.

The Course was W. S. W., and there was more sea than had been during the whole of the voyage. They saw sandpipers, and a green reed near the ship. Those of the caravel *Pinta* saw a cane and a pole, and they took up another small pole which appeared to have been worked with iron; also another bit of cane, a land-plant, and a small board. The crew of the caravel *Nina* also saw signs of land, and a small branch covered with berries. Every one breathed afresh and rejoiced at these signs. The run until sunset was 27 leagues.

After sunset the Admiral returned to his original west course, and they went along at the rate of 12 miles an hour. Up to two hours after midnight they had gone 90 miles, equal to 22½ leagues. As the caravel *Pinta* was a better sailer, and went ahead of the Admiral, she found the land, and made the signals ordered by the Admiral. The land was first seen by a sailor named Rodrigo de Triana. But the Admiral, at ten o'clock, being on the castle of the poop, saw a light, though it was so uncertain that he could not affirm it was land. He called Pero Gutierrez, a gentleman of the King's bed-chamber, and said that there seemed to be a light, and that he should look at it. He did so, and saw it. The Admiral said the same to Rodrigo Sanchez de Segovia, whom the King and Queen had sent with the fleet as inspector, but he could see nothing, because he was not in a place whence anything could be seen. After the Admiral had spoken he saw the light once or twice, and it was like a wax candle rising and falling. It seemed to few to be an indication of land; but the Admiral made certain that land was close. When they said the *Salve*, which all the sailors were accustomed to sing in their way, the Admiral asked and admonished the men to keep a good look-out on the fore-castle, and to watch well for land; and to him who should first cry out that he saw land, he would give a silk doublet, besides the

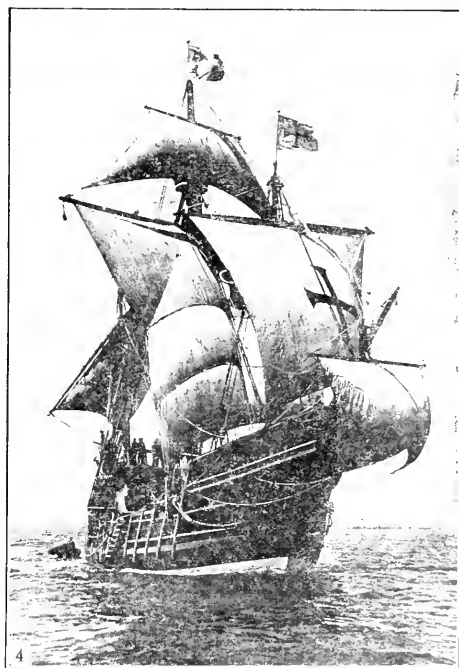
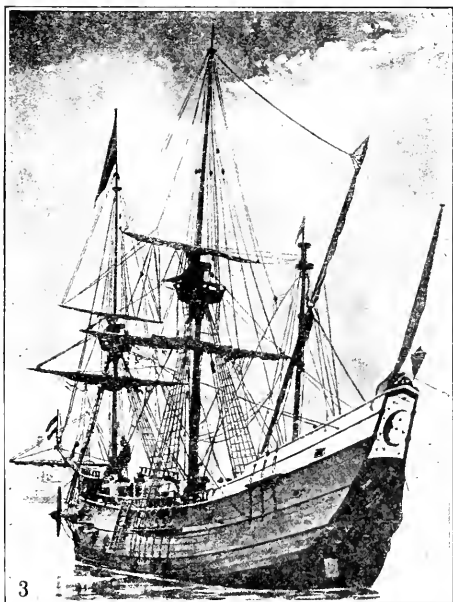
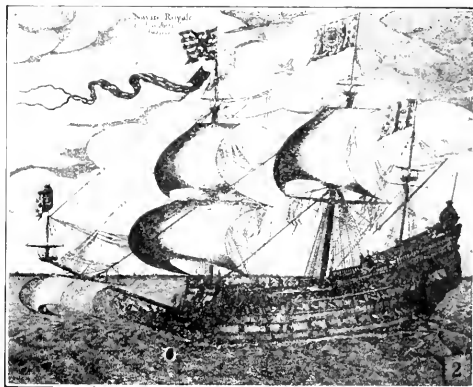
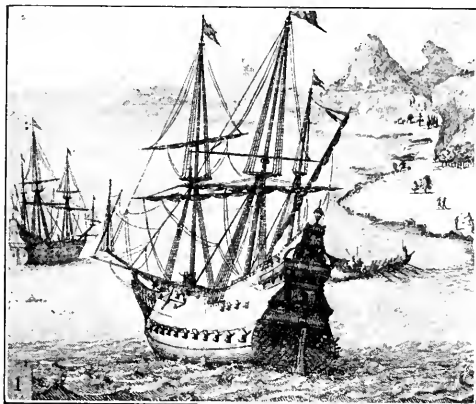
(Continued on Page 4.)



Subject
Date
Explanation

## Map Work for Topic U 4. The Voyages of Discovery.

Consult maps in Barnes, General History, 426; Channing, 36; Fiske, 36; James and Sanford, 11, 28; McMaster, 14; Montgomery, Leading Facts, 29; Montgomery, Student's, 18; Muzzey, 10; Scudder, 11.



The views on this page represent the types of vessels used by the explorers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

No. 1. A Dutch engraving (1706) of the landing of the Frenchman, John Ribault, in Florida, in 1562. Note the high "castles" in the stern.

No. 2. A Dutch man-of-war, of 1626. Note the long projecting prow, the high stern and the location of the guns. Reproduced by permission of "The Rudder Publishing Co.," New York.

No. 3. A photograph of the replica of the Half Moon, used in the Hudson-Fulton Celebration, in New York, 1909. A good view of the rigging of these early vessels.

No. 4. A photograph of the replica of the Santa Maria (Columbus' flagship), taken in 1892, as she was entering Hampton Roads, Va. A good view of the sail capacity of the early vessels.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

other rewards promised by the Sovereigns, which were 10,000 maravedis to him who should first see it. At two hours after midnight the land was sighted at a distance of two leagues. They shortened sail, and lay by under the mainsail without the bunnets.

[Friday, 12th of October]

The vessels were hove to, waiting for daylight; and on Friday they arrived at a small island of the Lucayos, called in the language of the Indians Guanahani [probably Watling Island in the Bahamas]. Presently they saw naked people. The Admiral went on shore in the armed boat. . . . The Admiral took the royal standard, and the captains went with two banners of the green cross, which the Admiral took in all the ships as a sign, with an F and a Y and a crown over each letter, one on one side of the cross and the other on the other. Having landed, they saw trees very green, and much water, and fruits of diverse kinds. The Admiral called to the two captains, and to the others who leaped on shore, and to Rodrigo Escovedo, secretary of the whole fleet, and to Rodrigo Sanchez de Segovia, and said that they should bear faithful testimony that he, in presence of all, had taken possession of the said island for the King and for the Queen, his Lords, making the declarations that are required, as is now largely set forth in the testimonies which were then made in writing.—*Original Narratives of Early American History, The Northmen, Columbus, and Cabot*, ed. by J. E. Olson and E. G. Bourne, pp. 108-110.

. . . But they were now so eager to see land, that they had faith in no signs whatsoever; so that though on Wednesday the 10th of October, they saw abundance of birds pass by both day and night, yet the men did not cease to complain, nor the Admiral to blame them for their want of courage. . . .

The Admiral being no longer able to withstand so many as opposed him, it pleased God that on Thursday the 11th of October, afternoon, the men took heart and rejoiced, having manifest tokens that they were near land. . . . By these tokens, and reason itself, the Admiral being assured he was near land, at night, after prayers, he made a speech to all the men in general, putting them in mind how great a mercy it was that God had brought them so long a voyage with such fair weather, and comforting them with tokens which every day were plainer and plainer; therefore he prayed them to be very watchful that night, since they well knew that in the first article of the instructions he gave each ship at the Canary Islands, he ordained that when they had sailed seven hundred leagues to the westward, without discovering land, they should lie by from midnight till day. Therefore, since they had not yet obtained their desires in discovering land, they should at least express their zeal in being watchful. And forasmuch as he had most assured hopes of finding land that night, every one should

watch in his place; for besides the gratuity their highnesses had promised of thirty crowns a year for life, to him that first saw land, he would give him a velvet doublet. After this, about ten at night, as the Admiral was in the great cabin, he saw a light ashore, but said it was so blind he could not affirm it to be land, though he called one Peter Gutierrez, and bid him observe whether he saw the said light, who said he did; but presently they called one Roderick Sanchez de Segovia, to look that way, but he could not see it . . . nor did they see it afterwards above once or twice, which made them judge it might be a candle or torch belonging to some fisherman or traveller, who lifted it up and let it fall down, or perhaps that they were people going from one house to another, because it vanished and suddenly appeared again; so that few would guess but that they were near land. Being now very much upon their guard, they still held on their course, till about two in the morning the carved Pinta, which being an excellent sailor was far a-head, gave the signal of land, which was first discovered by a sailor whose name was Roderick de Triana, being two leagues from shore. But the thirty crowns a year was not granted by their Catholic majesties [Ferdinand and Isabella] to him, but to the Admiral, who had seen the light in the midst of darkness, signifying the spiritual light he was then spreading in those dark regions. Being now near land, all the ships lay by, thinking it a long time till morning, that they might see what they had so long desired. . . .

Day appearing, they perceived it was an island, fifteen leagues in length, plain, without hills, and full of green trees and delicious waters, with a great lake in the middle, inhabited by abundance of people, who ran down to the shore astonished and admiring at the sight of the ships, believing them to be some living creatures, and were impatient to know certainly what they were. Nor were the Christians less hasty to know them, whose curiosity was soon satisfied, for they soon came to an anchor; the Admiral went ashore with his boat well armed, and the royal standard displayed. . . . Having all given thanks to God, kneeling on the shore, and kissed the ground with tears of joy, for the great mercy received, the Admiral stood up, and called that island St. Salvador. After that he took possession for their Catholic Majesties, in the usual words, and with the solemnity proper in those cases; abundance of the natives that were come out being present, and consequently the Christians admitted him as Admiral and Viceroy, and swore to obey him as representing their Highnesses persons, and with such expressions of joy as became their mighty success, all of them begging his pardon for all the affronts they had done him through fear and irresolution. Abundance of the Indians being come down to this rejoicing, and the Admiral perceiving they were peaceable quiet, and very simple people, he gave them some red caps, and strings of glass beads, which they hung about their necks, and other things of small value, which they valued as if they had been stone of high price.—*Life of Columbus, by his Son Ferdinand, Pinkerton's Voyages and Travels* (London, 1812), XII, pp. 32-34.



# Topic U 5. Early Attempts at Colonization.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Spain.
  - a) West Indies—Cuba, Porto Rico, Hayti.
  - b) Mexico and Peru.
  - c) Florida.
  - d) Southwest and Pacific Coast.
2. France.
  - a) Voyages of Verrazano and Cartier.
  - b) Attempts at settlement in Florida (Carolina).
  - c) Conditions favoring colonizing ventures about 1600.
  - d) Acadian settlements.
  - e) Champlain—Quebec, 1608. Relation with Indians.
  - f) Spread into the interior of Valley of Great Lakes.
3. England.
  - a) Cabots and Elizabethan seamen.
  - b) Attempts of Gilbert and Raleigh.
  - c) Reasons for early failure.
  - d) Later colonizing companies of Plymouth and London.
  - e) Proprietary settlements.
  - f) Unauthorized settlements by private individuals or groups of settlers.
4. The Dutch.
  - a) Dutch relations to Spain, Portugal and England.
  - b) Dutch East India Company.
  - c) Hudson's voyage.
  - d) Early fur trading on Hudson River. Permanently occupied from 1613.
  - e) Later West India Company.
5. Sweden.
  - a) Importance of Sweden in Europe in 17th century.
  - b) Plans of Gustavus Adolphus for colony.
  - c) Resumption under Queen Christina and her minister Oxenstern. Influence of discontented Dutch colonists.
6. Summary.
  - a) Basis of claim of each nation to land in America.
  - b) Reasons for varying success of several states.
  - c) Condition of Colonies, 1600; 1650.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 16-23; Ashley, 33-38; Channing, 33-46; Hart, 40-43; James & Sanford, 26-36; Johnston-MacDonald, 13-21; McLaughlin, 20-36; McMaster, 19-29; Montgomery, 20-30, 38-40; Muzzey, 15-22.

For Collateral Reading.—Fisher, Colonial Era, ch. 3; Thwaites, p. 31-32, 33-44.

For Topical Study:—

1. Bancroft, I, 50-59; Bourne, Spain in America, ch. 10-12; Channing, U. S., ch. 3; Doyle, English Colonies, I, 75-81; Fiske, Discovery of America, II, 213-182; Hildreth, U. S., I, ch. 3; Parkman, Pioneers of France, ch. 1; Wilson, American People, I, ch. 1; Winsor, America, II, all.

2. Channing, U. S., I, ch. 4; Doyle, I, 81-100; Hildreth, U. S., I, ch. 3; Parkman, Pioneers, ch. 2-10; Thwaites, France in America, ch. 1; Wilson, I, ch. 1; Winsor, IV, ch. 2-3.

3. Bancroft, I, 60-83; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 5-6; Doyle, I, 43-74; Fiske, Old Virginia, I, 1-59; Hildreth, U. S., I, ch. 3; Tyler, England in America, ch. 1-2; Wilson, I, ch. 1; Winsor, III, ch. 4, 6.

6. Bourne, ch. 13; Fiske, Discovery, II, 463-569.

Source References.—Caldwell & Persinger, European History, 17-34; Hart, Source Book, 18-29; Old South Leaflets, 17, 37.

46, 91, 92, 94, 115-121; Original Narratives of Early American History, volumes on Spanish Explorers, Early English and French Voyages, and on Champlain; Trail Makers' Series, volumes upon journeys of Cabeza de Vaca, de Soto, Coronado, Champlain, and of LaSalle.

Biography.—Lives of Cortez, Coronado, Pizarro, Champlain, Hudson.

## SOURCE STUDY.

The first quotation below is a description by an eye-witness of the last days of the life of La Salle. The hazardous situation of his force is shown by the number of surrounding Indians; the means taken to prevent surprise upon the town; the resort to cruelties in order to overawe the Indians; and the effort to keep the leader's death secret.

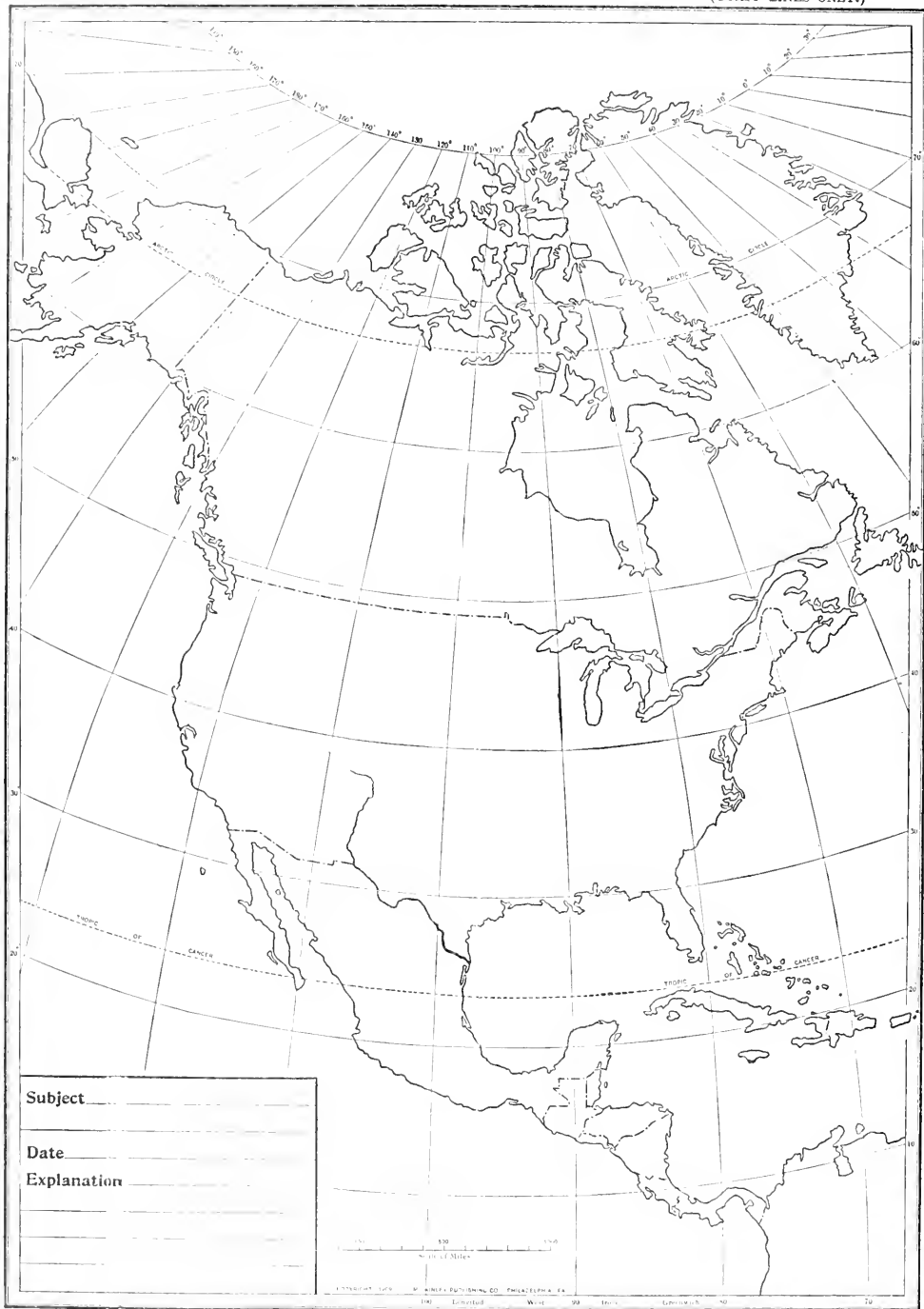
The second selection is an account of Champlain's first conflict with the Iroquois Indians; a battle of very great importance in the history of New France and New England.

## DEATH OF FERNANDO DE SOTO.

... The Governor had betaken himself to bed, being evil handled with fevers, and was much aggrieved that he was not in case [not able] to pass presently the river [Mississippi] . . . considering the river went now very strongly in those parts; for it was near half a league broad, and sixteen fathoms deep, and very furious, and ran with a great current; and on both sides there were many Indians, and his power was not now so great, but that he had need to help himself rather by slights [strategy] than by force. . . . And seeing how many Indians came daily to the town, and what store of people was in that country, fearing they should all conspire together and plot some treason against him . . . all night the horsemen went the round; and two and two every squadron rode about, and visited the scouts that were without the town in their standings by the passages, and the cross-bowmen that kept the canoes in the river. . . . And because the Indians should stand in fear of them, he determined to send a captain . . . that by using them cruelly, neither [of the Indian tribes] should presume to assail him. . . . *Nuñez de Touar* and his company made such speed, that before the Indians of the town could fully come out, they were upon them: . . . There were about five or six thousand people in the town: and as many people came out of the houses, and fled from one house to another, and many Indians came flocking together from all parts, there was never a horseman that was not alone among many. The captain had commanded that they should not spare the life of any male. Their disorder was so great, that there was no Indian that shot an arrow at any Christian. The shrieks of women and children were so great, that they made the ears deaf of those that followed them. There were slain a hundred Indians, little more or less; and many were wounded with great wounds, whom they suffered to escape to strike a terror in the rest that were not there. . . .

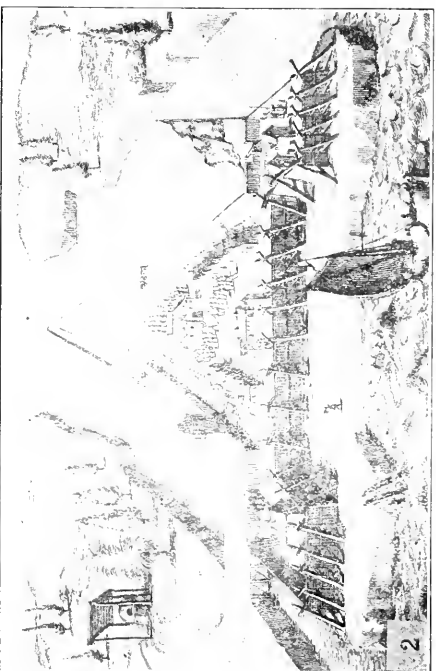
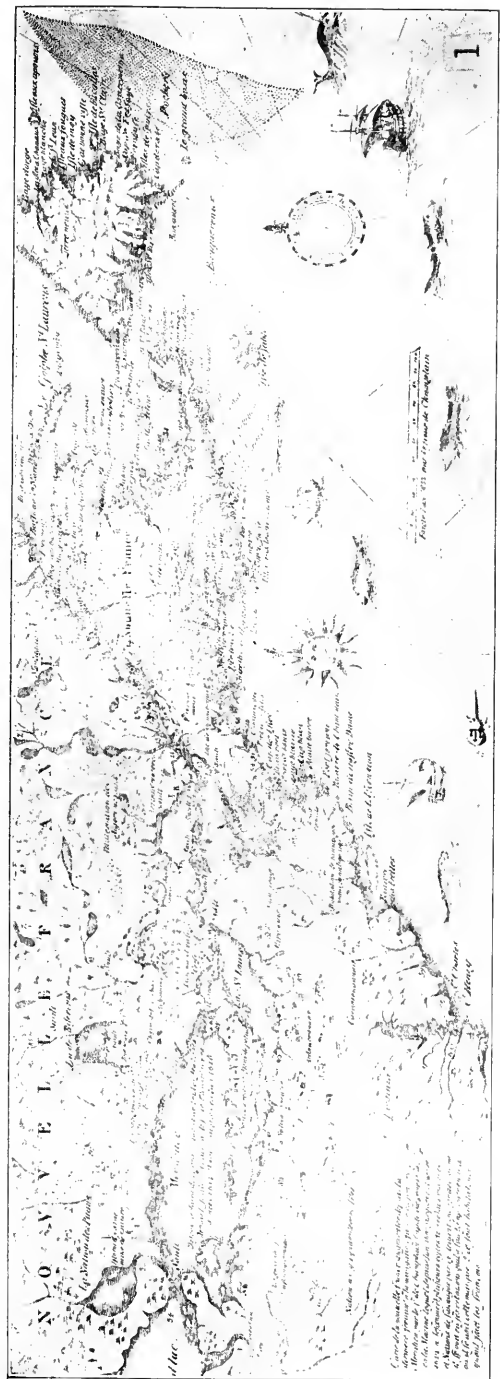
The Governor felt in himself that the hour approached wherein he was to leave this present life, and called for the king's officers, captains, and principal persons, to whom he made a speech. . . . And presently he named *Luis de Moscoso de Alvarado*, his captain-general [to be his successor]. The next day, being the 21st of May, 1542, departed out of this life, the valorous, virtuous, and valiant Captain, *Don Fernando de Soto*, Governor of *Cuba*, and *Adelantado of Florida*: whom fortune advanced, as it useth to do others, that he might have

(Continued on Page 4.)



### Map Work for Topic U 5.

Show on the map the journeys of the principal explorers and the location of the early settlements by each nation. Indicate the land held or claimed by each, in 1650.



No. 1. A portion of Chamblain's map of New France (1632). Note carefully the knowledge of the coast line and of the inland waters.  
 No. 2. Fort Charles, erected in Florida (Georgia), by Landrum, in 1564.  
 No. 3. View of New Amsterdam, from a Dutch engraving about 1676.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

the higher fall. He departed in such a place, and at such a time, as in his sickness he had but little comfort. . . . *Luis de Moscoso* determined to conceal his death from the Indians, because *Ferdinando de Soto* had made them believe that the Christians were immortal; . . .

As soon as he was dead, *Luis de Moscoso* commanded to put him secretly in the house, where he remained three days; and removing him from thence, commanded him to be buried in the night at one of the gates of the town within the wall. And as the Indians had seen him sick, and missed him, so did they suspect what might be. And passing by the place where he was buried, seeing the earth moved, they looked and spake one to another. *Luis de Moscoso* understanding of it, commanded him to be taken up by night, and to cast a great deal of sand into the mantles, wherein he was wound up, wherein he was carried in a canoe, and thrown into the midst of the river. . . . —Narrative of Luis Hernandez de Biedma, in French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana*, II, 188-191.

## CHAMPLAIN AND THE IROQUOIS, 1609.

Now as we began to approach within two or three days' journey of the abode of their [the Algonquins'] enemies, we advanced only at night, resting during the day. But they did not fail to practise constantly their accustomed superstitions, in order to ascertain what was to be the result of their undertaking; and they often asked me if I had had a dream, and seen their enemies, to which I replied in the negative. Yet I did not cease to encourage them, and inspire in them hope. When night came, we set out on the journey until the next day, when we withdrew into the interior of the forest, and spent the rest of the day there. About ten or eleven o'clock, after taking a little walk about our encampment, I retired. While sleeping, I dreamed that I saw our enemies, the Iroquois, drowning in a lake near a mountain, within sight. When I expressed a wish to help them, our allies, the savages, told me we must let them all die, and that they were of no importance. When I awoke, they did not fail to ask me, as usual, if I had had a dream. I told them I had, in fact, had a dream. This, upon being related, gave them so much confidence that they did not doubt any longer that good was to happen to them.

When it was evening, we embarked in our canoes to continue our course; and, as we advanced very quietly and without making any noise, we met on the 29th of the month [July, 1609] the Iroquois, about ten o'clock at evening, at the extremity of a cape which extends into the lake on the western bank. They had come to fight. We both began to utter loud cries, all getting their arms in readiness. We withdrew out on the water, and the Iroquois went on shore where they drew up all their canoes close to each other and began to fell trees with poor axes, which they acquire in war sometimes, using also others of stone. Thus they barricaded themselves very well.

Our forces also passed the entire night, their canoes being drawn up close to each other, and fastened to poles, so that they might not get separated, and that they might be all in readiness to fight, if occasion required. We were out upon the water, within arrow range of their barricades. When they were armed and in array, they

despatched two canoes by themselves to the enemy to inquire if they wished to fight, to which the latter replied that they wanted nothing else; but they said that, at present, there was not much light, and that it would be necessary to wait for daylight, so as to be able to recognize each other; and that, as soon as the sun rose, they would offer us battle. This was agreed to by our side. Meanwhile, the entire night was spent in dancing and singing, on both sides, with endless insults and other talk. . . . After this singing, dancing, and bandying words on both sides to the fill, when day came, my companions [Frenchmen] and myself continued under cover, for fear that the enemy would see us. We arranged our arms in the best manner possible, being, however, separated, each in one of the canoes of the savage Montagnais. After arming ourselves with light armor, we each took an arquebuse, and went on shore. I saw the enemy go out of their barricade, nearly two hundred in number, stout and rugged in appearance. They came at a slow pace towards us, with a dignity and assurance which greatly amused me, having three chiefs at their head. Our men also advanced in the same order, telling me that those who had three large plumes were the chiefs, and that they had only these three, and that they could be distinguished by these plumes, which were much larger than those of their companions, and that I should do what I could to kill them. I promised to do all in my power, and said that I was very sorry they could not understand me, so that I might give order and shape to their mode of attacking their enemies, and then we should, without doubt, defeat them all; but that this could not now be obviated, and that I should be very glad to show them my courage and good-will when we should engage in the fight.

As soon as we had landed, they began to run for some two hundred paces towards their enemies, who stood firmly, not having as yet noticed my companions, who went into the woods with some savages. Our men began to call me with loud cries; and, in order to give me a passage-way, they opened in two parts, and put me at their head, where I marched some twenty paces in advance of the rest, until I was within about thirty paces of the enemy, who at once noticed me, and, halting, gazed at me, as I did also at them. When I saw them making a move to fire at us, I rested my musket against my check, and aimed directly at one of the three chiefs. With the same shot, two fell to the ground; and one of their men was so wounded that he died some time later. I had loaded my musket with four balls. When our side saw this shot so favorable for them, they began to raise such loud cries that one could not have heard it thunder. Meanwhile, the arrows flew on both sides. The Iroquois were greatly astonished that two men were so quickly killed, although they were equipped with armor woven from cotton thread, and with wood which was proof against their arrows. This caused great alarm among them. As I was loading again, one of my companions fired a shot from the woods, which astonished them also to such a degree that seeing their chiefs dead, they lost courage, and took to flight, abandoning their camp and fort, and fleeing into the woods, whither I pursued them, killing still more of them. Our savages also killed several of them, and took ten or twelve prisoners. The remainder escaped with the wounded. Fifteen or sixteen were wounded on our side with arrow-shots; but they were soon healed. . . . —Grant, *Voyages of Samuel de Champlain, 1604-1618*, p. 162-165.

# Topic U 6. English Colonies: Virginia, Maryland, the Carolinas.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

### 1. Virginia.

- a) London Company. Charters of 1606, 1609, 1612. Grant of land as finally made; governmental powers under several charters.
- b) Early difficulties: poor character of colonists; plural governing council; bad climate and water; search for gold; attempt to make profits for London Company; bad Indian policy; absence of individual ownership of land or of products of labor.
- c) Attainment of economic and political success.
  - 1) Single executive; strong governors; codes of law.
  - 2) Land given in severalty to settlers.
  - 3) Tobacco cultivation—economic prosperity.
  - 4) Laboring class obtained: white servants; Indian and black slaves (1619).
- d) Representative government established by Company, 1619.
  - First representative assembly in America.
- e) Forfeiture of charter and establishment of royal government; form of royal control; continuance of popular elections and assemblies.
- f) Attitude toward Commonwealth government.
  - The Navigation Acts.
- g) Governor Berkeley and the Restoration.
- h) Growth of aristocracy.
  - 1) Bacon's rebellion—causes; results.

### 2. Maryland.

- a) Position of Catholic Englishmen.
- b) Lord Baltimore's charter: grant of land; governmental powers; commercial privileges.
- c) First settlement—St. Mary's, 1634.
- d) Establishment of representative government.
- e) Religious toleration.
- f) Civil wars and disorders, 1640-1660.
- g) Revolution of 1688-89; Catholics disfranchised; English church established.
- h) Province restored to later Lord Baltimore (1714) after his conversion to Protestantism.
- i) Severe laws against Catholics down to Revolution.

### 3. The Carolinas.

- a) Early settlements by Virginians, 1653.
- b) Grants to eight proprietors, 1663, etc.
- c) Settlements at north and at south of the grant; hence from first divided into two distinct economic and political districts.
- d) Early privileges granted to colonists (the "concessions").
- e) Failure to establish feudal aristocracy under Locke's Fundamental Constitutions.
- f) Popular government established.
- g) Many uprisings against proprietary governments.
- h) Surrender of South Carolina to Crown, 1718.
- i) Surrender of North Carolina to Crown, 1728.
- j) Forms of royal government established.

### 4. Life in Southern Colonies.

- a) Industry.
  - 1) Agriculture: tobacco, Indian corn, indigo, rice.

- 2) Other products: naval stores, pitch, turpentine, masts, spars, etc.; salted meats; potash; silk (?).

#### b) Labor system.

White servants; Indians; negro labor.

- c) Religion: Church of England established; repressive attitude toward Catholics, Puritans, Quakers; government of the parish.

- d) Local government: county court the principal feature; justices of peace almost hereditary tenure.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 24-29, 37-42, 57-59, 66-68; Ashley, 40-44, 59-61, 73-76; Channing, 50-62, 101-104; Hart, 46-56, 84-85; James & Sanford, 37-49, 74-79, 83-90; Johnston-MacDonald, 51-66; McLaughlin, 28-66; McMaster, 29-36, 54-55; Montgomery, 41-58, 89-93, 97-101; Muzzey, 27-35, 52-58.

For Collateral Reading.—Coman, *Industrial History*, 22-47; Elson, U. S., 60-98; Fisher, *Colonial Era*, ch. 4-6; Thwaites, *Colonies*, 51-111.

For Topical Study.—

1. Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, ch. 13-14; Bancroft, U. S., 1, 84-153, 412-474; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 2-10; Channing, U. S., 1, ch. 7-8; II, ch. 3; Doyle, *English Colonies*, I, ch. 6-9; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 1-97; Fiske, *Old Virginia*, I, 59-254; II, 1-130; Hildreth, U. S., 1, ch. 4, and 210-214, ch. 11, 15; Lodge, *English Colonies*, ch. 1; Tyler, *England in America*, ch. 3-6; Wilson, *American Nation*, I, p. 34-69, 256-280; Winsor, *America*, III, ch. 5; IV, ch. 4.

2. Andrews, ch. 15; Bancroft, I, 154-176, 437-441; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 31-35; Channing, U. S., 1, ch. 9; Doyle, I, ch. 10-11; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 220-265; Fiske, I, 255-318; II, 131-173; Hildreth, I, 204-209, ch. 11, 15; Lodge, ch. 3; Tyler, ch. 7-8; Wilson, I, 126-138; Winsor, III, ch. 13, IV, ch. 4.

3. Andrews, ch. 9-10; Bancroft, I, 408-436; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 35-39; Channing, U. S., II, ch. 12; Doyle, I, ch. 12; Fiske, II, 270-369; Hildreth, II, ch. 16; Lodge, ch. 5, 7; Wilson, I, 246-255, 290-291; Winsor, IV, ch. 4.

4. Bancroft, II, 3-23; Doyle, I, ch. 13; Fiske, *Old Virginia*, II, 174-269; Lodge, ch. 2, 4, 6, 8.

Source References.—American History Leaflets, 27, 36; Caldwell & Persinger, *Source History*, p. 21-28, 50-51, 65-72, 75-80, 86-88; Hart, *Source Book*, 33-37, 48-51, 65-67, 91-95; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, ch. 9-13; MacDonald, *Source Book*, p. 1-19, 20-22, 31-35, 53-55, 63-66, 76-78; MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 1-23, 34-36, 53-59, 104-106, 120-125, 148-168; Old South Leaflets, 167, 170, 172; Original Narratives of Early American History: Narratives of Early Virginia, of Early Maryland, of Early Carolina; Preston, *Documents*, p. 1-29, 32-36, 62-78.

Biography.—Lives of Captain John Smith.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

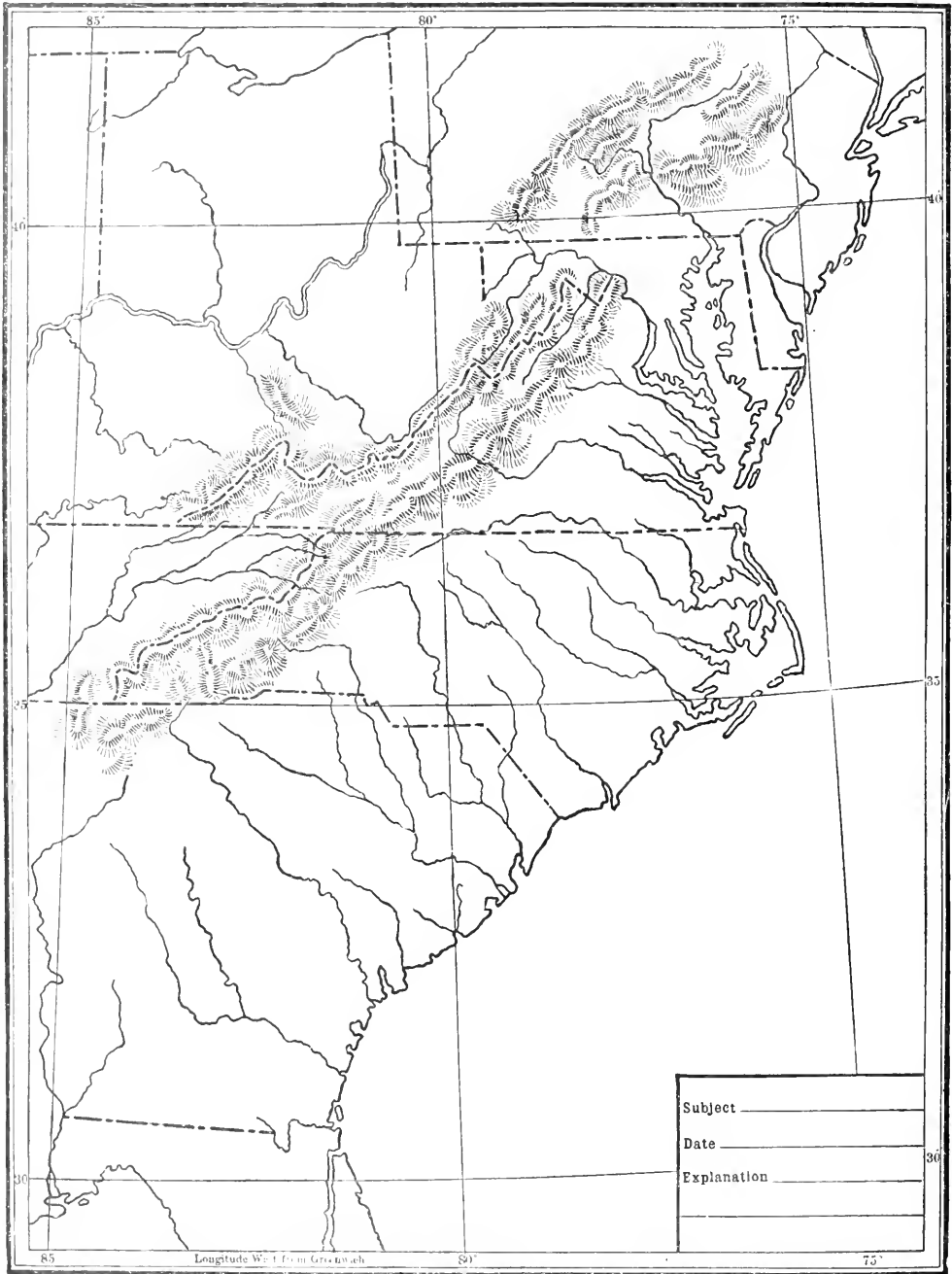
### FIRST REPRESENTATIVE ASSEMBLY IN AMERICA (1619).

The records of the first Virginia assembly were not known to be in existence until discovered in England, by the historian George Bancroft, about the middle of the nineteenth century. They have been republished several times. The student should notice the arrangements for seating the delegates (2 from each of 11 plantations), the method of procedure, the use of committees, and the subject-matter of such of the laws as are given below.

[Friday, July 30, 1619.]

The most convenient place we could finde to sitt in was the Quire of the Church Where Sir George Yeardley, the Governour, being sett downe in his accustomed place, those of the Councel of Estate sate nexte him on both handes, excepte onely the Secretary then appointed Speaker, who sate right before him, John Twine, clerke of the General assembly, being placed nexte the Speaker, and Thomas Pierce, the Sergeant, standing at the barre, to be ready for any service the Assembly shoulde com-

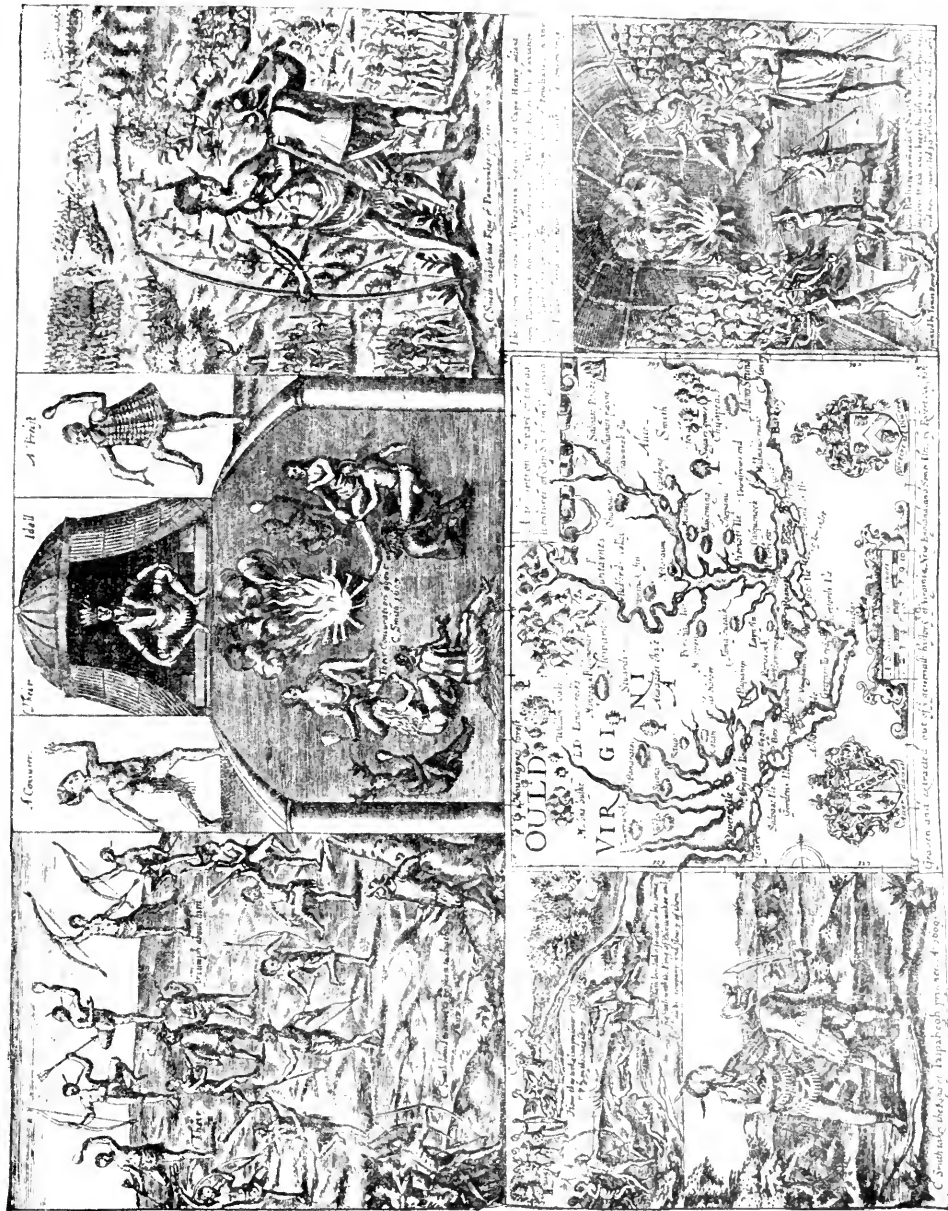
(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright, 1907, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

### Map Work for Topic U 6.

Show on map land grants and places of settlements. See Ashley, 40; Channing, 60, 62, 70, 80; Fiske, 66, 118; Hart, 45, 56, 85; James and Sanford, 38, 40; Johnston-MacDonald, 55, 56, 60; MacConn, 1606, 1609; McLaughlin, 35, 41, 56, 62; McMaster, 28, 32, 33, 35, 54, 57; Montgomery, Student's, 33, 49, 108, 118; Muzzey, 28, 55; Scudder, 63, 15; Shepherd, Historical Atlas, 193; Tyler, England in America, 99, 133.



The first part of the Map of Virginia from Captain John Smith's "The General History of Virginia, New England and the Summer Isles." The map, showing the coast from Cape Henry to Albemarle Sound, occupies but a small part of the plate, the remainder depicting Smith's exploits. From left to right across the top are shown: (1) Smith taken prisoner and bound to a tree to death; (2) A view of an Indian town, a conjurer and a priest; and a conjuration of the Indians over Smith; (3) Smith taking prisoner the King of Pamunkey. At the lower left Smith's agent taken prisoner in a swamp, but finding a savage [swagge] to his arms, fighteth with the King of Pamunkey and all his company, and slew 3 of them." At the lower right is Touchstone's rescue of Smith from death.

# SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

and him. But forasmuche as men's affaires doe little prosper where God's service is neglected, all the Burgesses tooke their places in the Quire till a prayer was said by Mr. Bucke, the Minister, that it would please God to guide and sanctifie all our proceedings to his owne glory and the good of this Plantation. Prayer being ended, to the intente that as we had begun at God Almighty, so we might proceed with awfull and due respect towards the Lieutenant, our most gracious and dread Sovereigne, all the Burgesses were intreated to retire themselves into the body of the Church, we being done, before they were full admitted they were called in order and by name, and so every man (none staggering at it) tooke the oath of Supremacy, and then entered the Assembly. . . .

. . . the Speaker, who a long time had bene extreame sickly, and therefore not able to passe through long harangues, delivered in briefe to the whole assembly the occasions of their meeting. Which done, he read unto them the commission for establishing the Councell of Estate and the General Assembly, wherein their duties are described to the life.

Having thus prepared them, he read unto them the greate Charter, or commission of privileges, orders and lawes, sent by Sir George Yeardley out of England. Which for the more ease of the Committees, having divided into fower books, he read the former two the same forenoon for expeditious sake, a second time over, and so they were referred to the perusal of twoe Comittees, weh did reciprocally consider of either, and accordingly brought in their opinions. But some man may here objecte to what ende we should presume to referre that to the examination of Comittees weh the Councell and Company in England had already resolved to be perfect, and did expecte nothing but our assente thereunto. To this we answer, that we did it not to the ende to correcte or controll anything therein contained, but onely in case we should finde ought [aught] not perfecting squaring wth the state of this Colony or any lawe weh did presse or binde too harde, that we might by waye of humble petition, seeke to have it redressed, especially because this great Charter is to binde us and our heyers for ever. . . . These Comittees thus appointed, we brake up the first forenoon's assembly.

After dinner the Governo<sup>r</sup> and those that were not of the Comittees sate a seconde time, while the said Comittees were employed in the perusal of those twoe books. . . .

Saturday, July 31.

The nexte daye, therefore, out of the opinions of the said Comittees, it was agreed, these Petitions ensuing should be framed, to be presented to the Treasurer, Councel & Company in England. . . .

At the same time, there remaining no farther scruple in the minds of the Assembly, touching the said great Charter of lawes, orders and privileges, the Speaker putt the same to the question, and so it had both the general assent and the applause of the whole assembly, who, as they professed themselves in the first place most submissively thankfull to almighty god, therefore so they commaunded the Speaker to retorne (as nowe he doth) their due and humble thanks to the Treasurer, Councell and company for so many privileges and favours as well in their owne names as in the names of the whole Colony whom they represented. . . .

Monday, Aug. 2.

By this present Generall Assembly be it enacted, that no injury or oppression be wrought by the English-

against the Indians whereby the present peace might be disturbed and antient quarrells might be revived. And farther be it ordained that the Chicohomini are not to be excepted out of this lawe; untill either that suche order come out of Englande, or that they doe provoke us by some newe injury.

Against Idleness, Gaming, durunkenes & excesse in apparell the Assembly hath enacted as followeth:

First, in detestation of Idleness he it enacted, that if any men be founde to live as an Idler or renegade, though a freedman, it shalbe lawfull for that Incorporation or Plantation to w<sup>ch</sup> he belongeth to appoint him a M<sup>r</sup> to serve for wages, till he shewe apparent signes of amendment.

Against drunkenness be it also decreed that if any private person be found culpable thereof, for the first time he is to be reprooved privately by the Minister, the second time publicly, the third time to lye in boltes 12 howers in the house of the Provost Marshall & to paye his fee, and if he still continue in that vice, to undergoe suche severe punishment as the Governo<sup>r</sup> and the Councell of Estate shall thinke fitt to be inflicted on him. But if any officer offende in this crime, the first time he shall receive a reproof from the Governour, the second time he shall openly be reprooved in the church by the minister, and the third time he shall first be committed and then degraded. Provided it be understood that the Governo<sup>r</sup> hath alwayes power to restore him when he shall, in his discretion thinke fite.

Against excesse in apparell that every man be cessed [assessed for taxes] in the church for all publike contributions, if he be unmarried according to his owne apparell, if he be married according to his owne and his wives, or either of their apparell. . . .

Be it enacted by this present assembly that for laying a surer foundation of the conversion of the Indians to Christian Religion, eache towne, city, Borrough, and particular plantation do obtaine unto themselves by just means a certaine number of the natives' children to be educated by them in the true religion and civile course of life—of w<sup>ch</sup> children the most towardly boyes in witt & graces of nature to be brought up by them in the first elements of litterature, so as to be fitt for the Colledge intended for them that from thence they may be sente to that worke of conversion.

Wednesday Aug. 4th.

This daye (by reason of extreame heat, both paste and likely to ensue, and by that meanes of the alteration of the healthes of diverse of the general Assembly) the Governour, who himselfe also was not well, resolved should be the last of this first session; so in the morning the Speaker (as he was requird by the Assembly) redd over all the lawes and orders that had formerly passed the house, to give the same yett one reviewe more, and to see whether there were any thing to be amended or that might be excepted againste. . . .

All persons whatsoever upon the Sabaoth daye shall frequeute divine service and sermons both forenoon and afternoon, and all suche as beare arms shall bring their pieces, swordes, poulder and shotte. And every one that shall transgresse this lawe shall forfeite three shillings a time to the use of the church, all lawfull and necessary impediments excepted. But if a servant in this case shall wilfully neglecte his M<sup>r</sup>'s commande he shall suffer fofolly punishment. . . .—*Colonial Records of Virginia*, 9-32.



# Topic U 7. English Colonies: New England.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

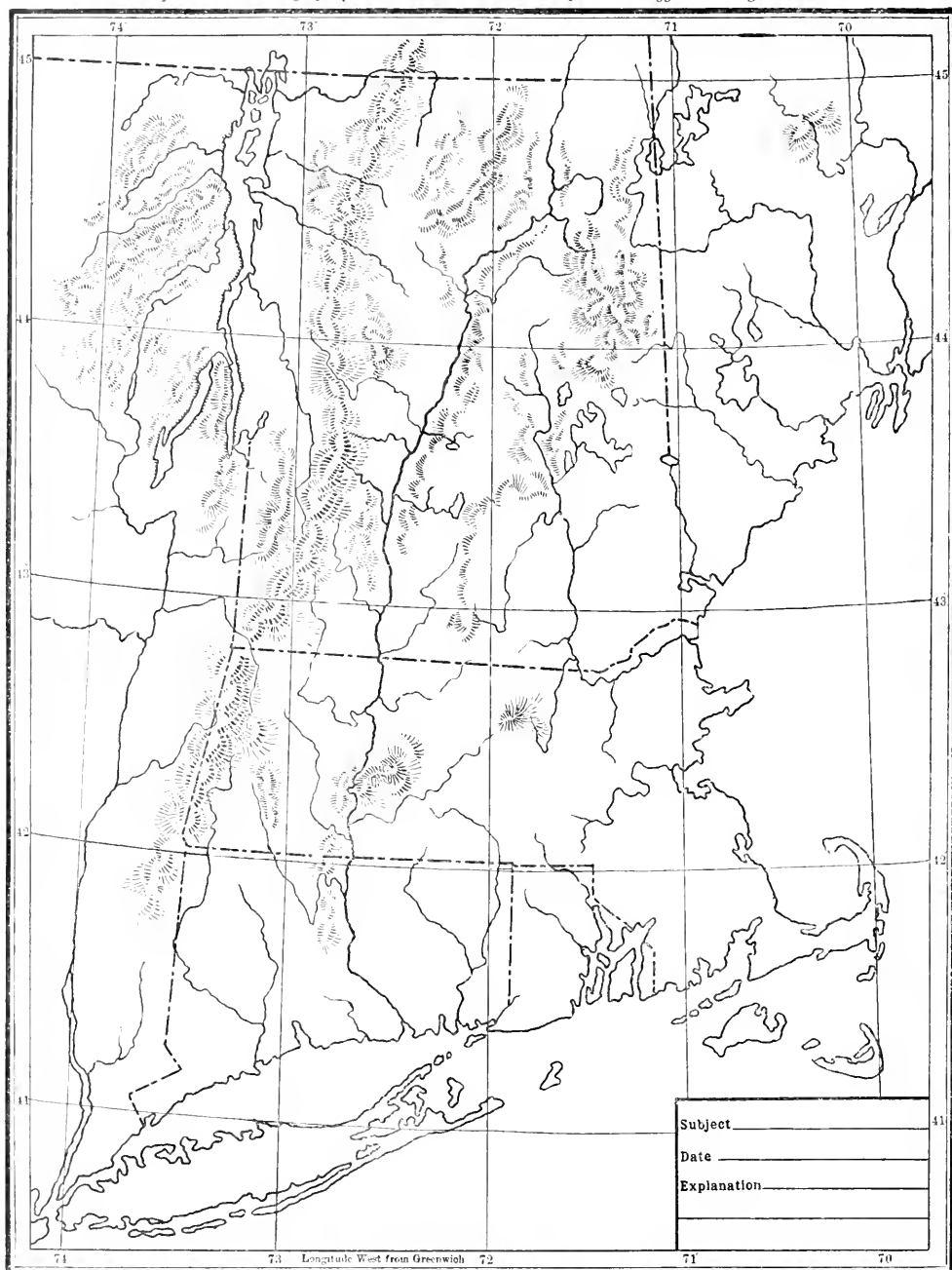
1. Early English Attempts at Settlement.  
Gosnold; Popham colony in Maine.
2. Plymouth Colony.
  - a) Definition of Separatists.
  - b) Pilgrims in England and Holland.
  - c) Voyage of Mayflower.
  - d) The settlement; Mayflower Compact; first winter; government; religion; fisheries and Indian relations.
  - e) Later slow development of colony.  
Representative government established.
  - f) Part of Massachusetts, 1691.
3. Massachusetts Bay Colony.
  - a) Definition of Puritans.
  - b) Situation in England, 1606-1640.
  - c) Organization of Massachusetts Bay Company.
  - d) Terms of Charter; land grant, government, etc.
  - e) Transfer of company to New England.
  - f) Great migration.
  - g) Restriction of political power to church members.
  - h) Attitude toward dissenters; Antinomians, Baptists, Presbyterians, Church of England, Quakers.
    - i) Establishment of representative government.
    - j) Town government.
    - k) Relations to England to 1650.
      - 1) Controversy with England, 1664-1683; forfeiture of charter, 1684.
4. Connecticut.
  - a) River towns on Connecticut River—Windsor, Hartford, Wethersfield; first federal government in America.
  - b) Saybrook Colony.
  - c) New Haven Colony—John Davenport; religious character of government.
  - d) United in 1662 by royal charter, under a government almost republican.
5. Rhode Island.
  - a) Roger Williams—his theory of separation of church and state; reasons for his exile from Massachusetts; founding of the colony at Providence.
  - b) Anne Hutchinson—colony of Rhode Island.
  - c) Early confusions and conflicts of authority.
  - d) Relations to Indians.
  - e) Charter of 1663—similar to that of Connecticut.
6. New Hampshire and Maine.
  - a) Early attempts at settlement.
  - b) Grants to Mason and Gorges.
  - c) Settlement at Dover, 1623.
  - d) Under control of Massachusetts; New Hampshire from 1641, Maine from 1652 and 1658.
  - e) New Hampshire separated from Massachusetts, 1679, and made a royal province.
  - f) Maine continued part of Massachusetts by purchase from Gorges heirs.
7. New England Confederation.
  - a) Reasons for forming.
  - b) Colonies admitted.
  - c) Form of government.
  - d) Acts: Indian affairs; church action; Quakers; influence of Massachusetts.
8. Dominion of New England.
 

Attempt of English Government to bring number of colonies under one government; unpopularity of Governor Andros; Revolution of 1688-89.
9. New England Life.
  - a) Industry: agriculture; fisheries; fur-trade; foreign and colonial commerce; ship-building and naval stores; manufactures.
  - b) Classes of population: few large estates; little social difference; apprentices.
  - c) Religion: significance in New England life; Puritanism; forms of church government; blue laws; persecution of dissenters.
  - d) Education: intellectual character of early settlers; common school system established; Harvard College (1636).
  - e) Codes of law.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 31-36, 42-51, 61-65; Ashley, 14-39, 61, 76-82; Channing, 63-82, 90-95, 101-110; Hart, 49-62, 83-89; James & Sanford, 50-63, 88-90; Johnston-MacDonald, 30-48; McLaughlin, 67-96; McMaster, 40-53; Montgomery, 66-88, 93-96; Muzzey, 35-52.
- For Collateral Reading.—Coman, *Industrial History*, 22-47; Elson, 99-119, 120-132; Fisher, *Colonial Era*, ch. 7-8; Thwaites, *Colonies*, 112-194.
- For Topical Study.—
1. Bancroft, U. S., I, 215-223; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 10; Doyle, *English Colonies*, II, 14-16; Fiske, *New England*, 75-79; Hildreth, U. S., I, 150-152.
  2. Bancroft, U. S., I, 194-214; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 12-15; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 11; Doyle, *English Colonies*, II, 39-109; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 98-187; Fiske, *New England*, 66-87; Hildreth, I, 152-175; ch. 9-10, 12, 14; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 341-383; Tyler, *England in America*, ch. 9-10; Wilson, *American People*, I, 74-99; Winsor, *America*, III, ch. 8.
  3. Bancroft, U. S., I, 224-248, 273-288, 367-381, 395-407; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 15-18; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 12-13; Doyle, *English Colonies*, II, 119-150, 151-198; Eggleston, *Beginners of a Nation*, 188-219, 327-349; Fiske, *New England*, 88-121; Hildreth, I, ch. 7, 9-10, 12, 14; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 343-372; Tyler, ch. 11-13; Wilson, I, 100-125; Winsor, *America*, III, ch. 9.
  4. Bancroft, U. S., I, 265-272, 356-360; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 18-21; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 11; Doyle, *English Colonies*, II, ch. 5, and pp. 251-267; Eggleston, 315-326; Fiske, *New England*, 122-139; Hildreth, I, ch. 9; Lodge, *English Colonies*, ch. 19; Tyler, ch. 14-15; Wilson, I, 138-149, 160-168.
  5. Bancroft, U. S., I, 249-256, 263-265, 362-365; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 24; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 14; Doyle, *English Colonies*, II, 151-165, 230-253; Eggleston, 266-311; Fiske, *New England*, 119-120; Hildreth, I, ch. 9-10, 12, 14; Lodge, ch. 20; Tyler, ch. 11; Wilson, I, 149-160.
  6. Bancroft, U. S., I, 257-262; Hildreth, I, ch. 9, 10, 12, 14; Lodge, ch. 21; Tyler, ch. 16.
  7. Bancroft, U. S., I, 289-310; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 23; Fiske, *New England*, ch. 4, 5; Tyler, ch. 18; Wilson, I, 170-172.
  8. Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, ch. 16-17; Bancroft, U. S., I, 574-601; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 26-31; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 3, 6, 8; Doyle, *English Colonies*, III, ch. 3-5; Fiske, ch. 6; Hildreth, II, 105-119; Wilson, I, 315-350.
  9. Bancroft, U. S., I, 311-322; II, 47-69; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 15, 18; Doyle, *English Colonies*, III, ch. 1; Fiske, *New France and New England*, 233-232; Lodge, ch. 22; Tyler, ch. 19; Winsor, *America*, V, ch. 2.
- Source References.—American Historical Leaflets, 7, 25, 29, 31; Caldwell & Persinger, *Source History*, 36-49, 55-64, 80-84, 92-93; Hart, *Source Book*, 37-41, 45-48, 51-57, 74-85; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, ch. 11-21; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 19, 22-27, 36-33, 60-62, 66-72, 84-90; MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 93-34, 36-42, 39-104, 125-133, 205-212; Old South Leaflets, 7, 8, 49-55, 66, 67, 93, 100, 110, 112, 133-151, 164, 169, 176; Original Narratives of Early American History; Bradford's History of Plymouth, Governor Winthrop's Journal, Johnson's Wonder Working Providence; Preston, *Documents*, 29-32, 36-62, 78-130.
- Biography.—Lives of Winthrop, Standish, Bradford, Williams, John Cotton, John Davenport, Thomas Hooker.

(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright, 1907, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

### Map Work for Topic U 7.

Mark the land grants and principal settlements. Consult Hubbard's map, on page 3 of this topic. See Ashley, 58; Channing, 60, 62, 70, 80; Fiske, 88, 106 (good); Hart, 45, 52, 65; James and Sanford, 57; Johnston-MacDonald, 36, 37, 38, 42; MacCoun, 1609, 1620; McLaughlin, 35, 41, 90, 93; McMaster, 43, 51; Montgomery, Student's, 33, 35, 49; Muzzey, 45, 55; Scudder, 56, 89; Shepherd, Historical Atlas, 189; Tyler, England in America, 196.

Copyright, 1912, McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

The Massachusetts Body of Liberties, of 1641, contains within its provisions one of the best epitomes we possess of the principles and political ideals of the New England fathers. Much of it is based upon English statutes and charters; part is drawn from the Mosiac legislation, and part is a result of their experiences as non-conformists in England, and as colonists in America.

### A COPPIE OF THE LIBERTIES OF THE MASSACHUSETTS COLONIE IN NEW ENGLAND (1641).

The free fruition of such liberties Immunities and priviledges as humanitie, Civilitie, and Christianitie call for as due to every man in his place and proportion; without impeachment and Infringement hath ever bene and ever will be the tranquillitie and Stabilitie of Churches and Commonwealthes. And the denial or deprival thereof, the disturbance if not the ruine of both. We hould it therefore our dutie and safetie whilst we are about the further establishing of this Government to collect and expresse all such freedoms as for present we foresee may concerne us, and our posteritie after us. And to ratify them with our sollemne consent.

We doe therefore this day religiously and unanimously decree and confirme these following Rites, liberties, and priviledges concerning our Churches, and Civill State to be respectively impartiallie and inviolably enjoyed and observed throughout our Jurisdiction for ever.

1. No mans life shall be taken away, no mans honour or good name shall be stayned, no mans person shall be arested, restrayned, banished, dismembred, nor any wayes punished, no man shall be deprived of his wife or children, no mans goods or estate shall be taken away from him, nor any way indammaged under Coulor of law, or Countenance of Authoritie, unlesse it be by vertue or equitie of some expresse law of the Country warranting the same, established by a generall Court and sufficiently published, or in case of the defect of a law in any particular case by the word of god. And in Capitall cases, or in cases concerning dismemb'ring or banishment, according to that word to be judged by the Generall Court.

2. Every person within this Jurisdiction, whether Inhabitant or forreiner shall enjoy the same justice and law, that is generall for the plantation, which we constitute and execute one towards another, without partialitie or delay.

9. No monopolies shall be granted or allowed amongst us, but of such new Inventions that are profitable to the Countrie, and that for a short time.

12. No man shall be twice sentenced by Civill Justice for one and the same Crime, offence, or Trespasse.

13. No man shall be beaten with above 40 stripes, nor shall any true gentleman, nor any man equall to a gentleman be punished with whipping, unless his crime be very shamefull, and his course of life vitious and profigate.

15. No man shall be forced by Torture to confesse any Crime against himselfe nor any other unlesse it be in some Capitall case where he is first fullie convicted by cleare and sufficient evidence to be guilty. After which if the cause be of that nature, That it is very apparent there be other conspiratours, or confederats with him, Then he may be tortured, yet not with such Tortures as be Barbarous and inhumane.

16. For bodilie punishments we allow amongst us none that are inhumane Barbarous or cruell.

17. No man shall be put to death without the testimony of two or three witnesses, or that which is equivalent there unto.

## LIBERTIES OF WOEMEN.

79. If any man at his death shall not leave his wife a competent portion of his estate, upon just complaint made to the Generall Court she shall be relieved.

80. Everie married woman shall be free from bodilie correction or stripes by her husband, unlesse it be in his owne defence upon her assault. If there be any just cause of correction complaint shall be made to Authoritie assembled in some Court, from which onely she shall receive it.

## LIBERTIES OF CHILDREN.

83. If any parents shall willfullie and unreasonably deny any childe timely or convenient marriage, or shall exercise any unnaturall severitie towards them, Such children shall have free libertie to complain to Authoritie for redresse.

## LIBERTIES OF SERVANTS.

85. If any servants shall flee from the Tiranny and crueltie of their masters to the howse of any freeman of the same Towne, they shall be there protected and susteyned till due order be taken for their relife. Provided due notice thereof be speedily given to their maisters from whom they fled. And the next Assistant or Constable where the partie flying is harboured.

87. If any man smite out the eye or tooth of his man servant, or maid servant, or otherwise mayne or much disfigure him, unlesse it be by mere casualtie, he shall let them goe free from his service. And shall have such further recompense as the Court shall allow him.

## LIBERTIES OF FORREINERS AND STRANGERS.

89. If any people of other Nations professing the true Christian Religion shall flee to us from the Tiranny or oppression of their persecutors, or from famyne, warres, or the like necessary and compulsarie cause, They shall be entayned and succoured amongst us, according to that power and prudence god shall give us.

91. There shall never be any bond slaverie villinage or Captivitie amongst us, unles it be lawfull Captives taken in just warres, and such strangers as willingly selle themselves or are sold to us. And these shall have all the liberties and Christian usages which the law of god established in Israell concerning such persons doeth morally require. This exempts none from servitude who shall be Judged thereto by Authoritie.

92. No man shall exercise any Tirranny or Crueltie towards any brute Creature which are usuallie kept for mans use.

## 91. CAPITALL LAWS.

### 1.

Dut. 13. 6. 10

Dut. 17. 2. 6

Ex. 22. 20

If any man after legall conviction shall have or worship any other god, but the lord god, he shall be put to death.

### 2.

Ex. 22. 18.

Lev. 20. 27.

Dut. 18. 10.

If any man or woeman be a witch, (that is hath or consulteth with a familiar spirit), They shall be put to death.

### 3.

Lev. 24. 15. 16

If any person shall Blaspheme the name of god, the father, Soone or Holie ghost, with direct, expresse, presumptuous or high handed blasphemie, or shall curse god in the like manner, he shall be put to death.

## 95. A DECLARATION OF THE LIBERTIES THE LORD JESUS HATH GIVEN TO THE CHURCHES.

3. Every Church hath free libertie of Election and ordination of all their officers from time to time, provided they be able, pious and orthodox.—Whitmore, *The Colonial Laws of Massachusetts, etc.*, 33-57.

# Topic U 8. English Colonies: The Middle Colonies.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. New Netherland.
  - a) Hudson's voyage, 1609.
  - b) Occupation of Manhattan Island continuously after 1613.
  - c) Dutch West India Company, 1624.
  - d) Patron concessions.
  - e) Early governors: Minuet, Kieft, Stuyvesant.
  - f) Relations to New England.
  - g) Conquest of New Sweden.
  - h) Conquest of New Netherland by English.
2. New Sweden.
  - a) Early proposals for Swedish colony.
  - b) First expedition and settlement at Christina (now Wilmington, Del.).
  - c) Later settlements on both banks of Delaware.
  - d) Conquest by Dutch.
3. New York.
  - a) Grant to Duke of York: land grant; broad governmental powers.
  - b) Conquest of Hudson and Delaware valleys; occupation of Long Island.
  - c) Duke of York's Book of Laws.
  - d) Contest for representative government.
  - e) Dominion of New England—Governor Andros.
  - f) Royal colony, 1685.
4. New Jersey.
  - a) Early Dutch, Swedish, and English settlements.
  - b) Grant to Berkeley and Carteret, 1664.
  - c) Favorable terms offered to settlers; glowing descriptions of country.
  - d) Division into East and West New Jersey.
  - e) Quaker control; popular forms of government, especially in West Jersey.
  - f) Surrender of governmental rights to the Crown, 1702.
5. Pennsylvania.
  - a) Rise and character of Quakers; Penn's life.
  - b) Penn's charter: land grant; governmental powers.
  - c) Great migration; almost immediate success.
  - d) Penn's provisions for the government of colony.
  - e) Continental European settlers.
6. Delaware.
  - a) Early settlements by Dutch, Swedes, and English.
  - b) Purchased by Penn from Duke of York.
  - c) Government under Penn family; same governor as Pennsylvania; distinct legislature after 1704.
7. Life in Middle Colonies.
  - a) Industry: Agriculture, diversified; commerce in food stuffs; shipbuilding, naval stores; fur-trade; manufactures.
  - b) Classes of population: differences based largely on size of land holdings; many indentured servants (largely redemptioners); slaves more numerous than in New England; attitude of Quakers toward slavery; toward Indians.
  - c) Religion: toleration practiced in all colonies; no religious establishments, except in some towns in New York and New Jersey.
  - d) Education: no common school system; private and denominational schools.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 51-57, 65-66; Ashley, 65-73, 82; Channing, 82-83, 95-101; Hart, 67-68, 78-84; James & Sanford, 68-74, 79-83; Johnston-MacDonald, 67-76; McLaughlin, 97-113; McMaster, 55-57; Montgomerie, 58-66, 96-97, 101-105; Muzzy, 58-67.
- For Collateral Reading.—Coman, *Industrial History*, 22-47; Elson, U. S., 133-159; Fisher, *Colonial Era*, ch. 9-11; Thwaites, 50-51, 195-232.
- For Topical Study.—
1. Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, ch. 5; Bancroft, U. S., I, 494-500, 504-517; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 22-23; Channing, U. S., I, ch. 16-17; Doyle, *English Colonies*, IV, ch. 1, 3; Fiske, *Dutch and Quaker Colonies*, I, 58-294; Hildreth, U. S., I, ch. 5, 13; Lodge, *Short History*, 285-295; Wilson, *American People*, I, 69-74; Winsor, *America*, IV, ch. 8.
  2. Bancroft, I, 501-503; Hildreth, I, 413-434; Lodge, 205-208; Winsor, IV, ch. 9.
  3. Andrews, ch. 5-6; Bancroft, I, 518-520, 523-527; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 34-45; Channing, U. S., II, ch. 2, 7; Doyle, IV, 78-124, ch. 4-6; Fiske, II, 1-98; Hildreth, II, 41-51; Lodge, 294-311; Wilson, I, 226-232; Winsor, *America*, II, ch. 10.
  4. Bancroft, I, 520-523, 516-551; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 16-49; Channing, II, ch. 2; Doyle, IV, 125-129; ch. 7-8; Hildreth, II, 51-61; Lodge, ch. 11; Wilson, I, 238-246, 294-309; Winsor, III, ch. 11.
  5. Andrews, ch. 11-12; Bancroft, I, 528-545, 552-573; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 50-52; Channing, II, ch. 4, 11; Doyle, IV, ch. 9; Fiske, II, 90-167; Hildreth, II, 64-80; Lodge, ch. 12; Wilson, I, 303-315; Winsor, III, ch. 12.
  6. Hildreth, II, 121-123; Lodge, ch. 11.
  7. Bancroft, II, 24-46; Fiske, II, 238-329; Lodge, ch. 13, 15, 17; Winsor, V, ch. 3.
- Source References.—Caldwell & Persinger, *Source History*, 31-33, 84-86, 88-92, 95-97; Hart, *Source Book*, 42-44, 5-65, 67-71, 85-90; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, ch. 22-26; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 26-31, 74-76, 80-84; MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 43-53, 136-148, 171-204, 215-222, 224-229; Old South Leaflets, 69, 95, 96, 150, 168, 171; *Original Narratives of Early American History: Narratives of New Netherland, of Pennsylvania; Preston, Documents*, 130-146.
- Biography.—Lives of Hudson, Stuyvesant, Governor Andros, William Penn.

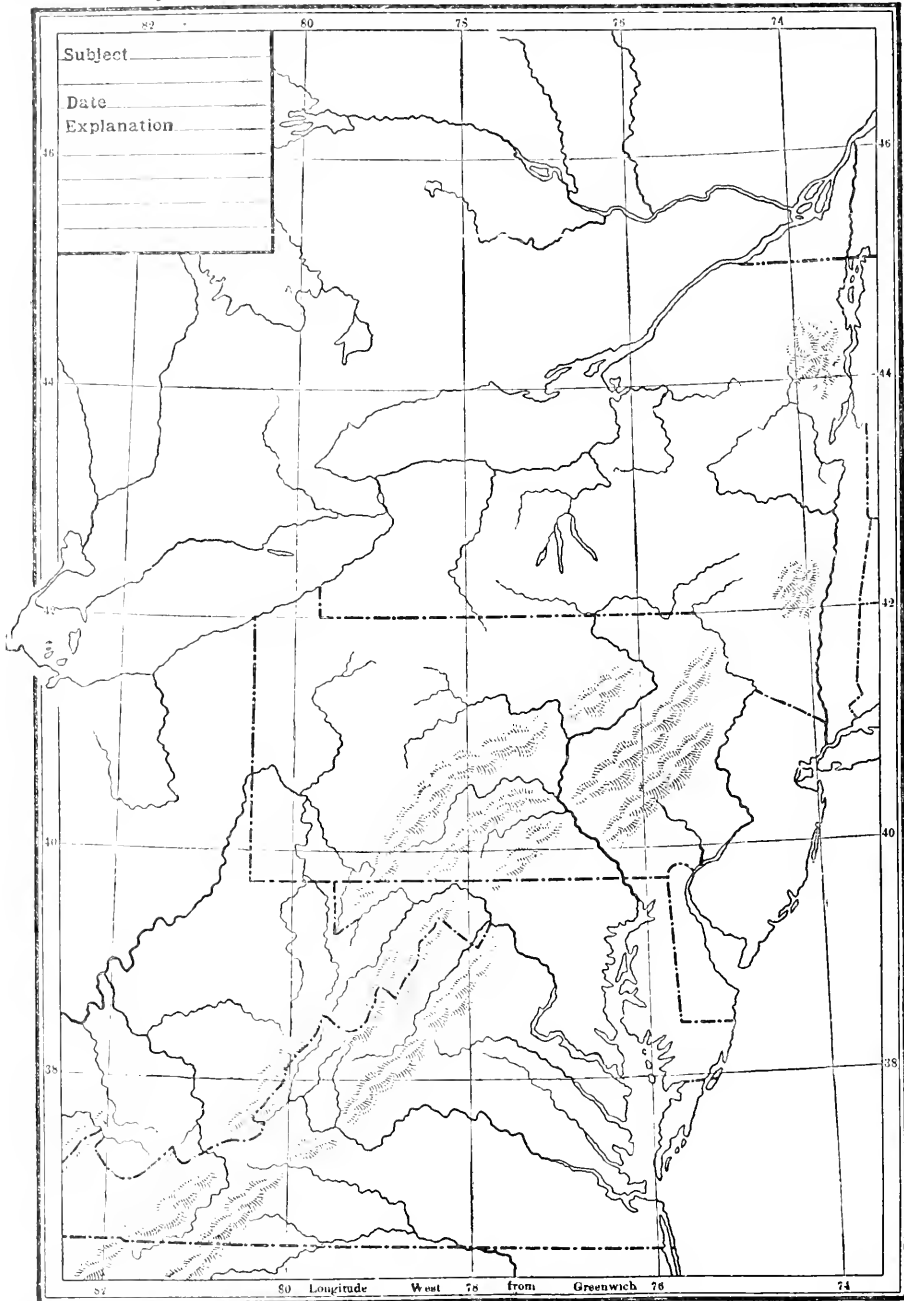
## SOURCE-STUDY.

### DESCRIPTION OF NEW YORK AND NEW JERSEY.

The following extracts are taken from the first printed description in the English language, of the country now forming the States of New York and New Jersey. Daniel Denton, the author, was a resident of Jamaica, Long Island; later he went to England, and there, in 1670, was published his "Brief Description of New York: Formerly called New Netherlands."

To give some satisfaction to people that shall be desirous to transport themselves thither (the Countrey being capable of entertaining many thousands), how and after what manner people live, and how land may be procured, &c., I shall answer, that the usual way, is for a Company of people to joyn together, either enough to make a Town, or a lesser number; these go with the consent of the Governor, and view a Tract of Land, there being choice enough, and finding a place convenient for a Town, they return to the Governor, who upon their desire admits them into the Colony, and gives them a Grant or Patent for the said Land, for themselves and Associates. These persons being thus qualified, settle the place, and take in what inhabitants to themselves they shall see cause to admit of, till their Town be full; these Associates thus taken in have equal privileges with themselves, and they make a division of the Land suitable to every man's occasions, no man being debarr'd of such

(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright, 1902, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

### Map Work for Topic U 8.

Show land grants and principal settlements. See Ashley, 73; Channing, 116; Fiske, 126, 128, 130, 142; Hart, 43, 65; James and Sanford, 72, 80; Johnston-MacDonald, 71; MacCoun, 1664; McLaughlin, 106; McMaster, 56; Montgomery, Student's, 33, 35, 49; Muzzey, 55; Shepherd, Historical Atlas, 192.



Map of New Netherland, 1656, by Van der Donck. The coast line is quite accurately shown; the rivers and their tributaries are well drawn, except in the unexplored interior, where the South (Delaware) River connects with the North (Hudson) River. The map will repay a careful study.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

quantities as he hath occasion for, the rest they let lie in common till they have occasion for a new division, never dividing their Pasture-land at all, which lies in common to the whole Town. The best Commodities for any to carry with them is Clothing, the Country being full of all sorts of Cattel, which they may furnish themselves withal at an easie rate, for any sorts of English Goods, as likewise Instruments for Husbandry and Building, with Nails, Hinges, Glass, and the like; For the manner how they get a livelihood, it is principally by Corn [grain] and Cattle, which will there fetch them any Commodities; likewise they sowe store of Flax, which they make every one Cloth of for their own wearing, as also woollen Cloth, and Linsey-woolsey, and had they more Tradesmen amongst them, they would in a little time live without the help of any other Country for their Clothing: For Tradesmen there is none but live happily there, as Carpenters, Blacksmiths, Masons, Tailors, Weavers, Shoemakers, Tanners, Brickmakers, and so any other Trade; them that have no Trade betake themselves to Husbandry, get Land of their own, and live exceedingly well.

Thus have I briefly given you a Relation of New-York, with the places thereunto adjoining; in which, if I have err'd, it is principally in not giving it its due commendation: for besides those earthly blessings where it is stor'd, Heaven hath not been wanting to open his Treasure, in sending down seasonable showers upon the Earth, blessing it with a sweet and pleasant Air, and a Continuation of such Influences as tend to the Health both of Man and Beast; and the Climate hath such an affinity with that of England, that it breeds ordinarily no alteration to those which remove thither; that the name of seasoning, which is common to some other Countreys hath never there been known; That I may say, and say truly, that if there be any terrestrial happiness to be had by people of all ranks, especially of an inferior rank, it must certainly be here: here any one may furnish himself with land, and live rent-free, yea, with such a quantity of Land, that he may weary himself with walking over his fields of Corn, and all sorts of Grain; and let his stock of Cattel amount to some hundreds, he needs not fear their want of pasture in the Summer or Fodder in the Winter, the Woods affording sufficient supply. For the Summer-season, where you have grass as high as a man's knees, nay, as high as his waste, interlaced with Pea-vines and other weeds that Cattel much delight in, as much as a man can press through; and these woods also every mile or half-mile are furnished with fresh ponds, brooks or rivers, where all sorts of Cattel, during the heat of the day, do quench their thirst and cool themselves; these brooks and rivers being invironed of each side with several sorts of trees and Grape vines, the Vines, Arbor-like, interchanging places and crossing these rivers, does shade and shelter them from the scorching beams of Sols fiery influence; Here those which Fortune hath frown'd upon in England, to deny them an inheritance amongst their Brethren, or such as by their utmost labors can scarcely procure a living, I say such may procure here inheritances of lands and possessions, stock themselves with all sorts of Cattel, enjoy the benefit of them whilst they

live, and leave them to the benefit of their children when they die: Here you need not trouble the Shambles for meat, nor Bakers and Brewers for Beer and Bread, nor run to a Linnen Draper for a supply, every one making their own Linnen, and a great part of their woollen cloth for their ordinary wearing: And how prodigal, If I may so say, hath Nature been to furnish the Country with all sorts of wilde Beasts and Fowle, which every one hath an interest in, and may hunt at his pleasure: where besides the pleasure in hunting, he may furnish his house with excellent fat Venison . . . and the like; and wearied with that, he may go a Fishing, where the Rivers are so furnished, that he may supply himself with Fish before he can leave off the Recreation: Where you may travel by Land upon the same Continent hundreds of miles, and passe through Towns and Villages, and never hear the least complaint for want, nor hear any ask you for a farthing; there you may lodge in the fields and woods, travel from one end of the Country to another, with as much security as if you were lockt within your own Chamber; and if you chance to meet with an Indian-Town, they shall give you the best entertainment they have, and upon your desire, direct you on your way: But that which adds happiness to all the rest, is the Healthfulness of the place, where many people in twenty years time never know what sickness is; where they look upon it as a great mortality if two or three die out of a town in a years time; where besides the sweetness of the Air, the Country itself sends forth such a fragrant smell, that it may be perceived at Sea before they can make the Land; where no evil fog or vapour doth no sooner appear but a North-west or Westerly winde doth immediately dissolve it, and drive it away: What shall I say more? you shall scarce see a house, but the South side is begirt with Hives of Bees, which increase after an incredible manner: That I must needs say, that if there be any terrestrial Canaan, 'tis surely here, where the Land floweth with milk and honey. The inhabitants are blest with Peace and plenty, blessed in their Country, blessed in their Fields, blessed in the Fruit of their bodies, in the fruit of their grounds, in the increase of their Cattel, Horses and Sheep, blessed in their Basket, and in their Store; In a word, blessed in whatsoever they take in hand, or go about, the Earth yielding plentiful increase to all their painful labours.

Were it not to avoid prolixity, I could say a great deal more, and yet say too little, how free are those parts of the world from that pride and oppression, with their miserable effects, which many, nay almost all parts of the world are troubled, with being ignorant of that pomp and bravery which aspiring Humours are servants to, and striving after almost every where: where a Waggon or Cart gives as good content as a Coach; and a piece of their home-made Cloth, better than the finest Lawns or richest Silks; and though their low-roofed houses may seem to shut their doors against pride and luxury, yet how do they stand wide open to let charity in and out, either to assist each other, or relieve a stranger, and the distance of place from other Nations, doth secure them from the envious frowns of ill-affected Neighbours, and the troubles which usually arise thence. . . .—Daniel Denton, *A Brief Description of New York* (reprint of 1845), pp. 17-22.



# Topic U 9. Spanish and French Settlements.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Spanish Settlements.
  - a) Explorations by Spaniards.
  - b) Colonies established: West Indies, Mexico, Peru, Florida, south and western parts of United States.
  - c) Character of occupation.
  - d) Relations to Indians.
  - e) Form of government: arbitrary, by officers from mother country, not by colonists.
  - f) Colonial industry: mining; plantations; limitations on colonial trade.
  - g) Religion: missionary activity.
  - h) Extent of Spanish occupation and claims.
2. French Settlements.
  - a) In general: followed the river valleys into the great interior plains; shut off from English by Alleghenies; from the Spaniards by the trackless plains of southwest.
  - b) Early settlements in Acadia (1603-1605) and Canada (1608).
 

Importance of work of Champlain.
  - c) Controversy with English to 1634.
  - d) Spread through the St. Lawrence valley, 1634-1669.
  - e) Entrance into Mississippi Valley, 1669.
    - 1) Joliet and Marquette.
    - 2) La Salle: his life and work.
    - 3) Hennepin, 1680.
    - 4) Settlements on the Gulf Coast, Biloxi, 1699-1701; New Orleans, 1717.
  - f) Relation to English in Hudson Bay region.
  - g) Chain of forts from Canada to Gulf of Mexico.
  - h) Life in French colonies.
    - 1) Industry: fur-trade, fisheries, agriculture.
    - 2) Feudalism; monopolies; artificial restraints on trade with Europe.
    - 3) Government: arbitrary; controlled by governor, intendant and council appointed by king; usually natives of France, not colonists; no representative government, no local self-government, no meetings of colonists.
    - 4) Religion: established by law; missionary activities.
3. Comparison of Spanish and French colonies with the English.
  - a) Emphasis placed upon military occupation; forts and trading posts.
  - b) Importance of relation to Indians; fur-trade; Indians as agricultural workers and workers in mines.
  - c) Population: comparatively small for extent of territory occupied.
  - d) Many restrictions on trade and industry.
  - e) No participation of colonists in government or trade.
  - f) Large place in society held by clergy; compare New England.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trench, 73-79; Ashley, 86-94; Channing, 36-40, 50, 114-115; Hart, 69-75, 124-127; James & Sanford, 104-120; Johnston-MacDonald, 83-86; McLaughlin, 129-138; McMaster, 60-65, 76-80; Montgomery, 47, 109-113; Muzzey, 81-92.

For Collateral Reading.—Coman, *Industrial History*, 8-21; Thwaites, 49-50, 243-257.

## For Topical Study.—

1. Bourne, Spain in America, ch. 14-20; Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II, 483-569; Winsor, *America*, II, ch. 5-9.

2. Bancroft, U. S., II, 137-174, 224-237; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 70-113; Channing, U. S., II, ch. 5; Fiske, *Discovery*, II, 483-569; Fiske, *New France and New England*, 1-132; Hildreth, U. S., II, ch. 18, and p. 220-226, 280-284; Parkman, *Jesuits in North America*, *Pioneers of France in New World*, ch. 1-17, *LaSalle and the Discovery of the Great West*, *Count Frontenac and New France under Louis XIV*, ch. 1-8; Thwaites, *France in America*, ch. 1-5; Winsor, IV, ch. 4-7.

3. *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 98-109.

Source References.—Hart, *Source Book*, 96-98; Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, ch. 17; *Trail Makers' Series*, *Journeys of de Soto*, *Coronado*, *Champlain*, *LaSalle*.

Biography.—*Lives of Champlain*, *LaSalle*.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

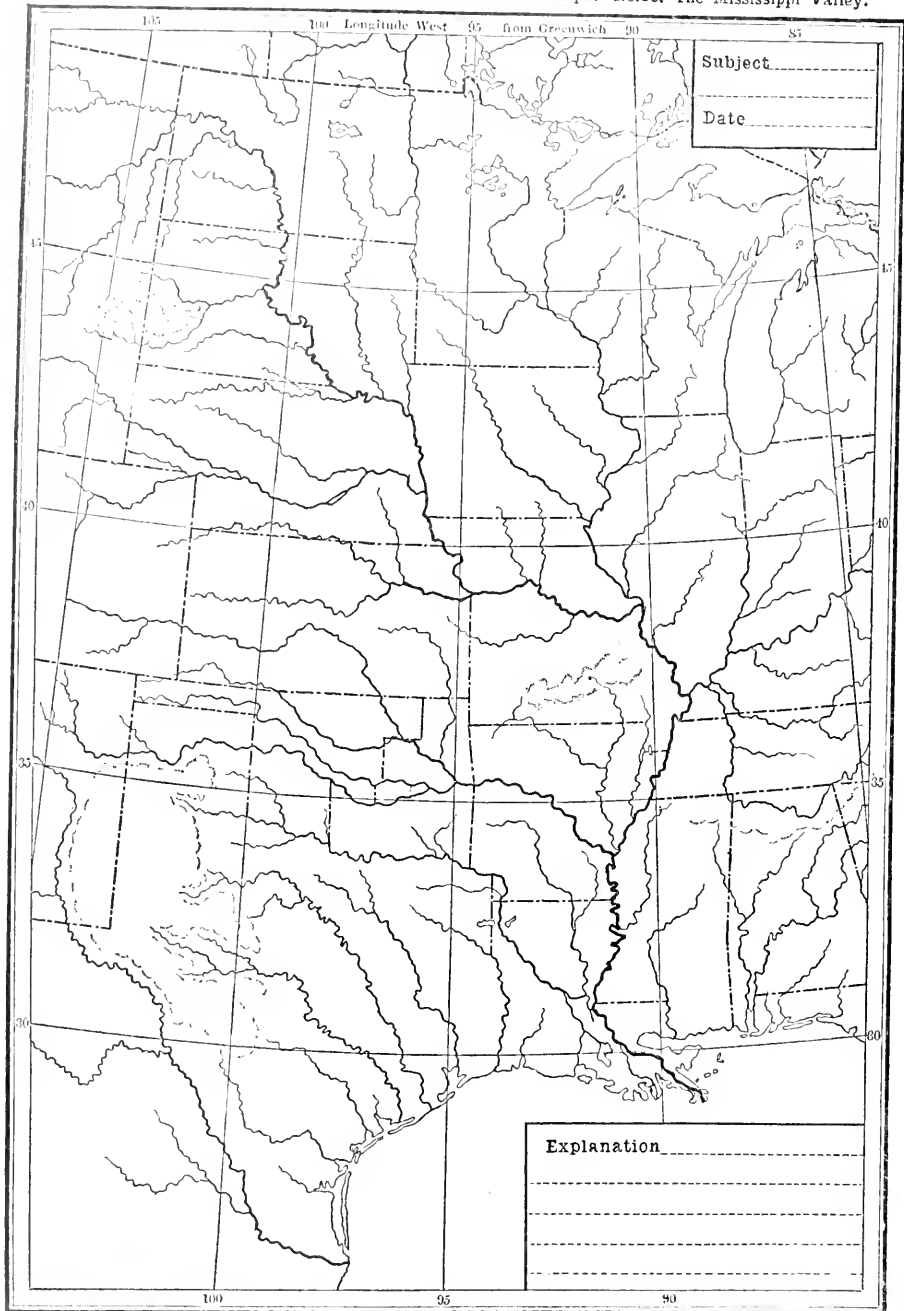
### LA SALLE'S EXPLORATION OF THE MISSISSIPPI, 1682.

The following extracts are taken from the account written by Father Zenobius Membré, a Recollect monk who accompanied La Salle:

On the 21st of December, I embarked with the sieur de Tonty and a party of our people on Lake Dauphin (Michigan), to go toward the divine river, called by the Indians Checagou, in order to make necessary arrangements for our voyage. The sieur de la Salle joined us there with the rest of his troop on the 4th of January, 1682, and found that Tonty had had sleighs made to put all on and carry it over the Chicago which was frozen; for though the winter in these parts is only two months long, it is notwithstanding very severe.

We had to make a portage to enter the Illinois river, which we found also frozen; we made it on the 27th of the same month, and dragging our canoes, baggage, and provisions, about eighty leagues on the river Seignelay (Illinois), which runs into the river Colbert (Mississippi), we traversed the great Illinois town without finding any one there, the Indians having gone to winter thirty leagues lower down on Lake Pimiteoui (Peoria), where Fort Crevecoeur stands. We found it in a good state, and La Salle left his orders there. As from this spot navigation is open at all seasons, and free from ice, we embarked in our canoes, and on the 6th of February, reached the mouth of the river Seignelay, at 38° north. The floating ice on the river Colbert, at this place, kept us till the 13th of the same month, when we set out, and six leagues lower down, found the Ozage (Missouri) river, coming from the west. It is full as large as the river Colbert into which it empties troubling it so, that from the mouth of the Ozage the water is hardly drinkable. The Indians assure us that this river is formed by many others, and that they ascend it for ten or twelve days to a mountain where it rises; that beyond this mountain is the sea where they see great ships; that on the river are a great number of large villages, of many different nations; that there are arable and prairie-lands, and abundance of cattle and beaver. Although this river is very large, the Colbert does not seem augmented by it; but it pours in so much mud, that from its mouth the water of the great river, whose bed is also slimy, is more like clear mud than river water, without changing at all till it reaches the sea, a distance of more than three hundred leagues, although it receives seven large rivers, the water of which is very beautiful, and which are almost as large as the Mississippi.

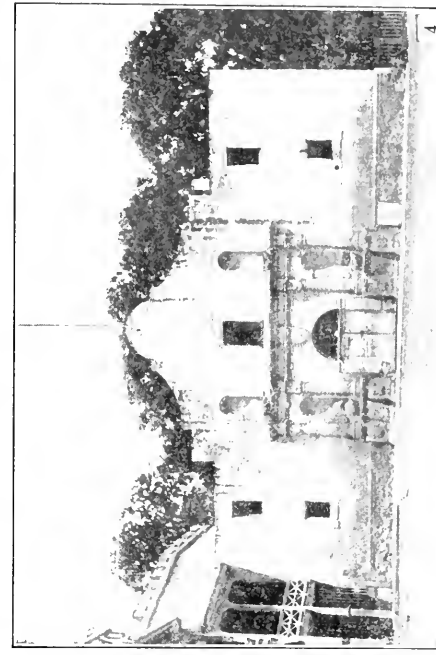
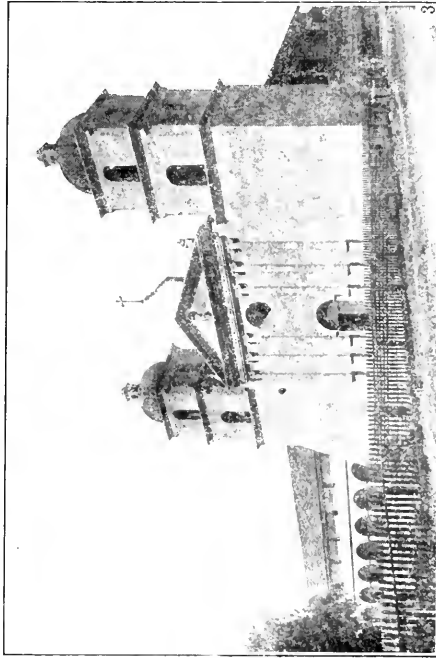
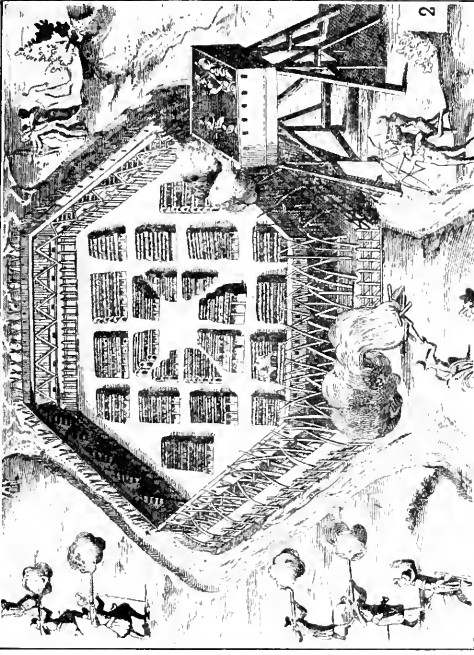
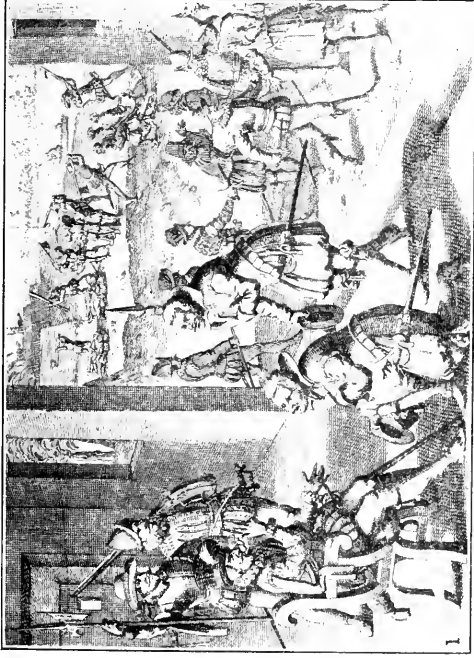
(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright, 1901, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

### Map Work for Topic U 9.

Show on the map 1) the route of LaSalle; 2) the principal French posts in the region shown. See Adams and Trent, 73; Hart, 70; James and Sanford, 105, 109; Johnston-MacDonald, 85; MacCoun; McMaster, 62; Montgomery, Leading Facts, 111; Montgomery, Student's, 139; Muzzey, 88; Shepherd, Historical Atlas, 190; Thomas, 68.



No. 1. Massacre of the French under Ribault, by the Spaniards under Valencourdis, in Florida, 1563. From an old engraving (1703).  
 No. 2. Champlain's attack upon an Indian fort. Note the scaffolding from which Champlain's men could fire into the village, and the attempt to set fire to the village. From Champlain's *Nouvelle France* (1632).  
 No. 3. This picture and No. 4 give an idea of Spanish-American architecture. No. 3 is a modern photograph of the Spanish mission at Santa Barbara, Cal.  
 No. 4. The Alamo, San Antonio, Texas. An old Spanish convent, later noted for the massacre which took place there during the Texas war for independence from Mexico (1835).

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

On the 14th, six leagues further, we found on the east the village of the Tamaroas, who had gone to the chase; we left there marks of our peaceful coming, and signs of our route, according to practice, in such voyages. We went slowly, because we were obliged to hunt and fish almost daily, not having been able to bring any provisions but Indian corn.

Forty leagues from Tamoroa is the river Oüabache (Ohio), where we stopped. From the mouth of this river you must advance forty-two leagues without stopping, because the banks are low and marshy, and full of thick foam, rushes and walnut trees. . . .

On the 14th of the same month, the sieur de la Salle took possession of this country with great ceremony. He planted a cross, and set up the king's arms, at which the Indians showed a great joy. You can talk much to Indians by signs, and those with us managed to make themselves a little understood in their language. I took occasion to explain something of the truth of God, and the mysteries of our redemption, of which they saw the arms. During this time they showed they relished what I said, by raising their eyes to heaven, and kneeling as if to adore. We also saw them rub their hands over their bodies after rubbing them over the cross. In fact, on our return from the sea, we found that they had surrounded the cross with a palisade. . . .

The whole country is covered with palm-trees, laurels of two kinds, plums, peaches, mulberry, apple, and pear trees of every kind. There are also five or six kinds of nut-trees, some of which bear nuts of extraordinary size. They also gave us several kinds of dried fruit to taste; we found them large and good. They have also many other kinds of fruit-trees which I never saw in Europe; but the season was too early to allow us to see the fruit. We observed vines already out of blossom. The mind and character of this people appeared on the whole docile and manageable, and even capable of reason. I made them understand all I wished about our mysteries [religion]. They conceived pretty well the necessity of a God, the creator and director of all, but attribute this divinity to the sun. Religion may be greatly advanced among them, as well as among the Akansas, both these nations being half civilized. . . .

The 26th of March resuming our course, we perceived, twelve leagues lower down, a periagua or wooden canoe, to which the sieur de Tonty gave chase, till approaching the shore, we perceived a great number of Indians. The sieur de la Salle, with his usual precaution, turned to the opposite banks, and then sent the calumet of peace by the sieur de Tonty. Some of the chief men crossed the river to come to us as good friends. They were fishermen of the Natché tribe (Natchez), enemies of the Tausa. . . .

At last, after a navigation of about forty leagues, we arrived, on the sixth of April, at a point where the river divides into three channels. The sieur de la Salle divided his party the next day into three bands, to go and explore them. He took the western, the sieur Dautray the southern, the sieur Tonty, whom I accompanied, the middle one. These three channels are beautiful and deep. The water is brackish; after advancing two leagues it became perfectly salt, and advancing on, we discovered the open sea, so that on the ninth of April, with all possible solemnity, we performed the ceremony of planting the cross and raising the arms of France. After we

had chanted the hymn of the church, "Vexilla Regis," and the "Te Deum," the sieur de la Salle, in the name of his majesty, took possession of that river, of all rivers that enter it, and of all the country watered by them. An authentic act was drawn up, signed by all of us there, and amid a volley from all our muskets, a leaden plate inscribed with the arms of France, and the names of those who had just made the discovery, was deposited in the earth. The sieur de la Salle, who always carried an astrolabe, took the latitude of the mouth. Although he kept to himself the exact point, we have learned that the river falls into the gulf of Mexico, between 27° and 28° north, and, as is thought, at the point where maps lay down the Rio Escondido. This mouth is about thirty leagues distant from the Rio Bravo, (Rio Grande), sixty from the Rio de Palmas, and ninety or a hundred leagues from the river Panuco (Tampeco), where the nearest Spanish post on the coast is situated. We reckoned that Espiritu Santo Bay (Appalachee Bay), lay northeast of the mouth. From the Illinois' river, we always went south or southwest; the river winds a little, preserves to the sea its breadth of about a quarter of a league, is everywhere very deep, without banks, or any obstacle to navigation, although the contrary has been published. This river is reckoned eight hundred leagues long; we travelled at least three hundred and fifty from the mouth of the river Seignelay. . . .

When you are twenty or thirty leagues below the Maroa [Indians], the banks are full of canes until you reach the sea, except in fifteen or twenty places where there are very pretty hills, and spacious, convenient, landing-places. The inundation does not extend far, and behind these drowned lands you see the finest country in the world. Our hunters, French and Indian, were delighted with it. For an extent of at least two hundred leagues in length, and as much in breadth, as we were told, there are vast fields of excellent land, diversified here and there with pleasing hills, lofty woods, groves through which you might ride on horseback, so clear and unobstructed are the paths. These little forests also line the rivers which intersect the country in various places, and which abound in fish. The crocodiles are dangerous here, so much so that in some parts no one would venture to expose himself, or even put his hand out of his canoe. The Indians told us that these animals often dragged in their people where they could anywhere get hold of them. . . .

You meet prairies everywhere, sometimes of fifteen or twenty leagues front, and three or four deep, ready to receive the plough. The soil excellent, capable of supporting great colonies. Beans grow wild, and the stalk lasts several years, always bearing fruit; it is thicker than an arm, and runs up like ivy to the top of the highest trees. The peach-trees are quite like those of France, and very good; they are so loaded with fruit, that the Indians have to prop up those they cultivate in their clearings. There are whole forests of very fine mulberries, of which we ate the fruit from the month of May; many plum-trees and other fruit trees, some known and others unknown in Europe; vines, pomegranates, and horse-chestnuts, are common. They raise three or four crops of corn a year.

To conclude, our expedition of discovery was accomplished without having lost any of our men, French or Indian, and without anybody's being wounded, for which we were indebted to the protection of the Almighty, and the great capacity of Monsieur de la Salle. . . .—FRENCH. *Historical Collections of Louisiana*, IV. 165-181.

# Topic U 10. Sixty Years of Colonial Life 1689-1750.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Increase in Population.
  - a) In New England—natural increase mainly.
  - b) In Middle Colonies: natural increase, and immigration, particularly from Germany, also from Ireland and Scotland.
  - c) In Southern Colonies: by natural increase; by colonists from England, France, Switzerland, Germany and Scotland; importations of African negroes.
2. Pushing back the Frontier.
  - a) In New England: into Maine, New Hampshire, and Vermont.
  - b) In Middle Colonies: up the river valleys; the Mohawk, Chester, Shenandoah, and Susquehanna valleys; across the Alleghenies into the Ohio region.
  - c) In the South: into the uplands distant from coast; and toward the south into Georgia.
3. Settlement of Georgia.
  - a) Reasons for settlement.
  - b) Philanthropic character of Oglethorpe and the trustees.
  - c) Silk culture insisted upon.
  - d) Overthrow of Trustees' restrictions; introduction of slavery; land given in fee-simple; local self-government established.
  - e) Establishment of royal government, 1755.
  - f) Boundaries of province enlarged, by proclamation, 1763.
4. English Control of Colonies.
  - a) Parliamentary Acts: Navigation Acts: Colonial trade only in English or colonial vessels; enumerated articles to be taken first to England; all European products to come to colonies from England.
  - b) Parliamentary Acts: forbade or restricted manufacture of iron and steel, wool and felt (hats); forbade printing of English Bible; regulated colonial currency and naturalization; encouraged by bounties the production of raw materials, as pig iron, hemp, naval stores.
  - c) Parliamentary Acts: The Molasses act of 1733, levying duties on sugar, molasses, etc., from foreign West Indies to colonies, not enforced.
  - d) Change of colonies from charter and proprietary to royal provinces: New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Carolinas, Georgia.
  - e) English Lords of Trade and Plantations (Board of Trade).
    - 1) Obtained information from colonial governors.
    - 2) Recommended to King (Cabinet) persons for colonial offices.
    - 3) Advised King concerning colonial legislation.
    - 4) Heard disputes between colonies or colonial proprietors.
  - f) English repeal of colonial legislation: Possible in all colonies except Connecticut, Rhode Island, Maryland; often used against popular measures.
  - g) Church of England in colonies: under jurisdiction of Bishop of London; influence of Society for Propagation of the Gospel in For-

eign Parts; character of clergymen and missionaries sent out; importance of fact that all ministers must go to England for ordination (no colonial bishops to perform this ceremony).

### 5. Plans for Colonial Union.

- a) New England Confederation, 1643.
- b) The Dominion of New England (attempt to unite colonies from New Jersey to Maine).
- c) Efforts made in the colonies during French War of 1689-90.
- d) Projects from various sources for intercolonial union: by William Penn, by Board of Trade, etc.
- e) Albany Convention plan, 1754.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 67-71; Ashley, 89-93; Channing, 107-112; Hart, 107-118; James & Sanford, 134-140; Johnston-MacDonald, 76-80; McLaughlin, 116-128; McMaster, 106-108; Montgomery, 106-108; Muzzey, 66-71.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, *Economic History*, 34-47; Fisher, *Colonial Era*, ch. 12-20; Sparks, *Men Who Made Nation*, ch. 1; Thwaites, 233-244, 258-284.

For Topical Study.

1. Channing, U. S., II, ch. 14; Doyle, *English Colonies*, V, ch. 1; Fiske, *Dutch and Quaker Colonies*, II, 330-356; Greene, *Provincial America*, ch. 14.

3. Bancroft, U. S., II, 284-291; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 61-64; Doyle, V, ch. 8; Greene, *Provincial America*, ch. 13; Hildreth, U. S., II, 362-386; Lodge, *English Colonies*, ch. 9-10; Wilson, *American People*, II, 61-72; Winsor, *American*, V, ch. 6.

4. Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*, ch. 1-4; Bancroft, III, 238-266; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 65-68; Channing, U. S., II, ch. 1, 6, 8-10; Doyle, V, ch. 2; Greene, *Provincial America*, ch. 1-4, ch. 11; Hildreth, II, ch. 21 and p. 284-298.

5. Bancroft, VI, 5-8; *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 69. Source References, *American History* Leaflets, 14, 16, 19; Caldwell & Persinger, *Source History*, 139-164; Hart, *Source Book*, 74-73; Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, ch. 6; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. 11; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 55-59, 72-74, 78-79, 90-103; MacDonald, *Select Charters*, 106-120, 133-136, 168-170, 212-217, 235-234, 253-257; Preston, *Documents*, 146-188.

Biography.—Benjamin Franklin, John Woolman (journal).

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### ENGLISH LEGISLATION RESPECTING THE COLONIES.

The following quotations show the completed colonial policy of Great Britain: 1) Colonial trade limited absolutely to English or colonial vessels; 2) certain colonial products, "enumerated articles," to be transported to England before being shipped to any foreign country; 3) all European products to come to the colonies from England; 4) imports from foreign countries to England must come in English or colonial vessels, or in vessels of the nation producing the goods; 5) bounties or freedom from duties to be granted to certain raw materials produced in the colonies (pig iron, hemp, tar, masts, etc.); 6) discouragement of colonial manufacture.

### *An Act for the Encouraging and increasing of Shipping and Navigation.*

For the increase of Shipping and incouragement of the Navigation of this Nation, wherein under the good providence and protection of God the Wealth, Safety and Strength of this Kingdome is soe much concerned Bee it Enacted by the Kings most Excellent Majesty and by the Lords and Comons in this present Parliament assembled and the Authoritie thereof That from and after the First day of December One thousand six hundred and sixty and from thence forward noe Goods or Commodities whatsoever shall be Imported into or Exported out of any Lands Islands Plantations or Territories to his Majesty belonging or in his possession or which may hereafter

(Continued on Page 4.)

Copyright, 1901, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

Show European possessions in America, in 1750. See Adams and Trent, 81; Ashley, 90; Epoch Maps; Hart, 120; James and Sanford, 112; Labberton, 60; MacCoun, 1755; McLaughlin, 141; Montgomery, Student's, 143; Seudder, 89 (East. U. S. only); Thomas, 100; Thwaites, at end.

[illegible]

Copyright, 1912, McKimby Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

# SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

belong unto or be in the possession of His Majesty His Heires and Successors in Asia Africa or America in any other Ship or Ships Vessel or Vessells whatsoever but in such Ships or Vessells as doe truly and without fraude belong only to the people of England or Ireland Dominion of Wales or Towne of Berwicke upon Tweede or are of the built of, and belonging to any of the said Lands Islands Plantations or Territories as the Proprietors and right Owners thereof and wherof the Master and three fourths of the Mariners at least are English under the penalty of the Forfeiture and Losse of all the Goods and Commodities which shall be Imported into, or Exported out of, any of the aforesaid places in any other Ship or Vessel, as also of the Ship or Vessel with all its Guns Furniture Tackle Ammunition and Apparel. . . .

[§III.] . . . noe Goods or Commodities whatsoever of the growth production or manufacture of Africa Asia or America or if any part thereof, or which are described or laid down in the usual Maps or Cards of those places be Imported into England Ireland or Wales Islands of Guernsey or Jersey or Towne of Berwicke upon Tweede in any other Ship or Ships Vessel or Vessells whatsoever, but in such as doe truly and without fraude belong only to the people of England or Ireland, Dominion of Wales or Towne of Berwicke upon Tweede or of the Lands Islands Plantations or Territories in Asia Africa or America to his Majesty belonging as the proprietors and right owners thereof, and wherof the Master and three fourths at least of the Mariners are English under the penalty of the forfeiture of [goods and vessel]. . . .

[§IV]. And it is further Enacted . . . that noe Goods or Commodities that are of forraigne growth production or manufacture and which are to be brought into England Ireland Wales, the Islands of Guernsey & Jersey or Towne of Berwicke upon Tweede in English built shipping, or other shipping belonging to some of the aforesaid places, and navigated by English Mariners as aforesaid shall be shipped or brought from any other place or Places, Country or Countries, but only from those of their said Growth Production or Manufacture, or from those Ports where the said Goods and Commodities can only or are or usually have bene first shipped for transportation and from none other Places or Countries. . . .

[§XVIII.] . . . from and after the first day of Aprill which shall be in the yeare of our Lord One thousand six hundred sixty-one noe sugars Tobaecco Cotton Wool Indicoes Ginger Fustick or other dyeing wood of the Growth Production or Manufacture of any English Plantations in America Asia or Africa shall be shipped carryed conveyed or transported from any of the said English Plantations to any Land Island Territory Dominion Port or place whatsoever other than to such English Plantations as doe belong to His Majesty His Heires and Successors or to the Kingdom of England or Ireland or Principality of Wales or Towne of Berwicke upon Tweede there to be laid on shore under the penalty of the Forfeiture of [goods and vessel]. . . .—12 Charles II. ch. 18 [1660]. *Statutes of the Realm*, V, 246-250.

*An Act for the Encouragement of Trade.*

[§IV.] . . . [For maintaining a greater correspondence and kindness between this Kingdom and the Plantations] and making this Kingdome a Staple not only of the Commodities of those Plantations but alsoe of the Commodities of other Countreys and Places for the supplying of them, and it being the usage of other Nations to keepe their Plantations Trade to themselves, [Be it enacted that after March 25, 1661] noe Commoditie of the Growth Production or Manufacture of Europe shall

be imported into any Land Island Plantation Colony Territory or Place to His Majesty belonging, or which shall belong hereafter unto, or be in the Possession of His Majesty His Heires and Successors in Asia Africa or America (Tangier only excepted) but what shall be bona fide and without fraude laden and shipped in England Wales and the Towne of Berwicke upon Tweede and in English built Shipping . . . and wherof the Master and three fourths of the Mariners at least are English, and which shall be carried directly thence to the said Lands Islands Plantations Colonies Territories or Places, and from noe other place or places whatsoever Any Law Statute or Usage to the contrary notwithstanding. . . .—15 Charles II, chapter 7 [1663]; *Statutes of the Realm*, V, 449.

*An Act for encouraging the Importation of Naval Stores from her Majesty's Plantations in America.*

. . . Be it therefore enacted . . . That every Person or Persons that shall [within nine years from Jan. 1, 1705] import or cause to be imported into this Kingdom, directly from any of her Majesty's English Colonies or Plantations in America, in any Ship or Ships that may lawfully trade to her Majesty's Plantations . . . shall have and enjoy as a Reward or Premium for such Importation . . . as follows, (viz.)

II. For good and merchantable Tar per tun, containing eight Barrels, . . . four Pounds.

For good and merchantable Pitch per tun, . . . to be brought in eight Barrels, four Pounds.

For good and merchantable Rozin or Turpentine per tun, . . . to be brought in eight Barrels, three Pounds.

For Hemp, Water rotted, bright and clean, per Tun, . . . six Pounds.

For all Masts, Yards, and Bowsprits, per Tun, allowing forty-Foot to each Tun, . . . one Pound. . . .—3 and 4 Anne, ch. 10 [1704]; *Statutes at Large*, IV, 182.

*An Act to prevent the Exportation of Hatts out of any of his Majesty's Colonies or Plantations in America.*

. . . from and after the twenty-ninth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and thirty-two, no Hatts or Felts whatsoever, dyed or undyed, finished or unfinished, shall be shipt, loaden or put on Board any Ship or Vessel in any Place or Parts within any of the British Plantations, upon any Pretence whatsoever, by any Person or Persons whatsoever, and also that no Hatts or Felts, either dyed or undyed, finished or unfinished, shall be loaden upon any Horse, Cart or other Carriage, to the Intent or Purpose to be exported, transported, shipped off, carried or conveyed out of any of the said British Plantations to any other of the British Plantations, or to any other place whatsoever, by any Person or Persons whatsoever. . . .—5 George II, ch. 22 [1732]; *Statutes at Large*, VI, 89-90.

IX. And, that Pig and Bar Iron made in his Majesty's Colonies in America may be further manufactured in this Kingdom, Be it further enacted . . . [that] no Mill or other Engine for Slitting or Rolling of Iron, or any Platting Forge to work with a Tilt Hammer, or any Furnace for making Steel, shall be erected, or after such erection, continued, in any of his Majesty's Colonies in America; and if any Person or Persons shall erect, or cause to be erected, or after such erection, continue, or cause to be continued, in any of the said Colonies, any such Mill, Engine, Forge or Furnace, every Person or Persons so offending shall, for every such Mill, Engine, Forge or Furnace, forfeit the Sum of two hundred Pounds of lawful Moneys of Great Britain. . . .—23 George II, ch. 29 [1750]; *Statutes at Large*, VII, 261-263.



# Topic U 11. Intercolonial Wars, 1689-1763.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Situation and extent of American Colonies of Spain, France, and England, in 1689.
2. European Conditions, 1689-1750.
  - a) Louis XIV's wars with Dutch.
  - b) English Revolution of 1688.
  - c) War of Spanish Succession.
  - d) Commercial rivalry between England and Spain; War of Jenkin's Ear.
  - e) War of Austrian Succession: Contest of Frederick the Great and Maria Theresa. Influence on America.
3. Wars in America, 1689-1748.
  - a) Causes: European conflicts as above; colonial rivalries in the West Indies, on the fishing banks, along the Maine Coast, in the Indian country, and on Carolina frontier.
  - b) General Military Policy:
    - 1) French: border warfare with Indian allies; no serious attack on principal English towns.
    - 2) English: combined military and naval attacks on French maritime provinces.
    - 3) Spanish: attacks on southern English colonies and arousing of Indians.
  - c) Names and dates of Wars:
    - 1) King William's War, 1689-1697.
    - 2) Queen Anne's War, 1702-1713.
    - 3) King George's War, 1744-1748.
  - d) Results:
    - 1) By treaty of Utrecht (1713): Cession of Acadia, Newfoundland, and Hudson Bay country to England; commercial rights in Spanish colonies (assiento treaty).
    - 2) By treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1748): Louisbourg, taken after great expense on part of colonists, returned to France.
    - 3) Frontier massacres along both northern and southern borders.
    - 4) Development of colonial military organization.
4. French and Indian War (the Seven Years' War), 1754-1763.
  - a) Situation of French, Spanish and English in Europe, and with reference to their colonies.
  - b) Significance of the Ohio Valley: should English be hemmed in east of the mountains?
  - c) Colonial causes productive of war.
  - d) Comparison of population, location of forts, military strength, etc., of French and English colonies.
  - e) Posts of the French which English determined to take.
  - f) Albany Congress, and plan of union, 1754.
  - g) Early failures of the English, 1754-1756.
  - h) Political change in England; William Pitt in power; great influence upon the world position of England and colonies.
  - i) English successes, 1758-1760.
  - j) Treaty of Paris, 1763.
    - 1) Acquisitions by England
    - 2) Acquisitions by Spain.
    - 3) Overthrow of colonial empire of France.

- k) Royal proclamation of 1763: forbidding settlement in newly acquired lands.
- l) Pontiac's conspiracy; use of British troops to quell it.
- m) General results of the war:
  - 1) Removal of the French freed colonists from need of English protection.
  - 2) Gave military experience to colonists.
  - 3) Royal attitude toward newly acquired lands aroused colonial opposition.
  - 4) Turned English attention to need of stronger control of colonies.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 75-86; Ashley, 86-101; Channing, 112-119; Hart, 125-133; James & Sanford, 111-121; Johnston-MacDonald, 83-101; McLaughlin, 129-150; McMaster, 79-92; Montgomery, 114-124; Muzzey, 91-101.
- For Collateral Reading.—Elson, U. S., 160-197; Fisher, Colonial Era, ch. 42-20; Hart, Formation of the Union, 22-41; Sloane, French War and Revolution, ch. 1-9; Sparks, Expansion, ch. 6; Thwaites, 252-257.
- For Topical Study.—
1. Bancroft, U. S., II, 242-253; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 108-110; Channing, U. S., II, ch. 3; Greene, Provincial America, ch. 7; Thwaites, France in America, ch. 1-6.
  2. Bancroft, II, 177-223, 292-318; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 114-122; Channing, II, ch. 18; Greene, ch. 8-10; Hildreth, U. S., II, ch. 20-21, and pp. 258-268, 330-336, 374-382; Thwaites, ch. 6-7; Wilson, American People, II, 1-76; Winsor, America, V, ch. 7.
  3. Bancroft, II, 367-539; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 122-143; Channing, II, ch. 19; Doyle, English Colonies, V, ch. 9; Hildreth, II, ch. 26-27; Parkman, A Half Century of Conflict, Count Frontenac and New France Under Louis XIV, Montcalm and Wolfe, Conspiracy of Pontiac; Thwaites, ch. 9-17; Wilson, American People, II, 76-97; Winsor, V, ch. 8.
- Source References.—American Historical Leaflets, 5; Caldwell & Persinger, 123-125; Hart, Source Book, 98-107; Hart, Contemporaries, II, ch. 19, 20; MacDonald, Select Charters, 223-223, 229-232, 251-274; Old South Leaflets, 9, 73, 187.
- Biography.—Lives of Count Frontenac, Montcalm, George Washington, General Wolfe, Sir William Johnson.

## SOURCE-STUDY

### WASHINGTON'S JOURNEY TO THE FRENCH PORTS, 1753-1754.

The indomitable character of Washington, his accuracy in details, and the difficulties of frontier travel are well shown in the following journal of Washington's journey.

Major Washington's Journal of a Tour over the Alleghany Mountains.

I was commissioner and appointed by the Honorable Robert Dinwiddie, Esquire, Governor of Virginia, to visit and deliver a letter to the commandant of the French forces on the Ohio, and set out on the intended journey on the same day; the next, I arrived at Fredericksburg, and engaged Mr. Jacob Vanbraam to be my French interpreter, and proceeded with him to Alexandria, where we provided necessities. From thence we went to Winchester and got baggage, horses, &c., and from thence we pursued the new road to Will's Creek, where we arrived on the 14th of November [1753].

Here I engaged Mr. Gist to pilot us out, and also hired four others as servants . . . and in company with those persons left the inhabitants the next day, . . .

[On Nov. 22, Washington arrived at the present site of Pittsburgh where he had to wait for a canoe.]

As I got down below the canoe, I spent some time in viewing the rivers, and the land in the Fork, which I think extremely well situated for a fort, as it has the abso-

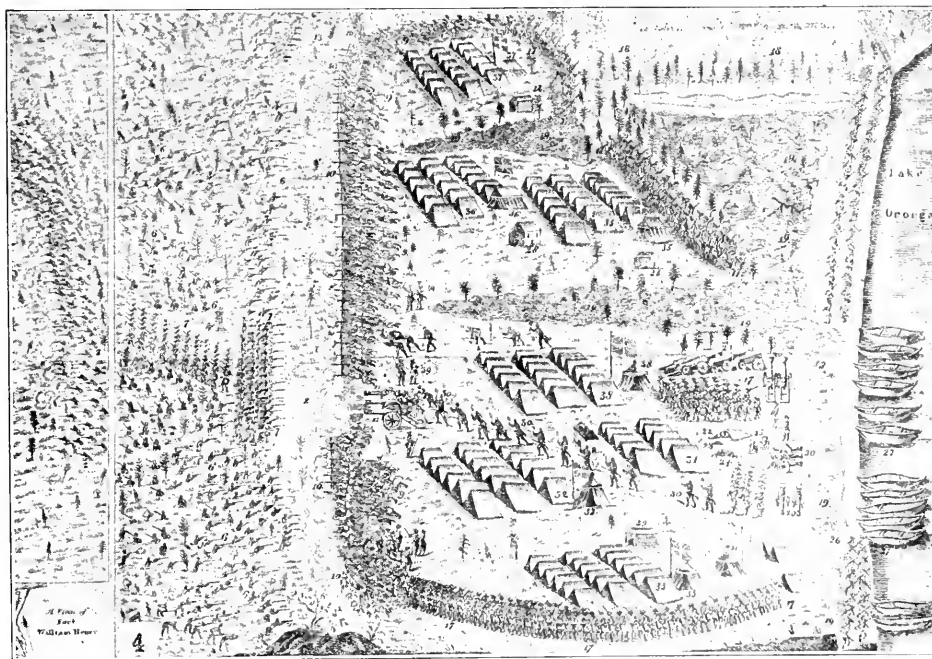
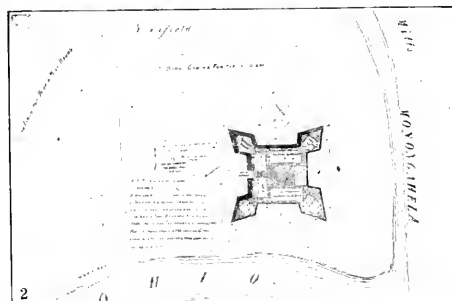
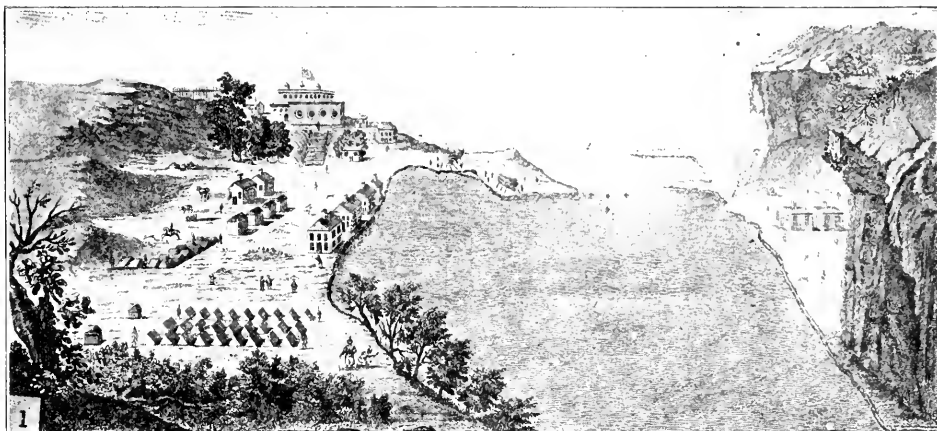
(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright, 1901, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 11.

Show on map the principal forts; the land cessions by treaty of 1763. See Ashley, 100; Channing, 191; Epoch Maps; Fiske, 175; Hart, 124; Hart, Formation, at end; James and Sanford, 125; Labberton, 61; MacCoun, 1763; McLaughlin, 119; McMaster, 90; Montgomery, Student's, 133; Muzzey, 102; Shepherd, Historical Atlas, 191; Thomas, 100.



No. 1. View of Fort Oswego, on Lake Ontario, as it appeared in 1755. Note the harbor and ships in process of building, the arrangement of tents, store-houses, etc. From a contemporary print.  
 No. 2. A view of Fort Du Quesne, in 1754.  
 No. 3. A plan of Fort Niagara under the French, 1756.  
 No. 4. A view of the battle fought near Lake George, on September 8, 1755, between 2,000 English and 250 Mohawks under General Johnson, and 2,500 French and Indians under General Dieskau, in which the English were victorious. Note the strong fortified camp of the English and the method of the French attack. From an old engraving.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

lute command of both rivers. The land at the point is twenty or twenty-five feet above the common surface of the water; and a considerable bottom of flat, well-timbered land all around it, very convenient for building. The rivers are each a quarter of a mile or more across, and run here very nearly at right-angles; Allegany bearing northeast; and Monongahela southeast. . . .

[Nov. 26, Washington met some of the Indian chiefs at Logstown.]

26.—We met in council at the long-house about nine o'clock, when I spoke to them as follows:

"Brothers, I have called you together in council, by order of your brother, the Governor of Virginia, to acquaint you, that I am sent with all possible despatch, to visit and deliver a letter to the French commandant, of very great importance to your brothers, the English; and I dare say to you, their friends and allies. . . ."

[The party arrived at Venango on Dec. 1, where they met Captain Joneaire and some other French officers.]

They told me, that it was their absolute design to take possession of the Ohio, and by G— they would do it; for that, although they were sensible the English could raise two men for their one, yet they knew their motions were too slow and dilatory to prevent any undertaking of theirs. They pretend to have an undoubted right to the river from a discovery made by one La Salle, sixty years ago; and the rise of this expedition is, to prevent our settling on the river or waters of it as they heard of some families moving out in order thereto. From the best intelligence I could get, there have been fifteen hundred men on this side Ontario Lake. But on the death of the general, all were recalled to about six or seven hundred, who were left to garrison four forts, one hundred and fifty or thereabouts in each.

7th.—. . . We found it extremely difficult to get the Indians off today, as every stratagem had been used to prevent their going up with me. . . .

At twelve o'clock, we set out for the fort, and were prevented arriving there until the 11th by excessive rains, snows, and bad travelling through many mires and swamps; these we were obliged to pass to avoid crossing the creek, which was impassable, either by fording or rafting, the water was so high and rapid. . . . [The distance travelled was about sixty miles. The next day Washington presented his letters to the Commandant, who with his officers retired to hold a council of war; meanwhile, Washington] could get no certain account of the number of men here, but according to the best judgment I could form, there are a hundred exclusive of officers, of whom there are many. I also gave orders to the people who were with me, to take an exact account of the canoes, which were hauled up to convey their horses down in the spring. This they did, and told fifty of birch bark, and a hundred and seventy of pine; besides many others, which were blocked out, in readiness for being made.

. . . This evening I received an answer to his Honor the Governor's letter from the commandant.

15th.—The commandant ordered a plentiful store of liquor, and provision to be put on board our canoes, and appeared to be extremely complaisant, though he was exerting every artifice, which he could invent, to set our Indians at variance with us, to prevent their going until after our departure; presents, rewards, and every thing which could be suggested by him or his officers. I cannot say that ever in my life I suffered so much anxiety, as I did in this affair. . . .

16th.—. . . We had a tedious and very fatiguing passage down the creek. Several times we had like to have been staved against rocks; and many times were obliged all hands to get out and remain in the water half an hour or more, getting over the shoals. At one place, the ice had lodged, and made it impassable by water; we were, therefore, obliged to carry our canoe across the neck of land, a quarter of a mile over. . . .

[Washington reached Venango on Dec. 22.]

23d.—The horses became less able to travel every day; the cold increased very fast; and the roads were becoming much worse by a deep snow, continually freezing; therefore, as I was uneasy to get back, to make report of my proceedings to his Honor the governor, I determined to prosecute my journey, the nearest way through the woods, on foot. . . . I took my necessary papers, pulled off my clothes, and tied myself up in a watch-coat. Then, with gun in hand and pack on my back, in which were my papers and provisions, I set out with Mr. Gist, fitted in the same manner, on Wednesday, [Dec.] the 26th. The day following, just after we had passed a place called Murdering Town (where we intended to quit the path and steer across the country for Shannopin's Town), we fell in with a party of French Indians, who had lain in wait for us. One of them fired at Mr. Gist or me, not fifteen steps off, but fortunately missed. We took this fellow into custody, and kept him until about nine o'clock at night, then let him go and walked all the remaining part of the night without making any stop, that we might get the start so far, as to be out of the reach of their pursuit the next day. . . . The next day we continued travelling until quite dark and got to the river about two miles above Shannopin's. We expected to have found the river frozen, but it was not, only about fifty yards from each shore. The ice, I suppose, had broken up above, for it was driving in vast quantities.

There was no way for getting over but on a raft, which we set about, with but one poor hatchet, and finished just after sun-setting. This was a whole day's work; we next got it launched, then went on board of it, and set off; but before we were half way over, we were jammed in the ice in such a manner, that we expected every moment our raft to sink and ourselves to perish. I put out my setting-pole to try to stop the raft, that the ice might pass by, when the rapidity of the stream threw it with so much violence against the pole, that it jerked me out into ten feet water; but I fortunately saved myself by catching hold of one of the raft-logs. Notwithstanding all our efforts, we could not get to either shore, but were obliged, as we were near an island, to quit our raft and make to it.

The cold was so extremely severe, that Mr. Gist had all his fingers and some of his toes frozen, and the water was shut up so hard, that we found no difficulty in getting off the island on the ice in the morning. . . .

. . . This day, [Jan. 7], we arrived at Will's Creek after as fatiguing journey as it is possible to conceive, rendered so by excessive bad weather. From the 1st day of December to the 15th, there was but one day on which it did not rain or snow incessantly. . . . [Washington] arrived in Williamsburg the 16th, when I waited upon his Honor the governor, with the letter I had brought from the French commandant. . . . I hope what has been said will be sufficient to make your honor satisfied with my conduct; for that was my aim in undertaking the journey, and chief study throughout the prosecution of it.—J. Sparks, ed., *The Writings of George Washington*, II, 432-447.

## Topic U 12. Colonial Life and Institutions.

### OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Classes of Population.
  - a) Society more democratic than that of England or Europe; absence of hereditary aristocracy or feudal land tenures.
  - b) Aristocracy, where existing, was generally based on differences of wealth, gained from commerce in New England, from landed estates in the South; sometimes based on official position.
  - c) Greater portion of the inhabitants of New England and Middle Colonies were farmers, with a few tradesmen and mechanics.
  - d) White servants: apprentices, indentured servants, redemptioners. Up to 1700 outnumbered the negro slaves in all colonies; later declined relatively in the South; but remained the real laboring class of the North.
  - e) Negro slaves.
    - 1) Unprofitable in New England, except as house-servants.
    - 2) In Middle Colonies used sparingly as farm laborers. Quakers opposed to slavery.
    - 3) In the South.
      - (a) In Maryland, Virginia and North Carolina, the principal laboring class, held relatively in small numbers, working under master's supervision; patriarchal relationship.
      - (b) In South Carolina and (later) Georgia: large plantations directed by overseers.
    - 4) Laws regulating servants and slaves: Master's treatment of his servants and slaves; apprehension of runaways; punishments for crime; equipment at the end of period of apprenticeship.
2. Home and Social Life.
  - a) In New England and Middle Colonies. Early log-cabins and cave dwellings; later clap-board, stone and brick houses; articles of food; modes of dress; means of transportation; domestic and agricultural implements; social life: the church, town-meetings, the coffee-house, the public-house and taverns, training-days, local social events.
  - b) In the South: Early rude dwellings; later more permanent dwellings; occasional mansions; food; clothing; imports from England; means of transportation; social life: the church, parish meetings, county court-days, sessions of assembly, life in Charleston.
3. Vocations.
  - a) Agriculture: In New England, meagre returns except in fertile river valleys; in Middle Colonies, widely diversified agriculture; in South, dependent upon a single or a few great staples, tobacco, indigo, rice.
  - b) The Fisheries: great source of income for New England; better grades of fish shipped to Catholic countries of Europe; the poorer grades to West Indies for food for slaves on sugar plantations.
  - c) Lumber and ship-building: Country thickly wooded with valuable timber; large exports from New England and Middle Colonies of masts, spars, barrel staves and shingles; ship-building begun early in New England; developed particularly in New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Delaware valley; colonial-built ships often sold abroad.
  - d) Commerce: largely controlled by New England, New York and Pennsylvania. Under navigation acts colonial vessels shared in commercial monopoly of English trade. Trade to West Indies very important; fish exchanged for molasses; latter made into rum in the colonies and sold for domestic consumption or for barter on African coast for negro slaves. Other exports: flour, rice, salted meats.
  - e) Manufactures: rudimentary, discouraged by England; blast furnaces and iron mills; felt hats made from furs; woollen and linen manufactures.
4. Religion.
  - a) Established churches:
    - 1) Congregational church in New Hampshire, Connecticut, and Massachusetts.
    - 2) Church of England in Maryland, Virginia, North and South Carolina, and Georgia.
  - b) Voluntary system in Rhode Island, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and largely in New York and New Jersey.
  - c) Attitude toward dissenters: at first persecuted in New England and the South; sects persecuted at times: Quakers, Baptists, Puritans, Presbyterians, Catholics, Jews.
  - d) Growth of more liberal spirit in the 18th century, both in New England and in the South.
  - e) Great revivals of the 18th century.
  - f) Names of men prominent in religious life of colonies.
5. Education and Intellectual Life.
  - a) In New England: the beginnings of public school system.
  - b) In Middle Colonies: denominational and neighborhood schools.
  - c) In the South: neighborhood schools, private tutors, ministers of Church of England, many sons sent to England.
  - d) Educational methods: hornbook, primer; place of Latin, and logic in higher schools; vocational training, well provided for in the apprenticeship system.
  - e) Colonial colleges in order of founding: Harvard, William and Mary, Yale, University of Pennsylvania (College and Charity School of Philadelphia), Princeton, Columbia (King's), Brown, Dartmouth, Rutgers (Queen's), Hampton-Sydney. Character of faculty, of students, of curricula.
  - f) Colonial printing-presses.
  - g) Colonial newspapers.
  - h) Colonial literature.
  - i) Knowledge of science.
  - j) Prominent men in intellectual life.

## 6. Political Organization.

- a) Features common to all the colonies.
  - 1) Representative assembly elected by people.
  - 2) Local self-government in town or county.
  - 3) Rights of Englishmen: share in levying taxes, jury trial, security of life and property.
  - 4) English common law and many of the great statutes of parliament were the basis of colonial legal systems.
  - 5) Court systems and procedure copied after those of England.
- b) English citizenship enjoyed by colonists.
- c) Three forms of colonial government: royal, charter, and proprietary, not a vital difference; mainly a difference in method of appointing governor, except in Rhode Island and Connecticut.
- c) Local government.
  - 1) In New England: the town with its meeting of all citizens; method of transacting of business; county unimportant.
  - 2) In Middle Colonies: a division of authority between townships and counties; town meetings rare.
  - 3) In the South: The county court the principal organ of local government; parishes, boroughs and towns relatively unimportant.
- d) The right to vote: limited universally to those holding some property, usually landed property; in a few colonies open to those holding personal property; in 1775 not more than four per cent. of population had right to vote.

## 7. Militia Regulations.

- a) Such laws existed in all colonies except Pennsylvania.
- b) All able-bodied male inhabitants with few exceptions required to equip themselves and train with the militia on certain days—training days; soldiers called the "train-band."
- c) Forms of weapons and accoutrements.

## 8. Peculiar Laws and Punishments.

- a) Sumptuary laws: against extravagance in dress and entertainment.
- b) Laws regulating prices of goods, provisions, and wages of labor.
- c) Punishments: whipping-post, ducking-stool, the stocks, the pillory, branding, cutting ears and noses; capital punishment for many crimes.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 60-68; Ashley, 101-124; Channing, 119-126; Hart, 90-106; James & Sanford, 128-141; Johnston-MacDonald, 76-79, 97-101; McLaughlin, 154-168; McMaster, 93-109; Montgomery, 121-132; Muzzey, 67-80.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, *Economic History*, 49-96; Cronin, *Industrial History*, 48-88; Elson, U. S., 198-224; Fisher, *Colonial Era*, ch. 12-20; Hart, *Formation of the Union*, 1-21; Shome, *French War and Revolution*, 10-21; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 4-5; Thwaites, *Colonies*, ch. 5, 8, 10, and pp. 278-281.

For Topical Study. In general: the works of Alice Morse Earle, Edward Eggleston, and of Sydney George Fisher contain many vivid descriptions of colonial life. See also C. M. Andrews, *Colonial Self-Government*; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 51-61; Hildreth, II, 117-132; Lodge, *Short History of English Colonies*, ch. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 13, 15, 17, 21 (good description of life in each of the Colonies about 1750).

1. Channing, U. S., II, ch. 13, 14; Doyle, *English Colonies*, V, ch. 6-7; Greene, *Provincial America*, ch. 14.

2. Doyle, V, ch. 1; S. G. Fisher, *Men, Women and Manners in Colonial Times*.

3. Channing, II, ch. 17; Doyle, V, ch. 3; Eggleston, *Transit of Civilization*, ch. 6; Greene, ch. 16-17; Wright, *Industrial Evolution*, ch. 1-9.

4. Channing, II, ch. 15; Doyle, V, ch. 4; Eggleston, *Transit*, ch. 4.

5. Channing, II, ch. 16; Doyle, V, ch. 5; Eggleston, *Transit*, ch. 5; Greene, ch. 18.

6. Channing, II, ch. 10; Greene, ch. 2-5, 13.

8. Earle.

Source References.—Callender, *Economic History*, ch. 2; Caldwell & Persinger, *Source History*, 99-123; Hart, *Source Book*, 108-136; Hart, *Contemporaries*, I, ch. 13, 21, 26, II, ch. 3-5, 7-16; Niles, *Principles and Acts of the Revolution*.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### COLONIAL PENAL LEGISLATION.

During the nineteenth century, there was a marked mitigation of the earlier severity shown toward criminals. The earlier punishments were not remedial, but punitive; severe physical pain and mutilation were adopted as means to deterring the criminal or others from committing the same offence. Branding and mutilation marked the convict for life as a dangerous character; society benefited, perhaps, in that the criminal was known wherever he went, but the offender could never get rid of the stigma of his crime; he could never reform and leave his past behind him. The following extracts from colonial legislation show the character of punishments for several crimes. Note that "benefit of clergy" does not mean that the convict is excluded from religious consolation to the dying, but that he cannot, by pleading that he is a clergyman, escape the severe physical punishment of the law.

Edward Palmer, for his extortion, taking 1<sup>l</sup> 13<sup>s</sup> 7<sup>d</sup> for the plank & woodwork of Boston stocks, is fined 5<sup>l</sup>, & censured to be set an hour in the stocks. [The fine was later remitted to ten shillings].—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, I, 260 (June 6, 1639).

FORASMUCH as sundry dissolute persons are too ready to run into the transgression of such Laws, unto which fines are annexed, & perhaps are so indigent as that the paying of fines may be very injurious to themselves and families; *Be it therefore enacted, &c.* That every person so offending not having five pound ratable estate . . . Shall be lyable to be whip'd: viz for an offence where the fine doth not exceed 10<sup>l</sup> five stripes where the fine does not exceed 20<sup>l</sup> ten stripes; Where the fine doth not exceed 5<sup>l</sup> 20 stripes; and where the fine doth not exceed 10<sup>l</sup> thirty stripes; or upwards, not exceeding forty stripes.—*New Hampshire Province Laws*, I, 62 (1682).

WHEREAS Tobacco is the Staple of this Province, and that thereon depends the Livelihood of many of the Inhabitants, as well as the most considerable Branch of Trade; and that it is as requisite that the Property of the People should be as well secured in the Fields, or open Houses, as in their Dwelling-houses;

[*Be it Enacted.*] That any Person or Persons, who shall after the End of this Session of Assembly, wilfully Burn any Tobacco belonging to any other Person, whether Hanging, or in Bulk, or Packed, or any Tobacco-house or Houses, having therein any Tobacco Hanging, or in Bulk, or Packed, and be thereof convicted by due course of Law, and every Aider and Abettor of such Offender, shall suffer Death as a Felon, without Benefit of Clergy. . . .—Bacon, *Laws of Maryland*, Chap. V. of 1744 (June 4).

It is therefore Ordered by this Court and the Authority thereof; That if any person shall commit Burglary, by breaking up any Dwelling House, or shall Rob any person in the Field or High-ways, such a person so offend-

ing, for the first offence, shall be Branded on the Forehead with the letter (B.) if he shall offend in the same kinde the seconde time, he shall be Branded as before, and also be severely whipt, and if he shall fall into the same offence the third time, he shall be put to death as being incorrigible.

And if any person shall commit such Burglary, or Rob in the Fields or House on the Lords day, besides the former punishment, he shall for the first offence have one of his Ears cut off, and for the second offence in the same kinde, he shall lose his other ear in the same manner, and if he fall into the same offence the third time, he shall be put to death as aforesaid.—*General Laws of Connecticut*, ed. of 1673, p. 81.

Be it Enacted . . . that Immediately from and after the passing of this Act every person or persons taking or Stealing any Horse Mare Gelding Colt, Filly or Neat Cattle, and all Accessories as well before as after such Offences Committed, and who shall be legally and duly Convicted thereof shall for the first Offence be set in the Pillory a Space not exceeding Four Hours nor less than two Hours in some publick place by the provost Marshall or his Ministers and Suffer Such Imprisonment as the Court shall think proper and before discharged be publicly Whipped on his bare Back three several times and receive at each time Thirty-nine lashes and also shall be branded on the Shoulder with the Letter R and for the second Offence upon due Conviction thereof Shall be adjudged Guilty of Felony without benefit of Clergy. . . .—De Renne, *Colonial Acts of Ga.*, 314 (Sept. 27, 1773).

Be it enacted, &c. That if any person being sixteen years of age, or upwards, shall wittingly or willingly make or publish a Lye, which may tend to the damage or hurt of any particular person, or with intent to deceive & abuse the people with false news or reports; He shall be fined for every such offence Ten shillings, or sit in the stocks an hour.—*New Hampshire Province Laws*, I, 67 (1682).

BE IT ENACTED . . . That any Person or Persons who shall hereafter be found guilty of counterfeiting any of the Gold or Silver Coins of any foreign Kingdom or Country, current within this Colony, . . . such Person or Persons, shall, for such Offence, being thereof for the first Time convicted . . . be whipped, branded with the Letter R in the Brawn of the left Thumb, by an Iron sufficiently hot to make a lasting Mark, fined, imprisoned, pilloried or cropped, or shall have any one or more of these Punishments, at the Discretion of the Court. . . .

[And for the] second Offence, and being thereof so convicted as aforesaid, shall be adjudged guilty of Felony, without Benefit of Clergy, and suffer Death accordingly. . . .—*Acts of General Assembly of New Jersey*, Allinson's ed. of 1776, pp. 441-442 (March 11, 1774).

Thom. Savory, for breaking a house in the time of exercise [militia training], was censured to be severely whiped, & for his theft to be sold for a slave until hee have made double restitution.—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, I, 297 (June 2, 1640).

. . . And being convicted of any offence aforesayd, the sayd Indian or Indians beinge not able presently to procure and pay and discharge all the damages, costs and restitutions by law due, to be done and made; it shall be lawfull for the judges of the court where such tryall is, to condemn such offender or offenders to be sold as a slave to any forraigne country of the English subjects.

And out of the price that he is sould for, the party wronged shall be satisfied for all damages and charges allowed in that or such cases, if the sayd price will reach it, or soe far as it will reach. And if any thinge remaine, it shall goe to the generall treasury, in consideration of the charge and trouble of the collyny.—*Rhode Island Colony Records*, I, 113 (May 17, 1659).

In answer to the petition of Robert Cox, in behalfe of Sebastian, negro, his servant, the Court judgeth it meet to grant the petitioners request, the life of the said Bastian Negro, and orders, that the said Bastian be severely whipt w<sup>th</sup> thirty nine stripes, and awayes to weare a roape about his neck, to hang doune two foot, that it may be seene, whilst he is in this jurisdiction, and when euer he is found w<sup>th</sup>out his roape, on complaint thereof, to be severely whipt w<sup>th</sup> twenty stripes.—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, V, pp. 117-118 (Oct. 11, 1676).

Davy Hickbourne, for his grosse misdeameo<sup>r</sup> & foule miscarriage, was censured to be severely whiped, to weare an iron collar till the Co<sup>t</sup> please, & serve his m<sup>r</sup> 3 weekes longer for lost time & trouble of his m<sup>r</sup>.—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, I, 378 (June 1, 1641).

Robte Coles is fined X<sup>l</sup>, & enioyned to stand w<sup>th</sup> a white sheete of [paper] on his back, wherein a drunkard shalbe written in great lres [letters], & to stand there<sup>th</sup> soe longe as the Court thinks meete, for abusing himselfe shamefully w<sup>th</sup> drinke, intising John Shotswell wife to incontinency, & oth<sup>r</sup> misdeameo<sup>r</sup>.—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, I, 107 (Sept. 3, 1633).

It is ordered, that Philip Ratliffe shalbe whipped, have his eares cutt off, fynyed 40<sup>l</sup>, & banished out of y<sup>r</sup> lynmitts of this jurisdiceon, for vttering mallitious & scandalous speeches against the goun<sup>t</sup> & the church of Salem, &c. . . .—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, I, 88 (June 14, 1631).

It is ordered, that Josias Plastowe shall (for stealing 4 baskets of corne from the Indians) retorne them 8 baskets againe, be fined V<sup>l</sup>, & hereafter to be called by the name of Josias, & not M<sup>r</sup>, as formerly hee vsed to be. . . .—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, I, 92 (Sept. 27, 1631).

. . . And if any person or persons, shall the second time offend, by stealing any hog, shoat, or pig, he or she so offending, and being thereof the second time convicted, shall stand two hours in the pillory, on a court day, and have both ears nailed thereto, and at the end of the said two hours, have the ears cut loose from the nails; which judgment, the county courts in this colony, are hereby impowred to give respectively, and to award execution thereon accordingly.—*Hening, Statutes at Large of Virginia*, III, pp. 276-277 (Oct., 1705).

Be it Enacted, . . . That whosoever shall commit Burglary, by breaking up any Dwelling-House, or Shop wherein Goods, Wares and Merchandizes are kept; Or shall Rob any Person in the Field, or High-Way; such Person so Offending shall for the First Offence be Branded on the Forehead with the Capital Letter B, on a hot Iron, and have One of his Ears nailed to a Post, and cut off, and also be Whipt on the naked Body, Fifteen Stripes.

And for the Second Offence, such Person shall be Branded, as aforesaid; and have his Other Ear nailed, and cut off, as aforesaid; and be Whipped on the naked Body, Twenty Five Stripes.

And if such Person shall commit the like Offence a Third Time, he shall be put to Death, as being Incor-

rigible.—*Acts and Laws of Connecticut*, 1750 (fourth edition), p. 18.

It is ordered, that Robt Coles, for drunkenness by him committed att Rocksbury, shalbe disfranchizd, weare aboute his necke, & soe to hange vpon his outward garm't, a D. made of redd cloath, & sett vpon white; to continue this for a yeare, & not to leave it off at any tyme when hee comes amongst company, vnder the penalty of x' for the first offence, & v' the second, & after to be punished by the Court as they thinke meete; also, hee is to weare the D outwards, & is enjoyned to appeare att the nexte Genall Court, & to continue there till the Court be ended.—*Massachusetts Colonial Records*, I, 112 (March 4, 1634).

Robert Shorthose, for swearing by the blood of God, was sentenced to have his tongue put into a cleft stick, & to stand so by the space of halffe an houre.—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, I, p. 177 (Sept. 6, 1636).

[*Be it Enacted*] That if any person shall presume wilfully to Blaspheme the Holy Name of God, Father, Son, or Holy Ghost, either by Denying, Cursing, or Reproaching the true God, his Creation or Government of the World; or by Denying, Cursing, or Reproaching the Holy Word of God, that is, the Canonical Scriptures, contained in the Books of the Old and New Testament, Namely . . . [each book named]; Every one so offending shall be punished by Imprisonment, not exceeding Six Months, and until they find Sureties for their good Behaviour, by setting in the Pillory, by Whipping, boaring through the Tongue with a red hot Iron, or setting upon the Gallows with a Rope about their Neck. . . . Provided that no more than Two of the fore-mentioned Punishments, shall be inflicted for one and the same fact. . . .—*Acts and Laws of New Hampshire*, 1726, p. 421 (May 13, 1718).

And for the better putting a restraint & securing offenders that shall any way transgress against the lawes, title Sabaoth, either in the meeting house by abusive carriage or misbehaviours, by making any noyse or otherwise, or during the daytime, being laid hold on by any of the inhabitants, shall by the said person appointed to inspect this law, be forthwith carried forth & put into a cage in Boston, which is appointed to be forthwith, by the select men to be set up in the market place, and in such other townes as y<sup>e</sup> County Courts shall appoint, there to remain till authority shall examine the person offending, & give order for his punishment, as the matter may require, according to the lawes relating to the Sabaoth.—*Massachusetts Colony Records*, V, p. 133 (May 24, 1677).

BE it Enacted . . . That, from and after the End of this present Session of Assembly, if any Person or Persons whatsoever within this Province, shall Blaspheme God (that is to say) Curse him, or Deny our Saviour Jesus Christ to be the Son of God, or shall Deny the Holy Trinity, the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, or the Godhead of the Three Persons, or the Unity of the Godhead, or shall utter any Profane Words concerning the Holy Trinity, or any the Persons thereof, for his, her, or their First Offence shall be bored through his, her, or their Tongue, and fined the Sum of Twenty Pounds *Sterling*; [or] shall in lieu of such Fine suffer Six Months Imprisonment of his, her, or their Bodies, without Bail or Mainprize; . . . and for every Second Offence, whereof such Offender or Offenders shall be legally convicted, he, she, or they shall be stigmatized by branding in the Forehead with the Letter [B] and

be fined by the Court where he, she, or they shall be convicted, Forty Pounds *Sterling*, . . . [or] suffer Twelve Months Imprisonment; . . . and for every Third Offence, whereof such Offender or Offenders shall be legally convicted, he, she, or they so offending shall be adjudged Felons, and shall suffer Pains of Death without any Benefit of Clergy. . . .—*Acts of Assembly of Maryland*, ed. of 1723, pp. 114-112 (June 3, 1715).

It is ordered, Common Scoulds shall be punished with the Ducking Stool.—*Rhode Island Colony Records*, I, 185 (1617).

*Women causing scandalous suites to be ducked.*

WHEREAS oftentimes many brabling women often slander and scandalize their neighbours for which their poore husbands are often brought into chargeable and vexations suites, and cast in greate damages; *Bee it therefore enacted by the authority aforesaid* that in actions of slander occasioned by the wife as aforesaid after judgment passed for the damages the women shalbe punished by ducking; and if the slander be soe enormous as to be adjudged at a greater damage then five hundred pounds of tobacco, then the woman to suffer a ducking for each five hundred pounds of tobacco adjudged against the husband if he refuse to pay the tobacco.—*Hening, Statutes at Large of Va.*, II, pp. 166-167 (Dec., 1662).

#### COURT PROCEEDINGS OF NEW NETHERLAND.

. . . Fiscal vs. Philip Geraerdy, a soldier, for having been absent from the guard without leave; sentence, to ride the Wooden horse during parade, with a pitcher in one hand and a drawn sword in the other.

. . . Peter Wolpherson (van Couwenhoven) vs. Michiel Christoffelsen, Paulus Heyman and Rybter Jansen, for cutting his wainscot with their cutlasses; plead guilty; sentence, Heyman and Jansen to ride the Wooden horse for three hours; Christoffelsen, being his second offense, is to stand three hours under the gallows, with a cutlass in his hand. . . .

Fiscal vs. Rem Direksen . . . chief mate of the *Amandare*, for striking and drawing a knife on commissary Van Heusden, aiding in landing negroes surreptitiously at Barbadoes, &c., sentence, to jump three times from the yard-arm, to be whipped by all the crew, and immediately afterwards turned out of the ship, with loss of three months' wages. Fiscal vs. Hendrick Antonissen, (steward of the ship *Amandare*, for purloining ship's provisions, theft, and smuggling; sentence, to jump three times from the yard-arm, to be flogged by all the ship's crew, his smuggled sugar to be confiscated, and himself to be turned out of the ship. . . .

Jonas Jonassen, a soldier, for robbing hen roosts and killing a pig; to ride the Wooden horse three days, from two o'clock in the afternoon until the conclusion of the parade, with a fifty pound weight tied to each foot. . . .

Ronloff Cornelissen, a soldier, for wounding the corporal, to ride the Wooden horse two hours a day for three days, with a ten pound weight fastened to each foot, to pay the surgeon's bill, and to forfeit six months' wages. . . .

Nicholas Albertson, for deserting his ship and betrothed bride after publication of the banns; to have his head shaved, then to be flogged and have his ears bored, and to work two years with the negroes. . . .

Ralph Turner, from Lancashire, a soldier, for fighting on the Sabbath: to stand sentry for six hours a day, on six consecutive days, with two muskets on his shoulders. . . .—*Calendar of Historical Manuscripts* (of New York), Part I, pp. 79-198 (1612-1658).



# Topic U 13. Antecedents of the Revolution.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. General attitude of colonies in 1763: self-satisfied; prosperous; not accustomed to restraint.
2. Review of rights of Englishmen, as interpreted in the colonies.
  - a) Right to representation in government and tax-leaving.
  - b) Jury trial, according to legal forms.
  - c) Economic and religious liberty.
3. English and Colonial Theories of the Powers of Parliament.
  - a) English: Parliament supreme for every purpose throughout the empire.
  - b) Colonial: Parliament supreme only in imperial concerns; in other matters only the equal of the colonial assemblies: a local legislature for Great Britain alone.
  - c) Hence colonists acknowledged that Parliament could control navigation and trade throughout the colonies and whole empire; but could not tax colonies internally any more than colonial assemblies could tax England.
  - d) Increasing divergence of English and American institutions and political theories.
4. Colonial Policy of Great Britain Reviewed.
  - a) Navigation Laws.
  - b) Molasses Act of 1733.
  - c) Prohibition of manufactures.
  - d) Bounties on raw materials.
  - e) These laws not strictly enforced; extensive smuggling prevailed; English officials connived at this.
  - f) Comparison of colonial policy of England with that of Spain, France, the Dutch.
5. Minor Conflicts.
  - a) The Parson's Cause in Virginia.
  - b) Writs of Assistance in Massachusetts; Otis' argument.
  - c) Attempt to establish English bishops in America.
  - d) Irritation between colonial governors and assemblies.
6. New Colonial Policy of England.
  - a) Character and public policy of George III.
  - b) Colonial Policy of Grenville.
    - 1) Smuggling and illicit trade to be stopped with help of naval vessels.
    - 2) Standing army in America. Alleged and real reasons for.
    - 3) Raising a revenue from colonies for partial support of troops.
7. The Stamp Act, 1765.
  - a) Provisions.
  - b) How opposed in America.
    - 1) Riotous opposition: refusal to use stamped paper; burning of stamped paper; mob riots; intimidation of stamp distributors.
    - 2) Literary opposition: newspaper articles and pamphlets.
    - 3) United opposition: Sons of Liberty (a military organization); non-importation agreements; Stamp Act Congress; Declaration of Rights.
  - c) Repeal of Act. Why? Franklin's examination; losses of English merchants.

- d) Passage of Declaratory Act.
- e) Great rejoicing over repeal of Stamp Act.
8. The Townshend Acts, 1767.
  - a) Established commissioners of customs to try smuggling cases without a jury.
  - b) Legalized writs of assistance.
  - c) New York assembly punished for not making proper provision for troops sent there.
  - d) Laid duties on certain goods imported into colonies.
9. Opposition to Townshend Acts.
  - a) Refusal of New York Assembly to grant supplies.
  - b) Failure to collect taxes.
  - c) John Dickinson's "Letters of a Farmer."
  - d) Massachusetts Circular Letter relating to colonial rights.
  - e) Non-importation agreements.
  - f) Partial repeal of acts (1770); duty retained on tea alone.
  - g) Colonists change their arguments from no taxation, to no legislative control of them by Parliament.
10. Progress toward Rebellion.
  - a) Troops in Boston; Boston Massacre, 1770.
  - b) Burning of Gaspee, 1772.
  - c) Organization of Committee of Correspondence.
  - d) Attempts to send tea to colonies; reception in Philadelphia, New York, Charleston, etc.; Boston Tea Party.
11. The Intolerable Acts, 1774.
  - a) Boston Port Bill.
  - b) Massachusetts Act.
  - c) Quartering Act.
  - d) Transportation Act.
  - e) Quebec Act.
12. First Continental Congress, Sept.-Oct., 1774, at Philadelphia.
  - a) Membership and organization.
  - b) Its work: Massachusetts supported in its opposition to late acts; its declaration of rights; "The Association" (non-importation and non-exportation agreement); state papers addressed to King, parliament, people of colonies, etc.; provisions for another congress.
13. Rebellion.
  - a) Colonial conventions undertake duties of the assemblies.
  - b) New England Restraining Act, March, 1775.
  - c) Battles of Lexington and Concord, April 19, 1775.
  - d) Proclamation of Rebellion, August 23, 1775.
  - e) Trade and intercourse with colonies forbidden, Dec. 22, 1775.
14. Steps in Patriot Organization.
  - a) Albany Congress and earlier plans of union.
  - b) Intercolonial spirit at close of French and Indian War.
  - c) Stamp Act Congress.
  - d) Sons of Liberty.
  - e) Non-importation agreements.
  - f) Self-appointed and locally appointed committees to enforce the agreements.
  - g) Committees of correspondence in Massachusetts.

- h) Intercolonial committees of correspondence proposed by Virginia.
- i) First Continental Congress.
- j) Provincial congresses and conventions taking place of assemblies and governors.
- k) Collection of military supplies; training of militia; appointment of certain proportion in turns to act as "Minute Men."
- l) Second Continental Congress.
- m) Provincial conventions develop into state governments.

### REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 87-106; Ashley, 127-153; Channing, 131-166; Hart, 135-147; James & Sanford, 142-161; Johnston-MacDonald, 102-119; McLaughlin, 169-189; McMaster, 101-123; Montgomery, 131-141; Muzzey, 107-126.

For Collateral Reading.—Coman, Industrial History, 89-105; Elson, U. S., 222-242; Hart, Formation of Union, 42-68; Sloane, French War and Revolution, ch. 10-15.

For Topical Study.—

1. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 144-148; Howard, Preliminaries of Revolution, ch. 1; Lecky, American Revolution, 1-52; Wilson, American People, II, 98-124.

3. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 175-208; Fiske, American Revolution, I, 34-38; Lecky, 154-165; Wilson, II, 142-153; Winsor, America, VI, 1-15.

4. Fiske, I, 1-10; Howard, ch. 2-3.

5. Fiske, I, 12-19; Howard, ch. 4, 5, 12.

6. Bancroft, U. S., III, 30-40; Fiske, I, 15-17; Hildreth, U. S., II, 514-524; Howard, ch. 6-7; Lecky, 52-67; Wilson, II, 121-132; Winsor, VI, 15-27.

7. Bancroft, III, 50-121, 134-164, 198-214; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 148-152; Fiske, I, 17-28; Hildreth, II, 524-536; Howard, ch. 8-9; Lecky, 68-101; Wilson, II, 131-142; Winsor, VI, 27-35.

8. Bancroft, III, 238-256; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 153-159; Fiske, I, 28-38; Hildreth, II, 537-540; Howard, ch. 9; Lecky, 97-117; Wilson, II, 153-158; Winsor, VI, 38-42.

9. Bancroft, III, 263-302, 341-351; Fiske, I, 46-74; Hildreth, II, 540-554; Howard, ch. 11; Lecky, 117-126; Wilson, II, 158-161; Winsor, VI, 42-46.

10. Bancroft, III, 368-381, 401-458; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 159-161; Fiske, I, 66-93; Hildreth, II, 554-570; II, 25-32; Howard, ch. 11-15; Lecky, 127-154; Wilson, II, 164-187; Winsor, VI, 46-62.

11. Bancroft, III, 470-482; Fiske, I, 93-99; Hildreth, III, 32-42; Howard, ch. 15; Lecky, 154-179; Wilson, II, 187-192.

12. Bancroft, IV, 3-77; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 161; Fiske, I, 100-110; Hildreth, III, 42-46; Howard, ch. 16; Lecky, 180-185; Wilson, II, 192-204.

13. Bancroft, IV, 152-166, 213-246, 291-308, 322-331; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 161-166; Fiske, I, 111-126; Hildreth, III, 46-76; Howard, ch. 17-18; Lecky, 185-199; Wilson, II, 205-227.

14. Frothingham, Rise of the Republic, ch. 7, 8, 9, especially footnotes.

Source References.—American History Leaflets, II, 21, 33; Callender, Economic History, ch. 3; Caldwell & Persinger, 165-198; Hart, Source Book, 137-143; Hart, Contemporaries, II, ch. 21-25; Hill, Liberty Documents, ch. 12; Johnston, American Orations, I, 3-38; MacDonald, Source Book, 105-191; MacDonald, Select Charters, 258-396; Old South Leaflets, 65, 156, 173, 199, 200; Preston, Documents, 188-210.

Biography.—Lives of Samuel Adams, James Otis, Patrick Henry, John Dickinson, William Pitt, George III.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### THE FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

The following selections are taken from the proceedings of the First Continental Congress, and they include the principal positive actions taken by that body, with the exception of the many state papers issued by the Congress, which are too voluminous for insertion here.

Thursday, September 18, 1774.

*Resolved unan.* That this assembly deeply feels the suffering of their countrymen in the Massachusetts-Bay, under the operation of the late unjust, cruel, and oppres-

sive acts of the British Parliament—that they most thoroughly approve the wisdom and fortitude, with which opposition to these wicked ministerial measures has hitherto been conducted, and they earnestly recommend to their brethren, a perseverance in the same firm and temperate conduct as expressed in the resolutions determined upon, at a (late) meeting of the delegates for the county of Suffolk, (on Tuesday, the 6th instant, trusting that the effect(s) of the united efforts of North America in their behalf, will carry such conviction to the British nation, of the unwise, unjust, and ruinous policy of the present administration, as quickly to introduce better men and wiser measures.

*Resolved unan.* That contributions from all the colonies for supplying the necessities, and alleviating the distresses of our brethren at Boston, ought to be continued, in such manner, and so long as their occasions may require.—*Journals of the Continental Congress, 1774* (ed. 1904), Vol. I, pp. 39-40.

Thursday, September 22d, 1774.

*Resolved unanimously.* That the Congress request the Merchants and others in the several colonies, not to send to Great Britain, any orders for goods, and to direct the execution of all orders already sent, to be delayed or suspended, until the sense of the Congress, on the means to be taken for the preservation of the liberties of America, is made public.—*Ibid.*, Vol. I, p. 41.

Tuesday, Sept<sup>r</sup> 27, 1774, A M

*Resolved unanimously.* That from and after the first day of December next, there be no importation into British America from Great Britain or Ireland, of any goods, wares or merchandizes whatsoever, or from any other place, of any such goods, wares or merchandizes, as shall have been exported from Great-Britain or Ireland; and that no such goods, wares or merchandizes imported after the said first day of December next, be used or purchased.—*Ibid.*, Vol. I, p. 43.

Friday, Sept 30

*Resolved.* That from and after the 10th day of Sept<sup>r</sup>, 1775, the exportation of all merchandise and every commodity whatsoever to Great Britain, Ireland and the West Indies, ought to cease, unless the grievances of America are redressed before that time.—*Ibid.*, Vol. I, pp. 51-52.

Saturday, October 8, 1774.

*Resolved.* That this Congress approve of the opposition by the Inhabitants of the Massachusetts-bay, to the execution of the late acts of Parliament; and if the same shall be attempted to be carried into execution by force, in such case, all America ought to support them in their opposition.—*Ibid.*, Vol. I, p. 58.

Monday, October 10, 1774.

*Resolved unanimously.* That it is the opinion of this body, that the removal of the people of Boston into the country, would be not only extremely difficult in the execution, but so important in its consequences, as to require the utmost deliberation before it is adopted; but, in case the provincial meeting of that Colony should judge it absolutely necessary, it is the opinion of the Congress, that all America ought to contribute towards recompensing them for the injury they may thereby sustain; and it will be recommended accordingly.

(Continued on Page 4.)



**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.**

*Resolved*, That the Congress recommend to the inhabitants of the colony of Massachusetts-bay, to submit to a suspension of the administration of Justice, where it cannot be procured in a legal & peaceable manner, under the rules of their present charter, and the laws of the colony founded thereon.

*Resolved unanimously*, That every person and persons whatsoever, who shall take, except, or act under any commission or authority, in any wise derived from the act passed in the last session of parliament, changing the form of government, and violating the charter of the province of Massachusetts-bay, ought to be held in detestation and abhorrence by all good men, and considered as the wicked tools of that despotism, which is preparing to destroy those rights, which God, nature, and compact, have given to America.—*Ibid.*, Vol. I, pp. 59-60.

Tuesday, October 11, 1774.

*Resolved unanimously*, That they be advised still to conduct themselves peaceably towards his excellency General Gage, and his majesty's troops now stationed in the town of Boston, as far as can possibly be consistent with their immediate safety, and the security of the town; avoiding & discountenancing every violation of his Majesty's property, or any insult to his troops, and that they peaceably and firmly persevere in the line they are now conducting themselves, on the defensive.—*Ibid.*, Vol. I, pp. 61-62.

Friday, October 14, 1774.

The good people of the several Colonies of New-hampshire, Massachusetts-bay, Rhode-island and Providence plantations, Connecticut, New-York, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Newcastle, Kent and Sussex on Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, and South Carolina, justly alarmed at these arbitrary proceedings of parliament and administration, have severally elected, constituted, and appointed deputies to meet and sit in general congress, in the city of Philadelphia, in order to obtain such establishment, as that their religion, laws, and liberties may not be subverted:

Whereupon the deputies so appointed being now assembled, in a full and free representation of these Colonies, taking into their most serious consideration, the best means of attaining the ends aforesaid, do, in the first place, as Englishmen, their ancestors in like cases have usually done, for asserting and vindicating their rights and liberties, declare,

That the inhabitants of the English Colonies in North America, by the immutable laws of nature, the principles of the English constitution, and the several charters or compacts, have the following Rights:

*Resolved*, N. C. D. \*1. That they are entitled to life, liberty, & property, and they have never ceded to any sovereign power whatever, a right to dispose of either without their consent.

*Resolved*, N. C. D. 2. That our ancestors, who first settled these colonies, were at the time of their emigration from the mother country, entitled to all the rights, liberties, and immunities of free and natural-born subjects, within the realm of England.

*Resolved*, N. C. D. 3. That by such emigration they by no means forfeited, surrendered, or lost any of those rights, but that they were, and their descendants now are, entitled to the exercise and enjoyment of all such

of them, as their local and other circumstances enable them to exercise and enjoy.

*Resolved*, 4. That the foundation of English liberty, and of all free government, is a right in the people to participate in their legislative council: and as the English colonists are not represented, and from their local and other circumstances, cannot properly be represented in the British parliament, they are entitled to a free and exclusive power of legislation in their several provincial legislatures, where their right of representation can alone be preserved, in all cases of taxation and internal polity, subject only to the negative of their sovereign, in such manner as has been heretofore used and accustomed. But, from the necessity of the case, and a regard to the mutual interest of both countries, we cheerfully consent to the operation of such acts of the British parliament, as are bona fide, restrained to the regulation of our external commerce, for the purpose of securing the commercial advantages of the whole empire to the mother country, and the commercial benefits of its respective members: excluding every idea of taxation, internal or external, for raising a revenue on the subjects in America without their consent.

*Resolved*, N. C. D. 5. That the respective colonies are entitled to the common law of England, and more especially to the great and inestimable privilege of being tried by their peers of the vicinage, according to the course of that law.

*Resolved*, 6. That they are entitled to the benefit of such of the English statutes as existed at the time of their colonization; and which they have, by experience, respectively found to be applicable to their several local and other circumstances.

*Resolved*, N. C. D. 7. That these, his majesty's colonies, are likewise entitled to all the immunities and privileges granted & confirmed to them by royal charters, or secured by their several codes of provincial laws.

*Resolved*, N. C. D. 8. That they have a right peaceably to assemble, consider of their grievances, and petition the King; and that all prosecutions, prohibitory proclamations, and commitments for the same are illegal.

*Resolved*, N. C. D. 9. That the keeping a Standing army in these colonies, in times of peace, without the consent of the legislature of that colony, in which such army is kept, is against law.

*Resolved*, N. C. D. 10. It is indispensably necessary to good government, and rendered essential by the English constitution, that the constituent branches of the legislature be independent of each other; that, therefore, the exercise of legislative power in several colonies, by a council appointed, during pleasure, by the crown, is unconstitutional, dangerous, and destructive to the freedom of American legislation.—*Ibid.*, I, pp. 66-70.

Saturday, October 22, 1774.

*Resolved*, as the Opinion of this Congress, that it will be necessary, that another Congress should be held on the tenth day of May next, unless the redress of grievances, which we have desired, be obtained before that time. And we recommend, that the same be held at the city of Philadelphia, and that all the Colonies, in North-America, chuse deputies, as soon as possible, to attend such Congress.—*Ibid.*, Vol. I, p. 102.

\*N. C. D., abbreviation for *nemo contradicens*.

# Topic U 14. Revolutionary Period—Military Events.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Campaign in the North.
  - a) Around Boston. Why here?
    - 1) Lexington and Concord.
    - 2) Bunker Hill.
    - 3) Army around Boston declared a continental army by the Second Continental Congress.
    - 4) Washington takes command.
    - 5) Difficulties of fall and winter, 1775-6.
    - 6) Occupation of Dorchester Heights; British compelled to leave Boston.
  - b) In Canada; Purpose.
    - 1) Ticonderoga and Crown Point, May 10, 1775.
    - 2) Montgomery and Arnold against Quebec and Montreal; failure; retreat; spring of 1776.
  - c) Hudson Valley; Burgoyne's Campaign.
    - 1) Failure of St. Leger and Howe to co-operate.
    - 2) Burgoyne hemmed in.
    - 3) Surrender, Oct., 1777.
2. In the Middle States; English object; secure New York Harbor, Philadelphia, the capital, and use the lukewarm population of this region.
  - a) Taking of New York inevitable owing to British fleet.
  - b) Retreat of Washington up the Hudson and across New Jersey.
  - c) Dark hours of December, 1776.
  - d) Brilliant victories of Washington at Trenton and Princeton.
  - e) Taking of Philadelphia; Influence on Burgoyne; Battle of Brandywine, September 11, 1777; Entrance into Philadelphia; Battle of Germantown.
  - f) Evacuation of Philadelphia.
    - Cause—French alliance and fear of arrival of French fleet.
    - Battle of Mummouth—treachery of General Lee.
  - g) From this time to the close of war, no military events of importance in the middle States; Washington's lines extended in semi-circle around New York.
3. In the South.
  - a) Savannah and Charleston taken.
  - b) Defeat of Gates at Camden.
  - c) British conquest of South Carolina and Georgia.
  - d) American victories in the South.
  - e) Greene's retreat; military significance.
  - f) Cornwallis in Virginia.
  - g) Co-operation of French troops and fleet possible.
  - h) Washington's remarkable transfer of his army to the South.
  - i) Cornwallis' surrender, October, 1781.
4. War in the West.
  - a) Spread of population across the mountains, 1769-1775, in spite of Proclamation of 1763.
  - b) English expedition into land northwest of Ohio.
    - c) George Rogers Clark with Kentuckians and Virginians drives out English.
    - d) Wins Northwest for Union.
5. War on the Seas.
  - a) Early efforts at ship-building.
  - b) John Paul Jones; his assistance in French ports; his victories.
  - c) Privateers attack English commerce.
6. Causes of American Successes.
  - a) Poor generalship of English.
  - b) Ability of Washington.
  - c) French assistance.
  - d) Difficulty of land communication.
  - e) Failure of loyalists actively to support the British.
  - f) Employment of Hessians.
  - g) Distance of England from base of supplies.
  - h) European coalition against England.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 107-175; Ashley, 154-182; Channing, 170-200; Hart, 163-187; James & Sanford, 162-187; Johnston-MacDonald, 120-165; McLaughlin, 190-214; McMaster, 126-149; Montgomery, 142-170; Muzzey, 127-147.
- For Collateral Reading.—Elson, U. S., 243-318; Hart, Formation of Union, 82-89; Sloane, French War and Revolution, 179-373.
- For Topical Study.—For military campaigns, see Carrington, Battles of the Revolution, and Lossing, Field Book of the Revolution.
1. Bancroft, U. S., IV, 152-166, 213-246, 291-308, 322-331; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 165-173; Fiske, American Revolution, I, 120-171; Hildreth, III, 67-76, ch. 33, pp. 121-129; Lecky, American Revolution, 201-234; Van Tyne, American Revolution, ch. 2, 10; Wilson, American People, II, 223-249; Winsor, America, VI, ch. 2.
  2. Bancroft, IV, 214-48, 65-110, 145-198, 209-221, 261-278; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 209-217; Fiske, I, 198-343; II, 50-81; Hildreth, III, ch. 34, 36, 37 and pp. 164-171; Lecky, 248-283, 313-329, 358-375; Van Tyne, ch. 6-9; Wilson, II, 249-293; Winsor, VI, ch. 4, 5.
  3. Bancroft, IV, 366-403, 476-524; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 219-231; Fiske, II, 164-205, 214-290; Hildreth, III, ch. 42, 43 and pp. 274-295, 301-317, 325-329; Lecky, 383-391, 437-456; Van Tyne, ch. 17; Wilson, II, 308-330; Winsor, VI, ch. 6.
  4. Bancroft, IV, 309-316; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 221-222; Fiske, II, 82-109; Hildreth, III, 352-353; Van Tyne, ch. 15; Wilson, II, 293-303; Winsor, VI, ch. 8, 9.
  5. Fiske, II, 116-162; Paulin, The Navy of the American Revolution; Wilson, II, 303-306; Winsor, VI, ch. 7.
  6. S. G. Fisher, Struggle for American Independence, I, ch. 45, 46; II, ch. 59, 63, 68, 87; Hildreth, III, 331-335.
- Source References.—Caldwell & Persinger, 204-208, 219-224; Hart, Source Book, 143-160; Hart, Contemporaries, II, ch. 28, 29, 31, 34; Old South Leaflets, 47, 86, 152; Niles, Principles and Acts of the Revolution.
- Biography.—Lives of Washington, Greene, Putnam, Lafayette, Paul Jones.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

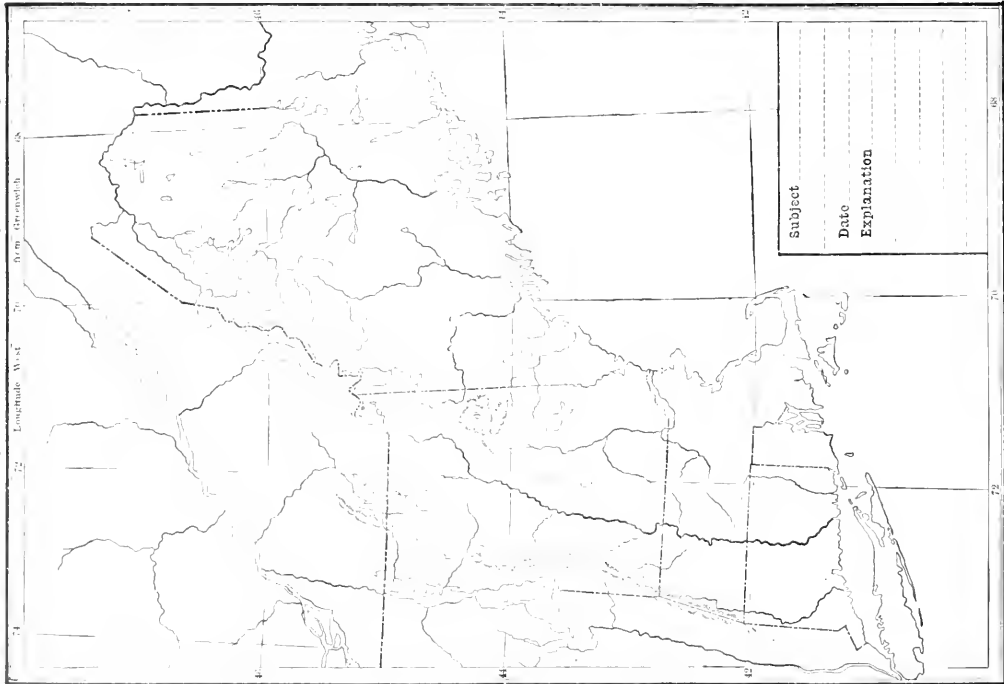
It is difficult to select adequate source material upon the Revolution, with the narrow space limitations of the series. The letter below shows the difficulties which faced Congress and Washington, after the enthusiasm of the early years of the war had worn off.

From the Committee of Co-operation of the Continental Congress, to Governor Livingston.

CAMP TAPPAN, August 19, 1780.

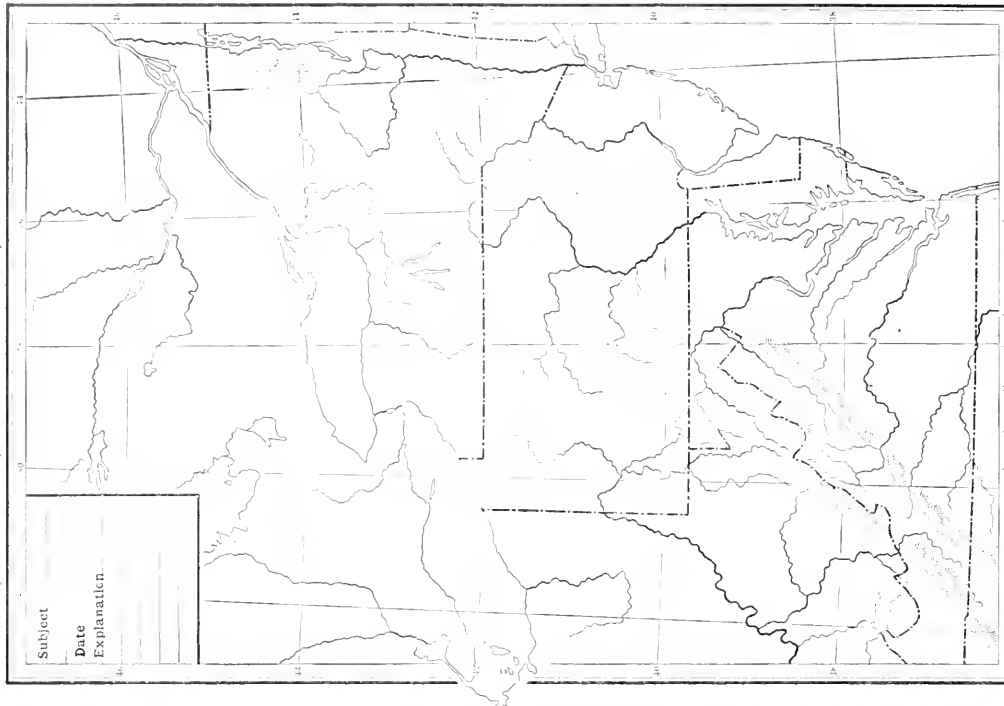
Sir,—When America stood alone against one of the most powerful nations of the earth, the spirit of liberty

(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright, 1924, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

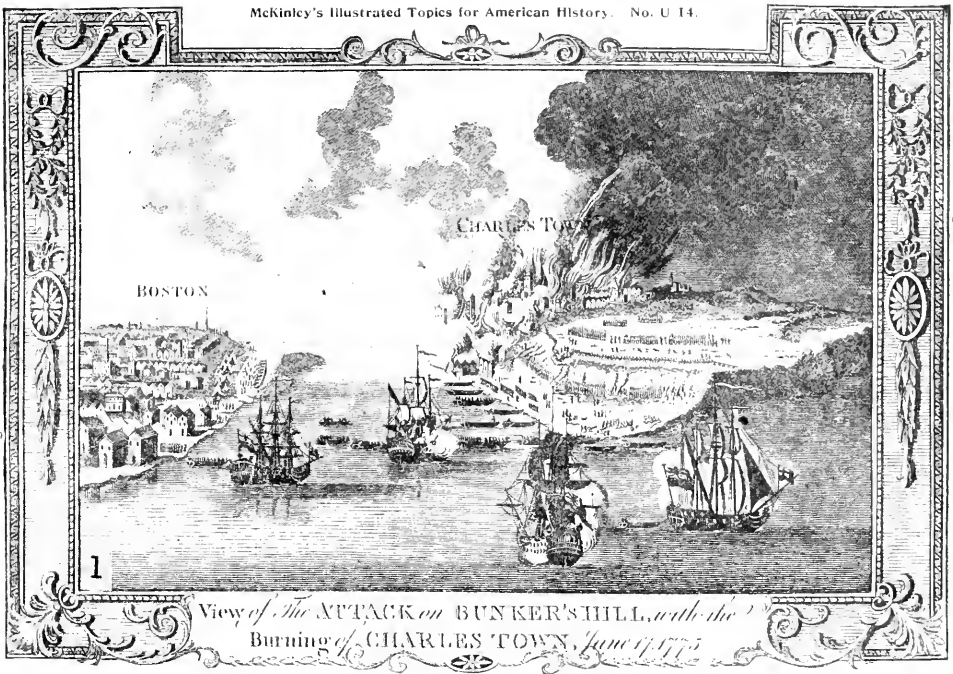
Campaign in New England. See: Ashley, 134, 167, 170, 172; Fiske, 204, 229; Hart, 168; James and Sanford, 133; Johnston-MacDonald, 124, 125, 141; McLaughlin, 192, 193; McMaster, 127, 130, 133 (good); Montgomery, Leading Facts, 138; Montgomery, Student's, 190; Scudder, 145, 146, 149, 170; Shepard, 155; Thomas, 112.



Copyright, 1924, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

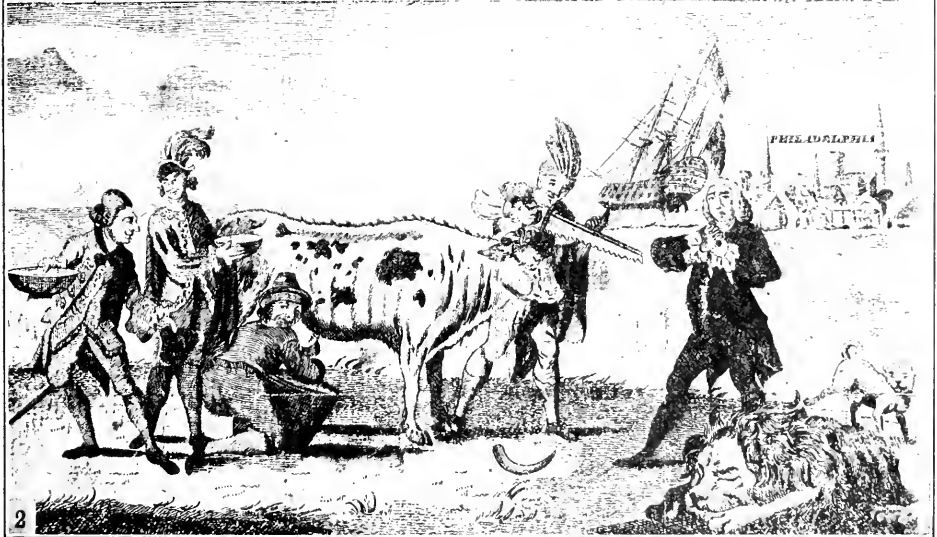
## Map Work for Topic U 14.

Campaign in Middle States. See: Adams and Trent, 128, 145; Ashley, 170; Fiske, 221, 223; Hart, 168; James and Sanford, 166; Johnston-MacDonald, 134, 136, 141; McLaughlin, 202, 198; McMaster, 136, 138, 139; Montgomery, Leading Facts, 138; Montgomery, Student's, 206, 209; Adams, 143; Scudder, 165, 168, 169, 172; Shepard, 155; Thomas, 112.



## A PICTURESQUE VIEW of the State of GREAT BRITAIN for 177

TAKEN FROM AN ENGLISH COPY



No. 1. A view of the Battle of Bunker Hill, from an early engraving.

No. 2. A contemporary (1778) engraving, from the original in the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. Beneath the drawing is the following "Explanation":

- I. The Commerce of Great Britain, represented in the figure of a Milk Cow.
- II. The American Congress sawing off her horns, which are her natural strength and defence; the one being already gone, the other just a going.
- III. The jolly, plump Dutchman milking the poor tame Cow with great glee.
- IV. and V. The French and Spaniards, each catching at their respective shares of the produce, and running away with bowls brimming full, laughing to one another at their success.
- VI. The good ship Eagle laid up, and moved at some distance from Philadelphia, without sails or guns, and showing nothing but naked port-holes, all the rest of the fleet invisible, nobody knows where.
- VII. The two brothers (Howes) napping it; one against the other, in the City of Philadelphia; out of sight of fleet and army.
- VIII. The British Lion lying on the ground fast asleep, so that a pug-dog tramples upon him as on a lifeless log, he seems to see nothing, hear nothing, and feel nothing.
- IX. A Free Englishman in mourning, standing by him, wringing his hands, casting up his eyes in despondency and despair, but unable to rouse the Lion to correct all these invaders of his Royal Prerogative and his subjects' property.

# SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

seemed to animate her sons to the noblest exertions, and each man cheerfully contributed his aid in support of her dearest rights. When the hand of tyranny seemed to bear its greatest weight on the devoted country, their virtue and perseverance appeared most conspicuous and rose superior to every difficulty. If then such patriotism manifested itself throughout all ranks and orders of men among us, shall it be said at this day, this early day of our enfranchisement and independence, that America has grown tired of being free.

Let us, sir, but for a moment take a retrospective view of our then situation and compare it with the present, and draw such deductions from the premises, as every reasonable man or set of men ought to do. In the early stage of this glorious revolution we stood alone; we had neither army, military stores, money, or in short any of those means which were requisite to authorize assistance. The undertaking was physically against us, but Americans abhorred the very idea of slavery; therefore, reposing the righteousness of their cause in the hands of the Supreme Disposer of all human events, they boldly ventured to defy the vengeance of a tyrant, and either preserve their freedom inviolate to themselves and posterity, or perish in the attempt. This was the situation and temper of the people of this country, in the beginning of this controversy. At this day America is in strict alliance with one of the first nations of the earth, for magnanimity, power and wealth, and whose affairs are conducted by the ablest statesmen, with a Prince at their head who hath justly acquired the title of the protector of the rights of mankind. A respectable fleet and army of our ally are already arrived among us, and a considerable reinforcement is hourly expected, which when arrived will give us a decided superiority in these seas; the whole to co-operate with the force of this country, against the common enemy. Another powerful nation, (Spain) though not immediately allied with us, yet, in fighting her own, she is daily fighting the battles of America, from whence almost every advantage is derived to us that could be produced in a state of alliance. An army we have now in the field, part of whom are veterans, equal to any the oldest established can boast. Our militia from a five years war, are become inured to arms. You have at the head of your army a general, whose abilities as a soldier, and worth as a citizen, stands confessed even by the enemy of his country. Our officers of all ranks are fully equal to the duties of their respective stations. Military stores are within our reach; our money, though not so reputable as that of other nations, with proper attention, we have reason to expect, will shortly emerge from its present embarrassed state, and become as useful as ever.

Now, sir, from a comparative view of our circumstances at the beginning and at this day, how much more pleasing and important must the latter appear than the former, to every dispassionate man. Then shall we leave to future generations to say,—shall we at present commit ourselves to the world to exclaim, that when Providence had benignly put into our hands the most essential means of obtaining by one decisive blow the inestimable prize we have been contending for, it was lost—disgracefully lost—for want of proper exertions on our part? That avarice, luxury and dissipation had so enervated the boasted sons of American freedom, that, rather than forego their present ease and wanton pleas-

ures, they would tamely, cowardly submit to the loss of their country and their liberty, and become those abject slaves which their generous nature but a few, very few years before would have revolted at the bare idea of?

These reflections arise, sir, from the extraordinary backwardness of some states, and great deficiencies of others, in sending the men into the field that were required of them near three months ago, and ought to have joined the army fifty days past, and an apprehension that from this torpidity America has forgot she is contending for liberty and independence, and that the good intentions of our generous ally will be totally frustrated by our unpardonable remissness. Our former letters to the states have been full on this very important subject, and we are concerned to be driven to the necessity of reiteration; but our duty to our country, our respect for the reputation of the commander-in-chief of our army, impel us to it, for a knowledge of the force that has been required of the states for the campaign, and which was allowed to be adequate to an important enterprise, will induce a belief in our countrymen and in the world, that it has been furnished; and they must stand amazed to see our army inactive and things not in that train for operation, which ought in such a case to be expected, especially at this advanced season of the year. Again, the force of our ally now with us, and the shortly expected arrival of its second division, must clearly evince the utility of our army being put in a condition to undertake an enterprise which if successful, must give a deadly wound to our unrelenting and ambitious foe. But what apology can be made, if when the commander-in-chief of our army should be called on by the commander of the forces of our generous ally, and informed he is ready to undertake with him whatever measure he shall think proper to point out, he shall be reduced to the cruel necessity of acknowledging his inability to engage in any enterprise that can possibly redound to the honor or reputation of the arms of either nation. Sir, the reflection is too humiliating to be dwelt on without the extreme pain; nay, horror!

You must pardon us, worthy sir, for the freedom with which we have now declared our sentiments on this truly interesting subject. We flatter ourselves great allowances will be made for our situation, when we daily have before our eyes specimens of that want of energy in conducting our affairs, which must shortly so far embarrass us as to render all future exertions inadequate to the attainment of those great purposes at which we aim. America wants not resources; we have men (independent of those necessary for domestic purposes) more than sufficient to compose an army capable of answering our most sanguine expectations; and our country teems with provisions of every kind necessary to support them. It requires nothing more than a proper degree of energy to bring them forth to make us a happy people. This, we trust, sir, the state over which you preside, will show no reluctance in contributing her aid to, by taking such decisive measures as will without loss of time, bring into the field the remainder of your quota of men, that have been required for the campaign. The articles of provisions, forage and teams are no less important than men, but as the committee had the honor of addressing you but a few days ago, on the subject of provisions, and the other articles being so nearly allied to that, we will not intrude it on you at this time.—*Selections from the Correspondence of the Executive of New Jersey, 1776-1786*, pp. 248-253.



# Topic U 15. Revolutionary Period—Political Events.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Second Continental Congress.
  - a) Membership and places of meeting.
  - b) Its work: executive, legislative and judicial.
    - 1) Managed the war:
      - (a) Adopted army around Boston; passed ordinances for its government.
      - (b) Raised money to carry on war: loans, foreign and domestic; continental currency; continental lottery.
      - (c) Raised troops and supplies by calling on states.
    - 2) Declared Independence.
      - a) Progress toward.
      - b) Resolution of R. H. Lee.
      - c) The Declaration of Independence, analysis of.
    - 3) Organized governmental departments:
      - a) Board of War.
      - b) Committee of Foreign Affairs; naval committee.
      - c) Financier and finances.
      - d) Judicial committees.
    - 4) Framed a Constitution (the Articles of Confederation) presented to States October, 1777; adopted by last state March, 1781. Why the long delay?
2. Continental Finances.
  - a) Paper money—excessive amount; depreciation.
  - b) Loans at home, and abroad from France, Holland and Spain.
  - c) Continental lottery.
  - d) Seizure of supplies as needed.
  - e) States called upon for contributions (quotas).
  - f) No power to tax individuals.
3. Foreign Affairs.
  - a) Mission of Franklin to France.
  - b) Secret assistance by French.
  - c) The French Treaty of Alliance and Commerce, 1778; value to the United States; reasons for French support.
  - d) Relations to Spain and the Dutch.
  - e) Design of Spain to secure western country.
4. The Loyalists.
  - a) Their numbers and influence.
  - b) How treated by patriots.
  - c) Of little military advantage to British.
5. Treaty of Peace, 1783.
  - a) Negotiations for.
  - b) Attempts to limit western boundaries.
  - c) Provisions of treaty.
    - 1) Recognition of independence.
    - 2) Boundaries.
    - 3) Fisheries.
    - 4) Miscellaneous.
    - 5) No commercial provisions.

For Collateral Reading.—Coman, *Industrial History*, 105-122; Dewey, *Financial History*, 31-48; Elson, *U. S.*, 243-244, 250-254, 275-279, 311-317; Hart, *Formation of Union*, 69-101; Sloane, *French War and Revolution*, 195-198, 208-220, 227-237, 300-308, 373-376, and ch. 29; Sparks, *Men Who Made the Nation*, ch. 3, 4.

### For Topical Study.—

1. Bancroft, *U. S.*, IV, 190-193, 200-212, 237-242, 312-316, 332-346, 412-452; V, 199-205; Fiske, *American Revolution*, I, 172-197; II, 25-49; Friedenwald, *Declaration of Independence*; Hildreth, III, 76-89, 130-139, 171-185; Lecky, *American Revolution*, 234-248; McLaughlin, *Confederation and Constitution*, ch. 3-4; Van Tyne, *American Revolution*, ch. 3-5; Winsor, *America*, VI, ch. 3; VII, ch. 1.

2. Bancroft, V, 439-460; Fiske, I, 198-343; Hildreth, III, 264-265, 271-275, 300-304, 358-364; Lecky, 283-294, 379-382; Van Tyne, ch. 11, 12, 13, 16.

3. Bancroft, IV, 359-373, V, 244-258; Fiske, II, 1-42; Hildreth, III, 177-181, 267-270; Lecky, 296-310; Van Tyne, ch. 12, 17; Winsor, VII, ch. 1.

4. Lecky, 479-485; Van Tyne, ch. 14; Van Tyne, *Loyalists in American Revolution*.

5. Bancroft, V, 111-125, 404-422; Fiske, *Critical Period*, ch. 1; Hildreth, III, 411-420; Lecky, 464-479; McLaughlin, ch. 2; Wilson, *American People*, III, 1-18; Winsor, VII, ch. 2.

Source References.—*American History* Leaflets, II, 20; Callender, *Economic History*, ch. 4; Caldwell & Persinger, 198-201, 208-219, 224-232; Hart, *Source Book*, 143-160; Hart, *Contemporaries*, II, ch. 26, 27, 30, 32, 33, 35; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. 12-14; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 195-209; MacDonald, *Documents*, 1-21; Niles, *Principles and Acts of the Revolution*; Old South Leaflets, 2, 3, 15, 97, 98; Preston, *Documents*, 210-240.

Biography.—*Lives of Jefferson, John Adams, Robert Morris, Franklin*.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### TREATIES OF 1778 AND 1783.

The first selections below are taken from the treaty of Alliance with France, February 6, 1778, and they include those portions of the treaty which later led to difficulties between the two countries. The second series are from the treaty of peace with England, September 3, 1783; it was not possible to print here the entire treaty.

#### ARTICLE II.

The essential and direct end of the present defensive alliance is to maintain effectually the liberty, sovereignty, and independence absolute and unlimited, of the said United States, as well in matters of government as of commerce.

#### ARTICLE VIII.

Neither of the two parties shall conclude either truce or peace with Great Britain without the formal consent of the other first obtained; and they mutually engage not to lay down their arms until the independence of the United States shall have been formally or tacitly assured by the treaty or treaties that shall terminate the war.

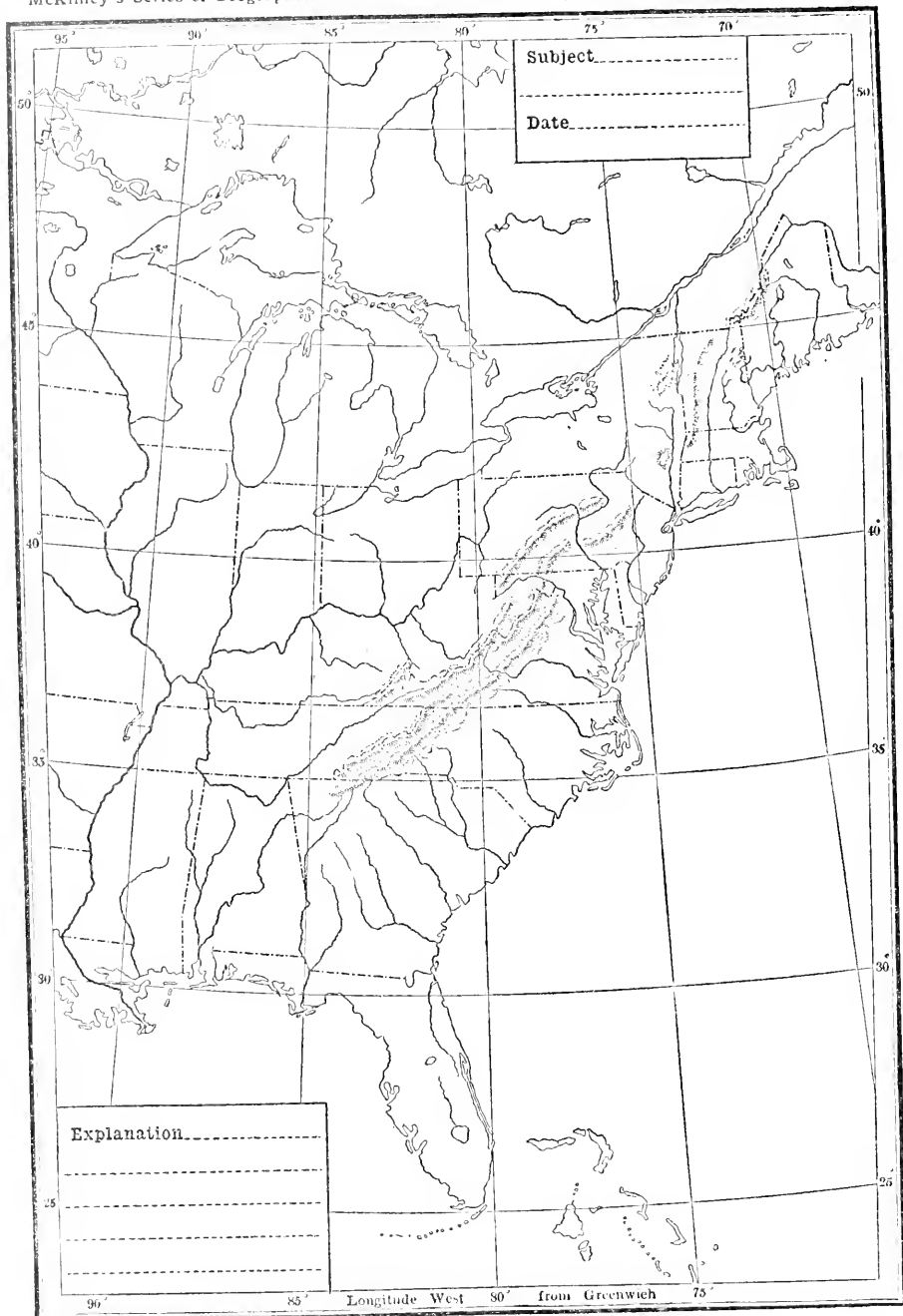
#### ARTICLE XI.

The two parties guarantee mutually from the present time and forever against all other powers, to wit: The United States to His Most Christian Majesty, the present possessions of the Crown of France in America, as well as those which it may acquire by the future treaty of peace: And His Most Christian Majesty guarantees on his part to the United States their liberty, sovereignty and independence, absolute and unlimited, as well in matters of government as commerce, and also their possessions, and the additions or conquests that their confederation may obtain during the war, from any of the dominions now, or heretofore possessed by Great Britain in North America, conformable to the 5th and 6th articles above written, the whole as their possessions shall be fixed and assured to the said States, at the moment of

(Continued on Page 4.)

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 118-126, 146-149, 164-168, 175-179; Ashley, 157-166, 174-176, 183-190; Channing, 170-184, 188-195, 200-211; Hart, 149-164, 183-187; James & Sanford, 173-176, 179-184; Johnston-MacDonald, 120-124, 130, 144, 148-149, 165-167; McLaughlin, 195-198, 205, 211-214; McMaster, 131-134, 149-159; Montgomery, 142-168; Muzzey, 127-135, 150-161.



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 15.

No. 1. Campaign in Southern States. See Adams and Trent, 170; Ashley, 180; Fiske, 240; Hart, 176; James and Sanford, 177; Johnston-MacDonald, 156, 163 (good); McLaughlin, 209; McMaster, 145 (good); Montgomery, Leading Facts, 164; Montgomery, Student's, 218; Muzzey, 113; Scudder, 177, 182; Shepherd, 195; Thomas, 160.

No. 2. United States, in 1783.

No. 3. Land claims of the several States: Adams and Trent, 179; Ashley, 185; Channing, 243; Hart, 190; Hart, Formation, at end; James and Sanford, 187; Johnston-MacDonald, 166; Lubberton, 62; McLaughlin, 219; McMaster, 156; Montgomery, Leading Facts, 170, 172; Montgomery, Student's, 226; Muzzey, 152; Shepherd, 196; Thomas, 168.



**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.**

the cessation of their present war with England. . . .  
(*Treaties, Conventions, etc.*, ed. 1910, pp. 480-482.)

**THE TREATY OF PEACE, SEPTEMBER 3, 1783.**

In the name of the Most Holy and Undivided Trinity.

It having pleased the Divine Providence to dispose the hearts of the most serene and most potent Prince George the Third, by the Grace of God King of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, Duke of Brunswick and Luneberg, Arch-Treasurer and Prince Elector of the Holy Roman Empire, &c., and of the United States of America, to forget all past misunderstandings and differences that have unhappily interrupted the good correspondence and friendship which they mutually wish to restore; and to establish such a beneficial and satisfactory intercourse between the two countries, upon the ground of reciprocal advantages and mutual convenience, as may promote and secure to both perpetual peace and harmony: . . . His Britannic Majesty and the United States of America, in order to carry into full effect the provisional articles above mentioned, according to the tenor thereof, have constituted and appointed, that is to say, His Britannic Majesty on his part, David Hartley, esqr., . . . and the said United States on their part, John Adams [Benjamin Franklin and John Jay]; who, after having reciprocally communicated their respective full powers, have agreed upon and confirmed the following articles:

**ARTICLE I.**

His Britannic Majesty acknowledges the said United States, . . . to be free, sovereign and independent States; that he treats with them as such, and for himself, his heirs and successors, relinquishes all claims to the Government, propriety and territorial rights of the same, and every part thereof.

**ARTICLE II.**

And that all disputes which might arise in future, on the subject of the boundaries of the said United States may be prevented, it is hereby agreed and declared, that the following are, and shall be their boundaries, viz.: From the northwest angle of Nova Scotia, viz. that angle which is formed by a line drawn due north from the source of Saint Croix River to the Highlands; along the said Highlands which divide those rivers that empty themselves into the river St. Lawrence, from those which fall into the Atlantic Ocean, to the northwesternmost head of Connecticut River; thence down along the middle of that river, to the forty-fifth degree of north latitude; from thence, by a line due west on said latitude, until it strikes the river Iroquois or Cataraquy [St. Lawrence]; thence along the middle of said river into Lake Ontario, through the middle of said lake until it strikes the communication by water between that lake and Lake Erie; thence along the middle of said communication into Lake Erie, through the middle of said lake until it arrives at the water communication between that lake and Lake Huron; thence along the middle of said water communication into the Lake Huron; thence through the middle of said lake to the water communication between that lake and Lake Superior; thence through Lake Superior northward of the Isles Royal and Pelipicaux, to the Long Lake; thence through the middle of said Long Lake, and the water communication between it and the Lake of the Woods, to the said Lake of the Woods; thence through the said lake to the most northwestern point thereof, and from thence on a due west course to the river Mississippi; thence by a line to be drawn along the middle of the said river Mississippi until it shall

intersect the northernmost part of the thirty-first degree of north latitude. South, by a line to be drawn due east from the determination of the line last mentioned, in the latitude of thirty-one degrees north of the Equator, to the middle of the river Apalachicola or Catahouche; thence along the middle thereof to its junction with the Flint River; thence straight to the head of St. Mary's River; and thence down along the middle of St. Mary's River to the Atlantic Ocean. East, by a line to be drawn along the middle of the river St. Croix, from its mouth in the Bay of Fundy to its source, and from its source directly north to the aforesaid Highlands, which divide the rivers that fall into the Atlantic Ocean from those which fall into the river St. Lawrence. . . .

**ARTICLE III.**

It is agreed that the people of the United States shall continue to enjoy unmolested the right to take fish of every kind on the Grand Bank, and on all the other banks of Newfoundland; also in the Gulph of Saint Lawrence, and at all other places in the sea where the inhabitants of both countries used at any time heretofore to fish. . . .

**ARTICLE IV.**

It is agreed that creditors on either side shall meet with no lawful impediment to the recovery of the full value in sterling money, of all bona fide debts heretofore contracted.

**ARTICLE V.**

It is agreed that the Congress shall earnestly recommend it to the legislatures of the respective States, to provide for the restitution of all estates, rights, and properties which have been confiscated, belonging to real British subjects, and also of the estates, rights, and properties of persons resident in districts in the possession of His Majesty's arms, and who have not borne arms against the said United States. . . .

**ARTICLE VI.**

That there shall be no future confiscations made, nor any prosecutions commenced against any person or persons for, or by reason of the part which he or they may have taken in the present war. . . .

**ARTICLE VII.**

There shall be a firm and perpetual peace between His Britannic Majesty and the said states, and between the subjects of the one and the citizens of the other, wherefore all hostilities, both by sea and land, shall from henceforth cease: All prisoners on both sides shall be set at liberty, and His Britannic Majesty shall, with all convenient speed, and without causing any destruction, or carrying away any negroes or other property of the American inhabitants, withdraw all his armies, garrisons, and fleets from the said United States, and from every port, place, and harbour within the same; leaving in all fortifications the American artillery that may be therein. . . .

**ARTICLE VIII.**

The navigation of the river Mississippi, from its source to the ocean, shall forever remain free and open to the subjects of Great Britain, and the citizens of the United States. . . .

Done at Paris, this third day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-three.

D. HARTLEY. [L.S.]  
JOHN ADAMS. [L.S.]  
B. FRANKLIN. [L.S.]  
JOHN JAY. [L.S.]

# Topic U 16. Confederation and Constitution, 1783-1789.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

### THE CRITICAL PERIOD—1781-1789.

1. Review of Government under Second Continental Congress.
2. The Articles of Confederation.
  - a) Review formation and adoption.
  - b) Analysis of principal provisions.
  - c) Defects of the articles:
    - 1) In organization of congress: equal representation of states; limitation of term of service of members.
    - 2) In powers of congress: no taxing power; no power to coerce individuals or states; no power over commerce; could not enforce treaty engagements; no control over money and contracts.
    - 3) No separation of executive, legislative, judicial duties; all vested in congress.
    - 4) Difficulty of amendment.
  - d) Value of articles:
    - 1) Best that could be obtained.
    - 2) Kept alive sentiment of union.
    - 3) Secured and organized western lands for union.
    - 4) By very defects pointed way to satisfactory government.
    - 5) Principle of inter-citizenship.
    - 6) Principle of division of powers.
3. The State Governments.
  - a) Developed from provincial congresses and conventions in several colonies, 1774-1776.
  - b) Constitutions passed and adopted by these bodies.
  - c) Character of these state constitutions:
    - 1) Confidence in legislature.
    - 2) Distrust of governors.
    - 3) Court systems continued from colonial days.
    - 4) In the main continued the legal systems of the colonies and even of England; changing mainly the method of appointing governors.
    - 5) Jealousy of the federal government.
4. Forces tending to dissolve the Union.
  - a) Jealousy of the states of the Federal government.
  - b) Jealousy of the states of one another.
  - c) Conflicts over boundaries: Pennsylvania and Connecticut in the Wyoming Valley; New York, New Hampshire and Massachusetts in Vermont; Pennsylvania and Virginia in the Ohio region; Virginia and North Carolina boundary line.
  - d) Growing impotence of Congress.
    - 1) Troubles with army over pay.
    - 2) Failure to enforce treaties.
    - 3) Failure to obtain revenue.
    - 4) Decline in ability of members sent to Congress.
  - e) Internal disorders; Shay's rebellion.
  - f) States' policy in financial and commercial affairs.
  - g) Influence of foreign nations.
5. Forces tending to strengthen the Union.
  - a) Far-sighted leaders—Washington, Madison, Hamilton.
  - b) Holders of national debt.
  - c) Common part in late war.
  - d) Common interests.
6. Forces tending to strengthen the Union—the Western Lands.
  - a) Conquest of the Northwest under G. R. Clark.
  - b) Action of Maryland in demanding land cessions before agreeing to Articles of Confederation.
  - c) Completion of land cessions by New York, Virginia, Massachusetts, Connecticut.
  - d) Later cessions by North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.
  - e) Method of survey of western lands: townships six miles square, Ordinance, 1785.
  - f) Northwest Ordinance, July 13, 1787.
    - 1) Earlier proposals: Jefferson's ordinance of 1784; other suggestions, 1786-1787.
    - 2) Origin of Ordinance of 1787.
    - 3) Provisions of ordinance: Slavery forbidden; religious and civil liberty; common school support; form of temporary government; admission of new states.
7. Finances of the Confederation.
  - a) Source of revenue: by requisitions upon states—only partially paid; by renewed loans abroad.
  - b) Failure of revenue—could not pay running expenses; even defaulted on interest on debt.
  - c) No power to control state issue of paper money.
8. Foreign Relations.
  - a) Commercial treaties; already one with France; new ones with Prussia.  
Failure to obtain one from England; difficulty with Spain over the Mississippi River.
  - b) Relations with England.  
Failure to enforce terms of treaty of 1782.  
England's refusal to relinquish western forts.
9. Antecedents of the Convention of 1787.
  - a) Futile attempts to amend articles to give Congress power to lay custom duties and control trade.
  - b) Proposals for a convention to amend articles as early as 1780.
  - c) Conference at Mt. Vernon, 1785.
  - d) Annapolis convention, 1786, called a general convention to meet next year.
10. The Federal Convention, May 25-September 17, 1787.
  - a) Character of members; their powers.
  - b) Extant records of the convention.
  - c) Early contest over amendment or new constitution.

- d) Plans submitted for new constitution.
  - e) Compromises.
    - 1) Upon representation of small and large states.
    - 2) Upon representation of negroes.
    - 3) Upon control over commerce.
    - 4) Many other compromises.
  - f) Completion of the work.
  - g) Constitution submitted to vote of people in several states.
11. Ratification of Constitution, 1787-1790.
    - a) Arguments for and against.
    - b) Principal friends and opponents.
    - c) Contest in important states—Massachusetts, Virginia, New York.
    - d) The Federalist papers.
  12. The Constitution.
    - a) Supremacy of Constitution and laws.
    - b) Character of union—federal; division of powers between states and nation.
    - c) Organization of departments of national government—rendered largely independent of each other.
    - d) Acted on individuals not on states.
    - e) Grant of large powers to Congress; taxes, commerce, currency, public lands, army and navy, etc.
    - f) Method of amendment.

#### REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 179-190; Ashley, 189-209; Channing, 215-232; Hart, 189-219; James & Sanford, 183-214; Johnston-MacDonald, 171-185; McLaughlin, 215-232; McMaster, 158-173; Montgomery, 170-176; Muzzey, 159-182.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, Economic History, 100-103; Conant, Industrial History, 123-131; Dewey, Financial History, 49-51; Elson, U. S., 318-340; Hart, Formation of Union, 102-135; Sparks, Men Who Made Nation, ch. 5; Walker, Making of the Nation, ch. 1-1.

For Topical Study.—

1. Bancroft, U. S., VI, 5-23; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 305-311; McLaughlin, Confederation and Constitution, ch. 3; Schouler, U. S., I, 1-23; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 1.

2. Fiske, Critical Period, ch. 3; Hildreth, U. S., III, 395-410; Johnston, American Political History, I, 57-69; McLaughlin, ch. 3; Schouler, I, 15-23; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 4; Wilson, American People, III, 18-37.

3. Bancroft, V, 111-125, 104-122; Fiske, ch. 2; Hildreth, III, 374-395; Van Tyne, American Revolution, ch. 9.

4. Bancroft, VI, 59-86, 167-176; Fiske, ch. 4; Hildreth, III, 421-441, ch. 16; McLaughlin, ch. 4-6, 9-10; McMaster, U. S., I, ch. 2-3; Schouler, I, 20-25; Wilson, III, 53-60.

5. Bancroft, VI, 136-166; McMaster, I, ch. 2-3; Schouler, I, 25-31.

6. Bancroft, VI, 111-118, 125-135; Fiske, ch. 5; Hildreth, III, 527-539; Johnston, American Political History, I, 83-105; McLaughlin, ch. 7-8; McMaster, I, ch. 2-3, pp. 504-524; Sparks, Expansion, ch. 7-11; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 2-3; Wilson, III, 38-53.

7. Bancroft, VI, 21-35; McLaughlin, ch. 4-5, 9; McMaster, I, 139-144.

8. Bancroft, VI, 36-58; McLaughlin, ch. 6; McMaster, I, 221-245, 371-381, 406-416.

9. Bancroft, VI, 177-203; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 245-241; Fiske, 212-229; McLaughlin, ch. 11-13; McMaster, I, 246-280, 390-394; Schouler, I, 25-38; Wilson, III, 61-64.

10. Bancroft, VI, 207-267; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 246-304; Fiske, ch. 6; Hildreth, III, ch. 17; Johnston, American Political History, I, 70-82; McLaughlin, ch. 13-16; McMaster, I, 117-123, 136-133; Schouler, I, 39-53; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 5-6; Wilson, III, 64-76; Winsor, American, VII, ch. 3.

11. Bancroft, VI, 371-437, 452-462; Fiske, ch. 7; Hildreth, III, 533-516; McLaughlin, ch. 17-18; McMaster, I, 454-501; Schouler, I, 53-79; Wilson, III, 76-98.

12. Bancroft, VI, 441-451; Winsor, VII, ch. 4.

Source References.—American History Leaflets, 8, 22, 28, 32; Callender, Economic History, ch. 5; Caldwell & Persinger, 233-281; Hart, Source Book, 161-180; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 2-12; Hill, Liberty Documents, ch. 15-17; Johnston, American Orations, I, 39-71; MacDonald, Source Book, 209-232; MacDonald, Documents, 21-46; Old South Leaflets, 1, 12, 13, 16, 41, 42, 43, 70, 99, 197; Preston, Documents, 240-277.

Biography.—Lives of Madison, Hamilton, James Wilson, Manasseh Cutler, Daniel Boone.

#### SOURCE-STUDY.

##### THE NORTHWEST ORDINANCE, JULY 13, 1787.

*An Ordinance for the Government of the Territory of the United States, north-west of the river Ohio.*

*Be it ordained by the United States in Congress assembled, That the said territory, for the purposes of temporary government, be one district; subject, however, to be divided into two districts, as future circumstances may, in the opinion of Congress, make it expedient.*

*Be it ordained by the authority aforesaid, That the estates, both of resident and non-resident proprietors in the said territory, dying intestate, shall descend to, and be distributed among their children and the descendants of a deceased child in equal parts. . . .*

*Be it ordained by the authority aforesaid, That there shall be appointed, from time to time, by Congress, a governor, whose commission shall continue in force for the term of three years, unless sooner revoked by Congress, he shall reside in the district, and have a freehold estate therein, in one thousand acres of land, while in the exercise of his office.*

There shall be appointed, from time to time, by Congress, a secretary, whose commission shall continue in force for four years, unless sooner revoked; he shall reside in the district, and have a freehold estate therein, in 500 acres of land, while in the exercise of his office. . . . There shall also be appointed a court to consist of three judges, any two of whom to form a court, who shall have a common law jurisdiction, and reside in the district, and have each therein a freehold estate in 500 acres of land, while in the exercise of their offices; and their commissions shall continue in force during good behavior.

The governor and judges, or a majority of them, shall adopt and publish in the district, such laws of the original states, criminal and civil, as may be necessary, and best suited to the circumstances of the district, and report them to Congress, from time to time; which laws shall be in force in the district until the organization of the general assembly therein, unless disapproved of by Congress; but afterwards the legislature shall have authority to alter them as they shall think fit.

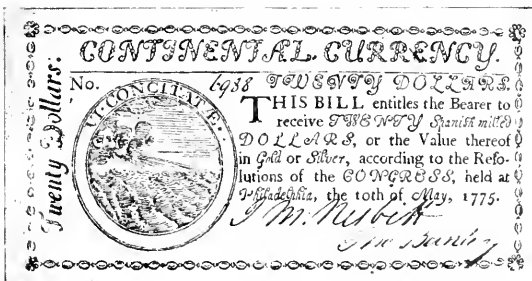
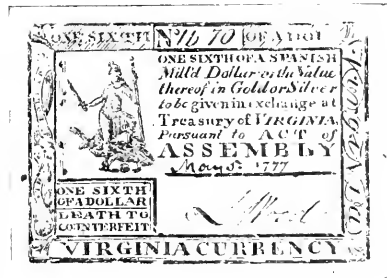
The governor, for the time being, shall be commander in chief of the militia, appoint and commission all officers in the same, below the rank of general officers; all general officers shall be appointed and commissioned by Congress.

Previous to the organization of the general assembly, the governor shall appoint such magistrates and other civil officers, in each county or township, as he shall find necessary for the preservation of the peace and good order in the same. After the general assembly shall be organized, the powers and duties of the magistrates and

Most Serene, Serene, most puissant, puissant, high, illustrious, noble, honorable, venerable, wise and prudent Emperors, Kings, Republicks, Dunces, Dukes, Earls, Barons, Lords, Burgomasters, Counallors, as also Judges, Officers, Justiciaries & Agents of all the good Cities and places whither ecclesiastical or secular, who shall see these patents or hear them read We the United States of America in Congress Assembled make known that John Green Captain of the Ship call'd the *Empress of China* is a Citizen of the United States of America and that the Ship which he commands, belongs to Citizens of the said United States and as we wish to see the said John Green prosper in his lawful affairs our prayer is to all the beforementioned, and to each of them separately, where the said John Green shall arrive with his Vessel & Cargo, that they may please to receive him with goodness and to treat him in a becoming manner, permitting him upon the usual tolls & expences in passing & repassing, to pass, navigate, and frequent the Ports, Passes and territories to the end to transact his business where and in what manner he shall judge proper: whereof we shall be willingly indebted

In Testimony whereof we have caused the Seal of the United States to be hereunto affixed - Witness His Excellency Thomas Mifflin President this thirtieth day of January in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred & Eighty four and in the Eighth year of the Sovereignty & Independence of the United States of America.

*The Mifflin*  
*Chas Thomson for*



On the upper part of the page is an interesting document given by the Continental Congress to Captain John Green, of the ship, "Empress of China," the first vessel flying the American flag to visit China.  
The lower reproductions show examples of Continental and State currency at the opening of the Revolution.

**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.**

other civil officers shall be regulated and defined by the said assembly. . . .

. . . [the governor] shall proceed, . . . to lay out the parts of the district in which the Indian titles shall have been extinguished, into counties and townships, subject, however, to such alterations as may thereafter be made by the legislature.

So soon as there shall be 5000 free male inhabitants of full age, in the district, upon giving proof thereof to the governor, they shall receive authority, with time and place, to elect representatives from their counties or townships, to represent them in the general assembly. . . .

The general assembly, or legislature, shall consist of the governor, legislative council, and a house of representatives. The legislative council shall consist of five members, to continue in office five years, unless sooner removed by Congress. . . . And the governor, legislative council and house of representatives, shall have authority to make laws, in all cases, for the good government of the district, not repugnant to the principles and articles in this ordinance established and declared. And all bills having passed by a majority in the house, and by a majority in the council, shall be referred to the governor for his assent; but no bill or legislative act whatever, shall be of any force without his assent. The governor shall have power to convene, prorogue and dissolve the general assembly, when, in his opinion, it shall be expedient.

. . . As soon as a legislature shall be formed in the district, the council and house assembled, in one room, shall have authority, by joint ballot, to elect a delegate to Congress, who shall have a seat in Congress, with a right of debating, but not of voting during this temporary government.

And for extending the fundamental principles of civil and religious liberty, which form the basis whereon these republics, their laws and constitutions are erected; to fix and establish those principles as the basis of all laws, constitutions and governments, which forever hereafter shall be formed in the said territory; to provide also for the establishment of states, and permanent government therein, and for their admission to a share in the federal councils on an equal footing with the original states, at as early periods as may be consistent with the general interest:

It is hereby ordained and declared, by the authority aforesaid, That the following articles shall be considered as articles of compact between the original states and the people and states in the said territory, and forever remain unalterable, unless by common consent, to wit:

ART. 1ST. No person, demeaning himself in a peaceable and orderly manner, shall ever be molested on account of his mode of worship or religious sentiments, in the said territories.

ART. 2D. The inhabitants of the said territory, shall always be entitled to the benefits of the writ of *habeas corpus*, and of the trial by jury; of a proportionate representation of the people in the legislature, and of judicial proceedings according to the course of common law. All persons shall be bailable, unless for capital offences, where the proof shall be evident, or the presumption great. All fines shall be moderate; and no cruel or unusual punishments shall be inflicted. No man shall be deprived of his liberty or property, but by the judgment

of his peers, or the law of the land, and should the public exigencies make it necessary, for the common preservation, to take any person's property, or to demand his particular services, full compensation shall be made for the same. And in the just preservation of rights and property, it is understood and declared, that no law ought ever to be made, or have force in the said territory, that shall, in any manner whatever, interfere with, or affect private contracts or engagements, *bona fide*, and without fraud previously formed.

ART. 3D. Religion, morality and knowledge being necessary to good government and the happiness of mankind, schools and the means of education shall forever be encouraged. The utmost good faith shall always be observed towards the Indians; their lands and property shall never be taken from them without their consent; and in their property, rights and liberty they never shall be invaded or disturbed, unless in just and lawful wars authorized by Congress; but laws founded in justice and humanity, shall, from time to time, be made, for preventing wrongs being done to them, and for preserving peace and friendship with them.

ART. 4TH. The said territory, and the states which may be formed therein, shall forever remain a part of this confederacy of the United States of America, subject to the articles of confederation, and to such alterations therein as shall be constitutionally made; and to all the acts and ordinances of the United States in Congress assembled, conformable thereto. The inhabitants and settlers in the said territory, shall be subject to pay a part of the federal debts, contracted or to be contracted, and a proportional part of the expenses of government, to be apportioned on them by Congress, according to the same common rule and measure, by which apportionments thereof shall be made on the other states; and the taxes for paying their proportion, shall be laid and levied by the authority and direction of the legislatures of the district or districts, or new states, as in the original states, within the time agreed upon by the United States in Congress assembled. The legislatures of those districts or new states, shall never interfere with the primary disposal of the soil by the United States in Congress assembled, nor with any regulations Congress may find necessary for securing the title in such soil to the *bona fide* purchasers. No tax shall be imposed on lands the property of the United States; and in no case shall non-resident proprietors be taxed higher than residents. The navigable waters leading into the Mississippi and Saint Lawrence, and the carrying places between the same, shall be common high-ways, and forever free, as well to the inhabitants of the said territory, as to the citizens of the United States, and those of any other states that may be admitted into the confederacy, without any tax, impost or duty therefor.

ART. 5TH. There shall be formed in the said territory, not less than three, nor more than five states. . . .

ART. 6TH. There shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in the said territory, otherwise than in the punishment of crimes, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted; provided always, that any person escaping into the same, from whom labor or service is lawfully claimed in any one of the original states, such fugitive may be lawfully reclaimed, and conveyed to the person claiming his or her labor or service as aforesaid. . . . — *Journals of Congress*, (ed. of 1801), XII, 58-63.



# Topic U 17. Setting the New Government in Operation, 1789-1801.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

### THE FEDERALIST SUPREMACY—1789-1801.

#### 1. Reorganization of National Government.

- a) Transfer from old to new government.
  - 1) Action of old congress—named time and place for inauguration of new government.
  - 2) Action of the states—provided for election of senators, representatives and electors of president.
  - 3) Meeting of presidential electors. Washington unanimously chosen president; J. Adams vice-president.

#### b) Inauguration of New Government.

- 1) Delay in assembling at New York.
- 2) Counting of electoral votes; inauguration of Washington.
- 3) Contest over titles and ceremonies.

#### c) Organization of Executive Departments.

- 1) Preceding departments existing under Articles.
- 2) New acts for establishment of departments of foreign affairs (state), treasury, war, and attorney-general.
- 3) Argument over question of removal.
- 4) Persons appointed to the departments; Jefferson, Hamilton, Knox, E. Randolph.
- 5) United States Currency and Mint.
- 6) Post-Office.

#### d) Organization of Judicial Department.

- 1) Provisions of Constitution.
- 2) Supreme Court, circuit courts, district courts.
- 3) Provisions for procedure and methods of appeal, etc.

#### e) Amendments to the Constitution, 1790.

- 1) Demand for a bill of rights.
- 2) Amendments proposed; ten adopted.

#### f) Seat of government, Philadelphia-Washington.

#### g) Beginnings of the cabinet.

#### 2. Financial Measures.

- a) Importance of the subject.
- b) Character and ability of Hamilton.
- c) The tariff act, 1789.

- 1) All agreed this should be the first business of congress, secure revenue.
- 2) Sectional differences shown here as in all later tariff measures; east against west; slave states against free states; maritime and manufacturing interests against agricultural sections.
- 3) Character of the act as passed—only slightly protective.

#### d) Refunding the country's debts.

- 1) What is meant by refunding?
- 2) Character and amount of the national debt.
  - (a) Foreign debt and arrears of interest on it.
  - (b) Domestic debt: loan office certificates (bonds to-day), certificates of indebtedness issued by paymasters and other continental officials; arrears of in-

terest on all of these; continental paper currency; debts incurred by states in the cause of independence.

#### 3) Various proposals for refunding.

#### 4) Measures finally adopted:

- (a) Foreign debt and interest to be fully provided for.
- (b) Domestic debt (continental) paid in full but not all to bear full rate of interest at once.
- (c) Arrears of interest to bear lower rate of interest.
- (d) Continental currency at 100 to one.
- (e) State debts to be assumed by the United States government.

#### e) The excise tax, 1791.

- 1) Reasons for.
- 2) Subjects of taxation.

#### f) The National Bank.

- 1) Hamilton's report upon.
- 2) Advantages of a bank.
- 3) Opposition to in Congress.
- 4) Terms of charter of 1791.

#### g) Effects of financial measures.

- 1) Strengthened public credit at home and abroad.
- 2) Led to speculation in funds.
- 3) Made bondholders firm supporters of national government.
- 4) Laid foundations of political parties.

#### 3. Organization of Political Parties.

#### a) Definition of political parties.

#### b) Review of:

- 1) Factions in Colonial Period.
- 2) Whigs and Tories in Revolution.
- 3) Friends and opponents of strong central government, 1781-1789; Federalists; anti-federalists.

#### c) Early uniformity in congress, 1789.

#### d) Beginnings of personal differences, Jefferson and Madison vs. Hamilton.

#### e) Rival parties:

- 1) Federalists (nicknamed Anglican, monarchs, treasury party, etc.). Favored national government, loose interpretation of constitution, national bank, mercantile and commercial interests. Favored treaty with England.
- 2) Republican (nicknamed Democrats, antis, etc.). Favored limited national government and strong state governments, strict interpretation of the constitution; favored agricultural interests and alliance with France.

#### f) Steps in party organization.

- 1) Early informal meetings, letter writing, etc.
- 2) Use of town and county resolutions and petitions.
- 3) Rise of partisan newspapers.
- 4) Resolutions of state legislatures.
- 5) Nomination systems for selection of party candidates, at first informal, later town or county or state conventions, then congressional caucuses.

4. Affairs in the West
  - a) Whiskey rebellion.
  - b) Indian Wars.
  - c) English in Northwest; Spaniards in Southwest.
  - d) Discontent in Kentucky and Tennessee over navigation of the Mississippi River.
5. Foreign Affairs.
  - a) European Conditions, 1789-1800.
  - b) Washington's neutrality proclamation, 1793.
  - c) Relations with England:
    - 1) Causes of controversy—western posts, impressment, no commercial privileges, seizing United States vessels, boundary disputes.
    - 2) Jay treaty, 1794-5. Provisions; objections to; argument in Congress. Result—war avoided.
  - d) Relations with France. Terms of treaty of alliance of 1778; Genet's mission; Monroe in France; treatment of our commissioners; X, Y, Z, affair; naval war, 1798-1800; treaty of 1800.
  - e) Relations with Spain: Holding of forts in the Mississippi Valley and restrictions on Mississippi trade; treaty of 1795—right of deposit at New Orleans.
6. Presidential Campaigns and Elections.
  - a) 1792—Washington and Adams re-elected.
  - b) Attacks on Washington.
  - c) Washington's refusal to serve third time; farewell address.
  - d) Washington as a statesman.
  - e) 1796—Adams president; Jefferson vice-president.
7. Downfall of Federalists, 1797-1801.
  - a) Quarrels in party—Hamilton vs. Adams.
  - b) New measures called forth by French War:
    - 1) Enlarged army and navy; navy yards.
    - 2) Navy department established, 1798.
    - 3) Unpopular taxes on lands, slaves, carriages, etc.
  - c) Alien Acts.
    - 1) Alien Enemies Act (still on statute book).
    - 2) Alien Friends Act (expired 1800).
  - d) Sedition Act—punishment of conspiracy and seditious writing or speaking.
  - e) Naturalization Act: fourteen years' residence.
  - f) Unpopular enlargement of court system.
  - g) Virginia and Kentucky resolutions against these measures.
    - 1) Authorship—Jefferson and Madison.
    - 2) Political theories—nullification.
8. Campaign and Election of 1800-1801.
  - a) Attacks on personal character of Adams and Jefferson.
  - b) Tie vote of electors for Jefferson and Burr.
  - c) Ballot in House of Representatives.
  - d) Danger of civil war.
  - e) Hamilton's influence in election of Jefferson.

#### REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 196-210; Ashley, 231-247; Channing, 257-292; Hart, 235-259; James & Sanford, 215-240; Johnston-MacDonald, 189-209; McLaughlin, 233-259; McMaster, 197-215; Montgomery, 177-190; Muzzey, 184-205.

For Collateral Reading.—Coman, Industrial History, 132-156; Dewey, Financial History, 75-117; Elson, U. S., 341-375; Hart, Formation of Union, 136-175; Sparks, Men Who Made the Nation, ch. 6; Stanwood, History of Presidency, ch. 2-5; Walker, Making of the Nation, ch. 5-8.

For Topical Study.—

1. Bassett, Federalist System, ch. 1; Hildreth, U. S., IV,

25-64, 101-129, 220-224, 301-326; Johnston, American Political History, I, 106-130; McMaster, U. S., I, 525-561; Schouler, U. S., I, 79-143; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 7; Wilson, American People, III, 98-108.

2. Bassett, ch. 2; Hildreth, IV, 65-101, 154-218, 253-267, 275-277; McMaster, I, 515-551, 568-583; II, 25-41; Schouler, I, 113-156, 173-177; Stanwood, Tariff Controversies, I, ch. 3-4; Wilson, III, 108-112; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 8-9; Woodburn, Political Parties, ch. 2.

3. Bassett, ch. 3; Hildreth, IV, 290-301, 331-410; V, 35-45; Johnston, I, 203-234; McMaster, II, 49-53, 204-212; Schouler, 53-60, 180-203, 368-384; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 11; Wilson, III, 112-129.

4. Bassett, ch. 4, 5, 7; Hildreth, IV, 281-287, 443-446, 498-530; McMaster, I, 593-604; II, 32-35, 41-48, 141-159, 189-203; Schouler, I, 162-173, 188-213, 290-301, 376-378; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 10; von Holst, U. S., I, 80-88, 93-112.

5. Bassett, ch. 4-6, 8, 15-16; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 317-322; Foster, Century of American Diplomacy, ch. 5; Hildreth, IV, 132-137, 411-442, 486-492, 539-615, 645-682, V, 46-96, ch. 11; Johnston, I, 131-180; McMaster, I, 89-141, 188, 212-280, ch. 10; Schouler, I, 259-289, 304-340, 358-368, 385-403, 469; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 11; von Holst, I, 112-137; Wilson, III, 129-152.

6. Hildreth, IV, 381-382, 685-691, V, 25-35; McMaster, II, 85-88, 289-307.

7. Bassett, ch. 14-19; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 322; Hildreth, V, ch. 12, 13, and pp. 319-321; Johnston, I, 181-202; McMaster, II, 374-495; Powell, Nullification and Secession, ch. 2; Schouler, I, 397-446; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 12-13; Von Holst, I, 138-168; Warfield, Kentucky Resolutions; Wilson, III, 152-158.

8. Bassett, ch. 19; Hildreth, V, ch. 15; McMaster, II, 497-537; Schouler, I, 472-510; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 14; Von Holst, I, 168-176; Wilson, III, 158-172.

Source References.—American History Leaflets, 15; Calender, Economic History, ch. 6; Caldwell and Persinger, 285-307; Hart, Source Book, 181-196; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 13-15; Hill, Liberty Documents, ch. 17; Johnston, American Orations, I, 75-146; MacDonald, Source Book, 233-278; MacDonald, Documents, 46-160; Maylay, Journal; Old South Leaflets, 4, 10, 74, 103; Preston, Documents, 277-299.

Biography.—Lives of Washington, Jefferson, Hamilton, John Adams, Madison, Monroe.

#### SOURCE-STUDY.

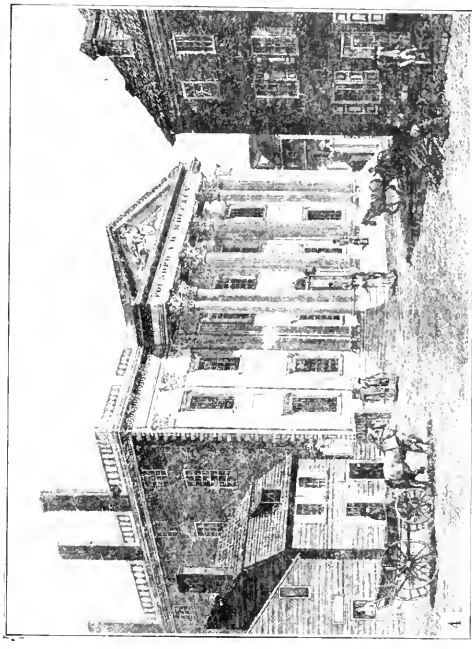
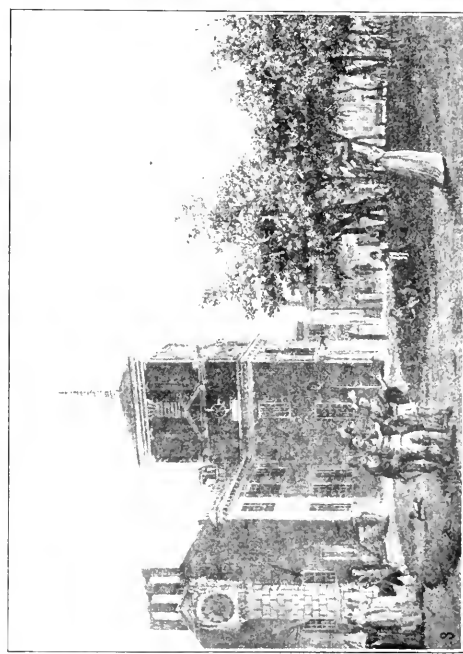
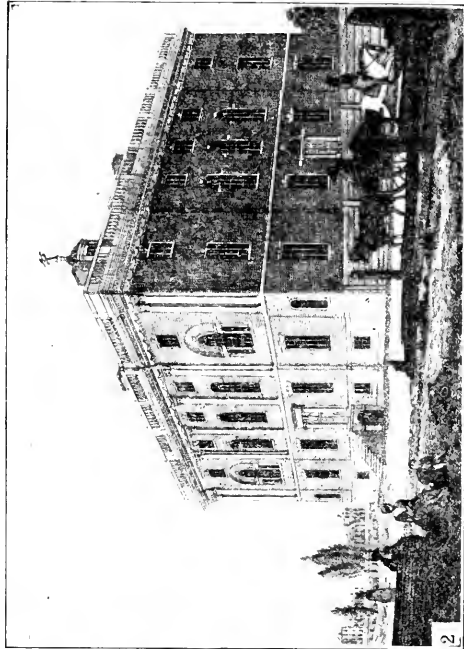
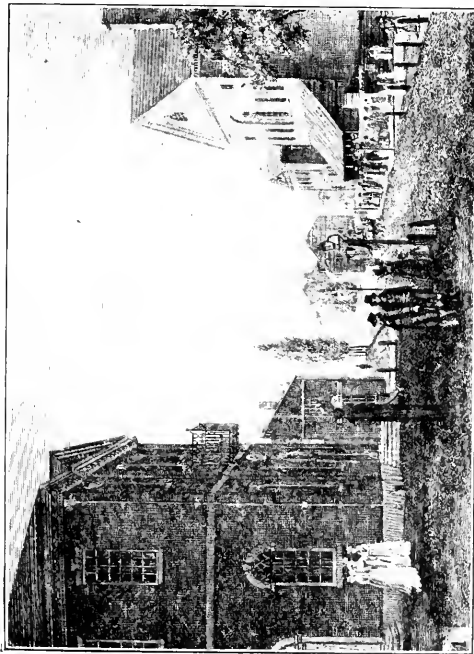
The extracts following show the provisions of the Federalist measures which led to wide-spread opposition to the party. This opposition found expression in the resolutions of the Virginia and Kentucky legislatures; the former written by Madison, the latter by Jefferson.

#### ALIEN ACT, JUNE 25, 1798.

SECTION 1. *Be it enacted . . .* That it shall be lawful for the President of the United States at any time during the continuance of this act, to order all such *aliens* as he shall judge dangerous to the peace and safety of the United States, or shall have reasonable grounds to suspect are concerned in any treasonable or secret machinations against the government thereof, to depart out of the territory of the United States. . . . And in case any alien, so ordered to depart, shall be found at large within the United States after the time limited in such order for his departure, and not having obtained a *license* from the President to reside therein, or having obtained such *license* shall not have conformed thereto, every such alien shall, on conviction thereof, be imprisoned for a term not exceeding three years, and shall never after be admitted to become a citizen of the United States. . . .

SEC. 2. *And he it further enacted,* That it shall be lawful for the President of the United States, whenever he may deem it necessary for the public safety, to order to be removed out of the territory thereof, any alien who may or shall be in prison in pursuance of this act; and to cause to be arrested and sent out of the United States such of those aliens as shall have been ordered to depart therefrom and shall not have obtained a license as aforesaid, in all cases where, in the opinion of the President,

(Continued on Page 4.)



VIEWS OF PHILADELPHIA AS THE CAPITAL CITY, 1790-1800; TAKEN FROM OLD ENGRAVINGS.

- No. 1. Congress Hall, adjoining the State House (Independence Hall); erected for the use of the national government.
- No. 2. The building erected for the President's residence, but never occupied by him. For many years occupied by the University of Pennsylvania.
- No. 3. A view of the State House (Independence Hall) from the rear.
- No. 4. The building in Third Street erected for the first United States Bank; later sold to Girard; still occupied by the Girard National Bank.

**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.**

the public safety requires a speedy removal. And if any alien so removed or sent out of the United States by the President shall voluntarily return thereto, unless by permission of the President of the United States, such alien on conviction thereof, shall be imprisoned so long as, in the opinion of the President, the public safety may require. . . .—*United States Statutes at Large*, I, 570-571.

**SEDITION ACT, JULY 14, 1798.**

**SECTION 1.** *Be it enacted . . .* That if any persons shall unlawfully combine or conspire together, with intent to oppose any measure or measures of the government of the United States, which are or shall be directed by proper authority, or to impede the operation of any law of the United States, or to intimidate or prevent any person holding a place or office in or under the government of the United States, from undertaking, performing or executing his trust or duty; . . . he or they shall be deemed guilty of a high misdemeanor, and on conviction, before any court of the United States having jurisdiction thereof, shall be punished by a fine not exceeding five thousand dollars, and by imprisonment during a term not less than six months nor exceeding five years. . . .

**SEC. 2.** *And be it further enacted,* That if any person shall write, print, utter or publish, . . . any false, scandalous and malicious writing or writings against the government of the United States, or either house of the Congress of the United States, or the President of the United States, with intent to defame the said government, or either house of the said Congress, or the said President, or to bring them, or either of them, into contempt or disrepute; or to excite against them, or either or any of them, the hatred of the good people of the United States, or to stir up sedition within the United States, or to excite any unlawful combinations therein, for opposing or resisting any law of the United States, or any act of the President of the United States, done in pursuance of any such law, or of the powers in him vested by the constitution of the United States, or to resist, oppose, or defeat any such law, or act, or to aid, encourage or abet any hostile designs of any foreign nation against the United States, their people or government, then such person, being thereof convicted before any court of the United States having jurisdiction thereof, shall be punished by a fine not exceeding two thousand dollars, and by imprisonment not exceeding two years. . . .—*United States Statutes at Large*, I, 596-597.

**KENTUCKY RESOLUTIONS, NOVEMBER 16, 1798.**

1. *Resolved*, that the several states composing the United States of America, are not united on the principle of unlimited submission to their general government; but that, by compact, under the style and title of a Constitution for the United States, and of amendments thereto, they constituted a general government for special purposes, delegated to that government certain definite powers, reserving, each state to itself, the residuary mass of right to their own self-government; and that whenever the general government assumes undelegated powers, its acts are unauthorized, void, and of no force: That to this compact each state acceded as a state, and is an integral party, its co-states forming, as to itself, the other party: that this government, created by this compact, was not made the exclusive or final judge of the extent of the powers delegated to itself, since that would have made its discretion, and not the Constitution, the measure of its powers; but that as in all other cases of compact among parties having no common judge, each party has

*an equal right to judge for itself, as well of infractions as of the mode and measure of redress.*

2. *Resolved*, that the Constitution of the United States having delegated to Congress a power to punish treason, counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States, piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the laws of nations, and no other crimes whatever; . . . therefore, also, the same act of Congress passed on the 14th day of July, 1798, . . . as also the act passed by them on the 27th day of June, 1798, . . . are altogether void and of no force. . . .

9. *Resolved*, lastly, . . . that, therefore, this commonwealth is determined, as it doubts not its co-states are, tamely to submit to undelegated and consequently unlimited powers in no man, or body of men on earth; that if the acts before specified should stand, these conclusions would flow from them—that the general government may place any act they think proper on the list of crimes and punish it themselves, whether enumerated or not enumerated by the Constitution as cognizable by them: that they may transfer its cognizance to the President, or any other person, who may himself be the accuser, counsel, judge, and jury, whose suspicions may be the evidence, his order the sentence, his officer the executioner, and his breast the sole record of the transaction: that a very numerous and valuable description of the inhabitants of these states being by this precedent, reduced, as outlaws, to the absolute dominion of one man, and the barrier of the Constitution thus swept away from us all, no rampart now remains against the passions and the powers of a majority of Congress, to protect from a like exportation or other more grievous punishment the minority of the same body, the legislators, judges, governors, and counselors of the states, nor their other peaceable inhabitants, who may venture to reclaim the constitutional rights and liberties of the states and people, or who for other causes, good or bad, may be obnoxious to the views, or marked by the suspicions, of the President, or be thought dangerous to his or their elections, or other interests, public or personal; that the friendless alien has indeed been selected as the safest subject of a first experiment; but the citizen will soon follow, or rather has already followed; for, already has a sedition act marked him as its prey: That these and successive acts of the same character, unless arrested on the threshold, may tend to drive these states into revolution and blood, and will furnish new calumnies against republican governments, and new pretexts for those who wish it to be believed, that man cannot be governed but by a rod of iron: that it would be a dangerous delusion were a confidence in the men of our choice to silence our fears for the safety of our rights; that confidence is everywhere the parent of despotism: free government is founded in jealousy and not in confidence; . . .

In questions of power then let no more be heard of confidence in man, but bind him down from mischief by the claims of the Constitution. That this Commonwealth does therefore call on its co-states for an expression of their sentiments on the acts concerning aliens, and for the punishment of certain crimes herein before specified, plainly declaring whether these acts are or are not authorized by the Federal Compact. And it doubts not that . . . the co-states, recurring to their natural right not made federal, will concur in declaring these [acts] void and of no force, and will each unite with this commonwealth in requesting their repeal at the next session of Congress.—*Elliot, Debates . . . on the Federal Constitution*, IV, 540-544.

# Topic U 18. Jeffersonian Democracy, 1801-1812.

Except the Louisiana Purchase (Topic U 19.)

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Public experience and character of Jefferson.
2. His political theories as given in inaugural address—"wise and frugal government."
3. Policy of retrenchment and reduction of taxes and of debt.
  - a) Policy a success because of period of peace and prosperity.
  - b) Retrenchment—army and navy reduced; navy yards sold; vessels tied up; foreign ministers recalled; expensive court system abolished; many officials discharged.
  - c) Unpopular direct taxes and excises repealed.
  - d) Debt rapidly reduced owing to reduced expenses and to large income from tariff.
4. Civil Service and Judiciary.
  - a) Office holders reduced in numbers; and many Republicans put in.
  - b) Recent judiciary acts repealed.
  - c) Attacks on judges; impeachments of Judges Pickens and Chase.
5. Democratic Spirit.
  - a) Repeal of Naturalization Act.
  - b) Informal methods in relations to Congress and foreign governments; written messages.
  - c) Life in Washington, 1801-1805; Contrast with official life in Philadelphia.
6. Barbary Wars—causes; results.
7. Struggle for Rights of Neutrals.
  - a) Internecine character of European struggle.
  - b) Position of American commerce: down to 1806 very prosperous, carrying goods to belligerents and their colonies.
8. Commercial Warfare of France and England.
  - a) Continental system of Napoleon.
  - b) Berlin decree.
  - c) English orders in Council.
  - d) Milan decree.
9. Relations with France.
  - a) Attempt to force the United States into war with England.
  - b) Seizure of American vessels under false pretences.
10. Relations with England.
  - a) Maritime rights.
    - 1) Impressment of sailors.  
Note: question of expatriation.
    - 2) Search of American vessels.  
Note: warranted by international law?
    - 3) Enemy's goods can be seized in neutral vessels.  
Note: United States contended "free ships make free goods."
    - 4) Rule of 1756. Note "continuous" and "broken voyage."
    - 5) Admiralty decisions confiscating American vessels.
    - 6) Paper blockades.
  - b) Other causes of dispute.
    - 1) Expiration of commercial provisions of Jay treaty and impossibility of getting satisfactory new treaty (1806).
    - 2) Violations of American hospitality by English naval vessels.
    - 3) Chesapeake and Leopard, 1807.
    - 4) Indiscretions of English ministers to the United States; Erskine, Jackson.
- 5) Henry letters, showing desire to alienate New England.
- 6) Tampering with Indians.
- 7) Refusal to repeal orders in council.
- 8) President and Little Belt.
11. American Retaliatory Measures.
  - a) Non-importation act, 1806.
  - b) Embargo, 1807.
  - c) Non-intercourse act, 1809.
  - d) Macon Bills, 1810.
  - e) Failure of these measures to win respect either from England or France.
  - f) Great injury to American commerce.
  - g) Fostered dissatisfaction in New England.
12. Change in Political Control.
  - a) Congressional election of 1810. Large gains of Young Republicans, favoring war with England.
  - b) Henry Clay leader in session of Congress opening in December, 1811.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 211-227; Ashley, 247-266; Channing, 295-331; Hart, 261-280; James & Sanford, 241-258; Johnston-MacDonald, 210-221; McLaughlin, 260-280; McMaster, 216-231; Montgomery, 191-200; Muzzey, 205-218.

For Collateral Reading. Bogart, Economic History, 104-109; Dewey, Financial History, 118-128; Elson, U. S., 376-413; Hart, Formation of Union, 176-205; Sparks, Men Who Made the Nation, ch. 7; Stanwood, History of Presidency, ch. 6, 7; Walker, Making of the Nation, ch. 9-11.

For Topical Study:—

1. Channing, Jeffersonian System, ch. 1; Johnston, American Political History, I, 237-252; Sparks, U. S., I, 263-269.

2. Adams, U. S., I, ch. 7; Channing, ch. 1; Hildreth, V, 419-421; McMaster, U. S., II, 533-535; Schouler, II, 1-16; Von Holst, U. S., I, 177-182; Wilson, American People, III, 173-177.

3. Adams, I, ch. 8, 9, 10; III, ch. 1; Channing, ch. 2; Schouler, II, 22-34; Sparks, U. S., I, 270-271; Wilson, III, 176-180.

4. Adams, I, ch. 11, 12; II, ch. 7, 10; Channing, ch. 9; Hildreth, V, 426-448, 509-515; Johnston, I, 270-287; McMaster, II, 583-587, 607-611; Schouler, II, 6-12, 25-27; Sparks, U. S., I, 271-276.

5. Hildreth, V, 451-465; Schouler, II, 90-97.

6. Adams, I, 243-246; II, 425-437; Channing, ch. 3; Hildreth, V, 448, 482-484; McMaster, 588-602; III, 163-199; Schouler, II, 75-78, 104-106.

7. Adams, IV, ch. 5; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 323-331; Channing, ch. 13; Hildreth, V, 573-580; Johnston, I, 288-304; McMaster, III, 219-275; Schouler, II, 108-123.

8. Wilson, III, 188-193.

9. Adams, III, ch. 17-18; V, ch. 2, 7, 11, 16, 18; Channing, ch. 15; Hildreth, V, 646-650; VI, 31-35; Schouler, II, 333-345.

10. Adams, III, ch. 16; IV, ch. 1-4; V, ch. 3-6; VI, ch. 2; Channing, ch. 15; Hildreth, V, 534-539, 563-565, 674-685, VI, 165-176, 183-192, 214-222; Schouler, II, 310-332.

11. Adams, IV, ch. 7, 11, 14-19; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 331-334; Channing, ch. 16-19; Hildreth, VI, 36-79, 81-138, 180; McMaster, III, ch. 19-20; Schouler, II, 178-220; Sparks, U. S., I, 301-310; Von Holst, I, 200-226; Wilson, III, 192-199.

12. Adams, VI, ch. 6-7; Babcock, Rise of American Nationality, ch. 1, 3-5; Channing, ch. 20; Hildreth, VI, 197-202, 259, 291-295; McMaster, III, 412-432; Schouler, II, 353-374; Wilson, III, 200-214.

13. Channing, ch. 20; Hildreth, VI, 295-298; McMaster, III, 430-458; Schouler, II, 371-392.

Source References.—Callender, Economic History, ch. 6; Caldwell and Persinger, Source History, 307-326; Hart, Source Book, 197-211; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 16-19; Johnston, American Orations, I, 147-179, 205-218; MacDonald, Source Book, 282-288; MacDonald, Documents, 171-191; Old South Leaflets, 101.

Biography.—Lives of Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, Albert Gallatin, Henry Clay.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

## JEFFERSON'S DOMESTIC AND FOREIGN POLICY.

The first inaugural address of Jefferson is an excellent epitome of his political principles. Expressed in the somewhat formal English of the eighteenth century statesman, it yet embodies his theories of democracy and the relation of the government to the citizen.

The first annual message goes into detail as to the means to simplify government, to reduce expenses and consequently taxation, and to return to the states their principal share in the government of the country.

The embargo and non-intercourse acts illustrate the Jeffersonian policy toward the warring European states, a policy which injured our own country and its trade more than it did the European combatants.

## JEFFERSON'S INAUGURAL ADDRESS, MARCH 4, 1801.

During the contest of opinion through which we have passed the animation of discussions and of exertions has sometimes worn an aspect which might impose on strangers unused to think freely and to speak and to write what they think; but this being now decided by the voice of the nation, announced according to the rules of the Constitution, all will, of course, arrange themselves under the will of the law, and unite in common efforts for the common good. All, too, will bear in mind this sacred principle, that though the will of the majority is in all cases to prevail, that will to be rightful must be reasonable; that the minority possess their equal rights, which equal law must protect, and to violate would be oppression. Let us, then, fellow-citizens, unite with one heart and one mind. Let us restore to social intercourse that harmony and affection without which liberty and even life itself are but dreary things. And let us reflect that, having banished from our land that religious intolerance under which mankind so long bled and suffered, we have yet gained little if we countenance a political intolerance as despotic, as wicked, and capable of as bitter and bloody persecutions. During the throes and convulsions of the ancient world, during the agonizing spasms of infuriated man, seeking through blood and slaughter his long-lost liberty, it was not wonderful that the agitation of the billows should reach even this distant and peaceful shore; that this should be more felt and feared by some and less by others, and should divide opinions as to measures of safety. But every difference of opinion is not a difference of principle. We have called by different names brethren of the same principle. We are all Republicans, we are all Federalists. If there be any among us who would wish to dissolve this Union or to change its republican form, let them stand undisturbed as monuments of the safety with which error of opinion may be tolerated where reason is left free to combat it. I know, indeed, that some honest men fear that a republican government cannot be strong, that this Government is not strong enough; but would the honest patriot, in the full tide of successful experiment, abandon a government which has so far kept us free and firm on the theoretic and visionary fear that this Government, the world's best hope, may by possibility want energy to preserve itself? I trust not. I believe this, on the contrary, the strongest Government on earth. I believe it the only one where every man, at the call of the law, would fly to the standard of the law, and would meet invasions of the public order as his own personal concern. Sometimes it is said that man can not be trusted with the government of himself. Can he, then, be trusted with the government of others? Or have we found angels in the forms of kings to govern him? Let history answer this question.

Let us, then, with courage and confidence pursue our own Federal and Republican principles, our attachment

to union and representative government. Kindly separated by nature and a wide ocean from the exterminating havoc of one quarter of the globe; too high-minded to endure the degradations of the others; possessing a chosen country, with room enough for our descendants to the thousandth and thousandth generation; entertaining a due sense of our equal right to the use of our own faculties, to the acquisitions of our own industry, to honor and confidence from our fellow-citizens, resulting not from birth, but from our actions and their sense of them; enlightened by a benign religion, professed, indeed, and practiced in various forms, yet all of them inculcating honesty, truth, temperance, gratitude, and the love of man; acknowledging and adoring an overruling Providence, which by all its dispensations proves that it delights in the happiness of man here and his greater happiness hereafter—with all these blessings, what more is necessary to make us a happy and prosperous people? Still one thing more, fellow-citizens—a wise and frugal Government, which shall restrain men from injuring one another, shall leave them otherwise free to regulate their own pursuits of industry and improvement, and shall not take from the mouth of labor the bread it has earned. This is the sum of good government, and this is necessary to close the circle of our felicities. . . .—Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents, 1789-1897*, Vol. I, pp. 322-323.

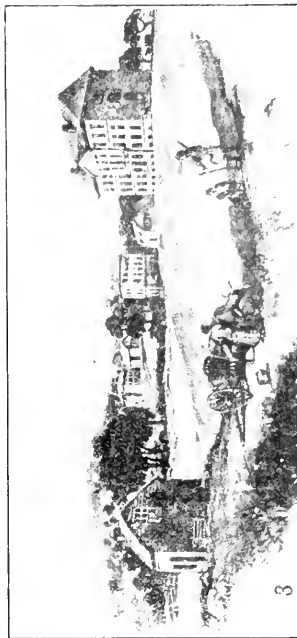
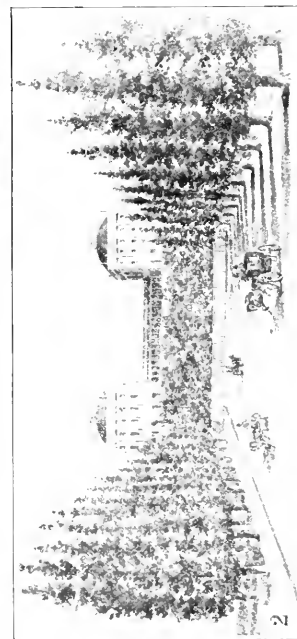
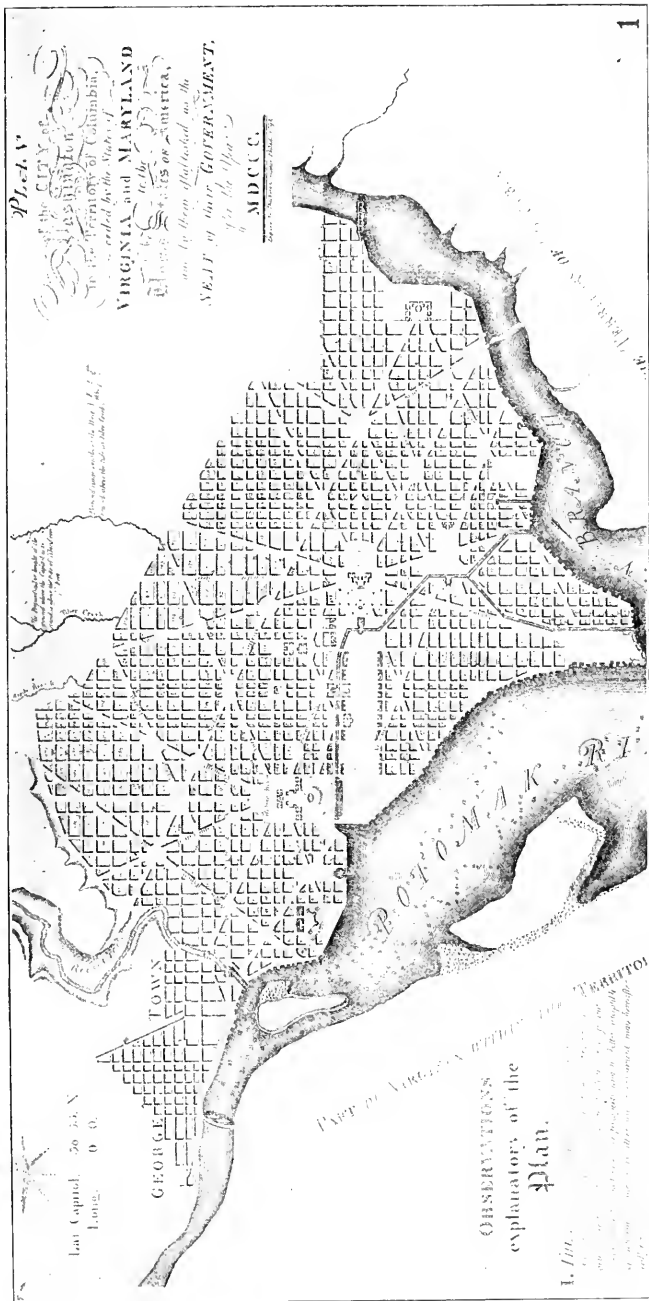
## JEFFERSON'S FIRST ANNUAL MESSAGE, DECEMBER 8, 1801.

. . . weighing all probabilities of expense as well as of income, there is reasonable ground of confidence that we may now safely dispense with all the internal taxes, comprehending excise, stamps, auctions, licenses, carriages, and refined sugars, to which the postage on newspapers may be added to facilitate the progress of information, and that the remaining sources of revenue will be sufficient to provide for the support of Government, to pay the interest of the public debts, and to discharge the principals within shorter periods than the laws or the general expectation had contemplated. War, indeed, and untoward events may change this prospect of things and call for expenses which the imposts could not meet; but sound principles will not justify our taxing the industry of our fellow-citizens to accumulate treasure for wars to happen we know not when, and which might not, perhaps, happen but from the temptations offered by that treasure.

These views, however, of reducing our burthens are formed on the expectation that a sensible and at the same time salutary reduction may take place in our habitual expenditures. For this purpose those of the civil Government, the Army, and Navy will need revival.

When we consider that this Government is charged with the external and mutual relations only of these States; that the States themselves have principle care of our persons, our property, and our reputation, constituting the great field of human concerns, we may well doubt whether our organization is not too complicated, too expensive; . . . I will cease to be laid before you an essay toward a statement of those who, under public employment of various kinds, draw money from the Treasury or from our citizens. Time has not permitted a perfect enumeration, the ramifications of office being too multiplied and remote to be completely traced in a first trial. . . .

But the great mass of public offices is established by law, and thereby by law alone can be abolished. Should the Legislature think it expedient to pass this roll in review and try all its parts by the test of public utility, they may be assured of every aid and light which Execu-



THE NEW CAPITAL CITY ON THE POTOMAC, 1800-1814.

No. 1. Official plan of the city of Washington, issued in 1792. The student should compare this plan with that of his own city. Note that the Washington plan possesses many advantages over the checker-board plan, adopted by Penn in Philadelphia, and used very extensively throughout the country. The diagonal avenues furnish excellent opportunities for the display of public buildings, the intersections create many small parks or "circles," and the avenues make it possible to reach distant parts of the city more quickly than with a checker-board plan.

No. 2. View of the White House, in 1799, before its occupation by President Adams, in 1800.

No. 3. View of the capital building about 1812.

**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.**

tive information can yield. Considering the general tendency to multiply offices and dependencies and to increase expense to the ultimate term of burthen which the citizen can bear, it behooves us to avail ourselves of every occasion which presents itself for taking off the surcharge, that it never may be seen here that after leaving to labor the smallest portion of its earnings on which it can subsist, Government shall itself consume the whole residue of what it was constituted to guard.—Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents, 1789-1897*, Vol. I, pp. 327-329.

**EMBARGO ACT, DECEMBER 22, 1807.**

*Be it enacted by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled*, That an embargo be, and hereby is laid on all ships and vessels in the ports and places within the limits or jurisdiction of the United States, cleared or not cleared, bound to any foreign port or place; and that no clearance be furnished to any ship or vessel bound to such foreign port or place, except vessels under the immediate direction of the President of the United States; and that the President be authorized to give such instructions to the officers of the revenue, and of the navy and revenue cutters of the United States, as shall appear best adapted for carrying the same into full effect: *Provided*, that nothing herein contained shall be construed to prevent the departure of any foreign ship or vessel, either in ballast, or with the goods, wares and merchandise on board of such foreign ship or vessel, when notified of this act.

**SEC. 2.** *And be it further enacted*, That during the continuance of this act, no registered, or sea letter vessel, having on board goods, wares and merchandise, shall be allowed to depart from one port of the United States to any other within the same, unless the master, owner, consignee or factor of such vessel shall first give bond, with one or more sureties to the collector of the district from which she is bound to depart, in a sum of double the value of the vessel and cargo, that the said goods, wares, or merchandise shall be relanded in some port of the United States, dangers of the seas excepted, which bond, and also a certificate from the collector where the same may be relanded, shall by the collector respectively be transmitted to the Secretary of the Treasury. All armed vessels possessing public commissions from any foreign power, are not to be considered as liable to the embargo laid by this act.—*Statutes at Large of U. S.*, II, 451-452.

**NON-INTERCOURSE ACT, MARCH 1, 1809.**

*Be it enacted by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled*, That from and after the passing of this act, the entrance of the harbors and waters of the United States and of the territories thereof, be, and the same is hereby interdicted to all public ships and vessels belonging to Great Britain or France, excepting vessels only which may be forced in by distress, or which are charged with despatches or business from the government to which they belong, and also packets having no cargo nor merchandise on board. And if any public ship or vessel as aforesaid, not being included in the exception above mentioned, shall enter any harbor or waters within the jurisdiction of the United States, or of the territories thereof, it shall be lawful for the President of the United States, or such other person as he shall have empowered for that purpose, to employ such part of the land and naval forces, or of the militia of the United States, or the territories thereof, as he shall deem necessary, to compel such ship or vessel to depart.

**SEC. 3.** *And be it further enacted*, That from and

after the twentieth day of May next, the entrance of the harbors and waters of the United States and the territories thereof be, and the same is hereby interdicted to all ships or vessels sailing under the flag of Great Britain or France, or owned in whole or in part by any citizen or subject of either; vessels hired, chartered or employed by the government of either country, for the sole purpose of carrying letters or despatches, and also vessels forced in by distress or by the dangers of the sea, only excepted. And if any ship or vessel sailing under the flag of Great Britain or France, or owned in whole or in part by any citizen or subject of either, and not excepted as aforesaid, shall after the said twentieth day of May next, arrive either with or without a cargo, within the limits of the United States, or of the territories thereof, such ship or vessel together with the cargo, if any, which may be found on board, shall be forfeited. . . .

**SEC. 4.** *And be it further enacted*, That from and after the twentieth day of May next, it shall not be lawful to import into the United States or the territories thereof, any goods, wares or merchandise whatever, from any port or place situated in Great Britain or Ireland, or in any of the colonies or dependencies of Great Britain, nor from any port or place situated in France, or in any of her colonies or dependencies, nor from any port or place in the actual possession of either Great Britain or France. Nor shall it be lawful to import into the United States, or the territories thereof, from any foreign port or place whatever, any goods, wares or merchandise whatever, being of the growth, produce or manufacture of France, or of any of her colonies or dependencies, or being of the growth, produce or manufacture of Great Britain or Ireland, or of any of the colonies or dependencies of Great Britain, or being of the growth, produce or manufacture of any place or country in the actual possession of either France or Great Britain: . . .

**SEC. 6.** *And be it further enacted*, That if any article or articles, the importation of which is prohibited by this act, shall, after the twentieth of May, be put on board of any ship or vessel, boat, raft or carriage, with intention to import the same into the United States, or the territories thereof, contrary to the true intent and meaning of this act, and with the knowledge of the owner or master of such ship or vessel, boat, raft or carriage, such ship or vessel, boat, raft or carriage shall be forfeited, and the owner and master thereof shall moreover each forfeit and pay treble the value of such articles.

**SEC. 11.** *And be it further enacted*, That the President of the United States be, and he hereby is authorized, in case either France or Great Britain shall so revoke or modify her edicts, as that they shall cease to violate the neutral commerce of the United States, to declare the same by proclamation; after which the trade of the United States, suspended by this act, and by the act laying an embargo on all ships and vessels in the ports and harbors of the United States, and the several acts supplementary thereto, may be renewed with the nation so doing. . . .

**SEC. 12.** *And be it further enacted*, That so much of the act laying an embargo on all ships and vessels in the ports and harbors of the United States, and of the several acts supplementary thereto, as forbids the departure of vessels owned by citizens of the United States, and the exportation of domestic and foreign merchandise to any foreign port or place, be and the same is hereby repealed, after the fifteenth day of March, one thousand eight hundred and nine, except so far as they relate to Great Britain or France, or their colonies or dependencies, or places in the actual possession of either. . . .—*Statutes at Large of U. S.*, II, 528-533.



# Topic U 19. Louisiana Purchase and the West, 1789-1812.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Review:
  - a) Settlement of Kentucky and Tennessee.
  - b) Cession of western lands to the United States.
  - c) Ordinance of 1787.
  - d) Attitude toward slavery northwest and southwest of the Ohio.
2. Migration to the Northwest, 1788-1802.
3. Transportation (see also Topic No. 26).
  - a) Lines of travel to the west.
  - b) Modes of transportation: foot, wagon, boats of the day.
  - c) Beginnings of the steamboat.
  - d) Early settlements; influence of New England; revolutionary soldiers; Virginia settlers; Georgia and Carolina settlers in the southwest.
4. Settlement of Indian claims. Defeat of St. Clair; Wayne's victory; treaty of Greenville, 1795; relations of Georgia to the Indians.
5. New States admitted. (Vermont, 1791); Kentucky, 1792; Tennessee, 1796; Ohio, 1802.
6. Colonial History of Louisiana: Under French; under Spaniards.
7. Restlessness in the West; Irritation at Spaniards; Blount's Conspiracy; Burr's Conspiracy.
8. Purchase of Louisiana.
  - a) Transfer by Spain to France.
  - b) Jefferson's alarm and attempts to purchase part of Gulf Coast.
  - c) Reasons for Napoleon's willingness to sell.
  - d) Terms of treaty of 1803:
    - 1) Financial consideration.
    - 2) Boundaries: indefinite.
    - 3) Rights guaranteed to inhabitants of ceded territory.
  - e) Discussion in Congress over:
    - 1) Appropriation.
    - 2) Constitutional right to purchase lands.
    - 3) Moral right to erect new states in west and thus outweigh the east (New England).
9. Exploration of the New Territory.
  - a) Ignorance of territory.
  - b) Journey of Lewis and Clarke.
  - c) Journey of Pike.
10. The Oregon Country.
  - a) Captain Gray and the *Columbia*.
  - b) Lewis and Clarke.
  - c) Hudson Bay Company.
  - d) John Jacob Astor—Astoria.
  - e) Incidents in War of 1812.
11. Controversy over West Florida.
12. Indian Boundary pushed back.
  - a) Harrison and Tippecanoe.
13. New States: Louisiana, 1812; Indiana, 1816.
14. Forms of Territorial Government. Following lines laid down in the Ordinance of 1787 (see source extract in Topic No. 16).
15. Life in the West, 1788-1815.
  - a) The backwoodsman:
    - 1) His character and part played in history of the United States.
    - 2) His camp or cabin.
    - 3) Clearing the land.
  - b) His means of earning a living: hunting, fishing, primitive agriculture.
  - c) Growth of communities: Early western towns—Marietta, Cincinnati, Pittsburg.
  - d) Growth of institutions:
    - 1) The public school—provision made by the United States for.
    - 2) Local government—copied after the states from which the settlers came; New England and Middle States influence in the northwest; southern influence in southwest.
    - 3) Territorial government by action of congress; popular features.
    - 4) Religion and churches.
    - 5) Social customs.
  - e) Contact with outside world:
    - 1) Across the Alleghenies.
    - 2) Down the Mississippi.
16. Influence of the Frontier in American Life.

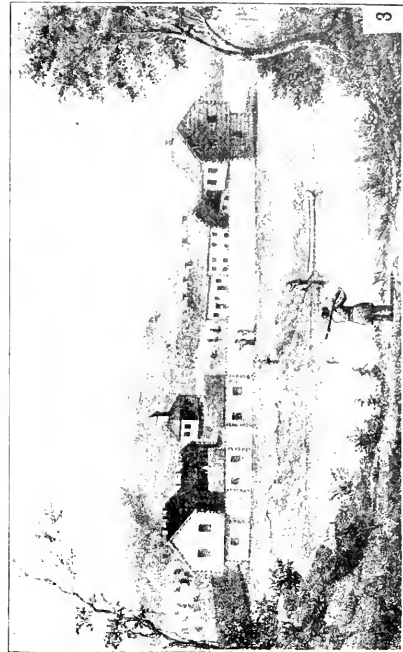
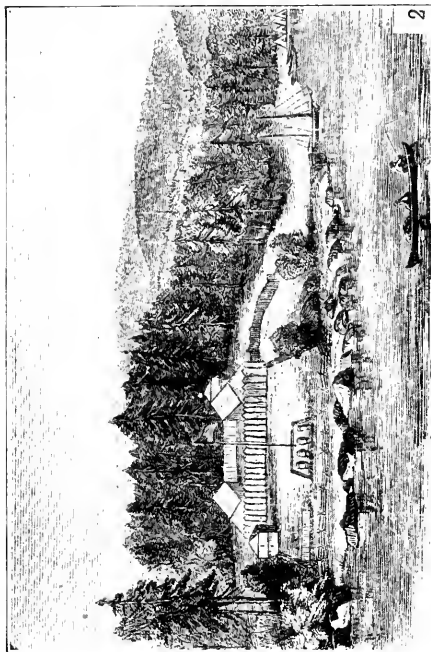
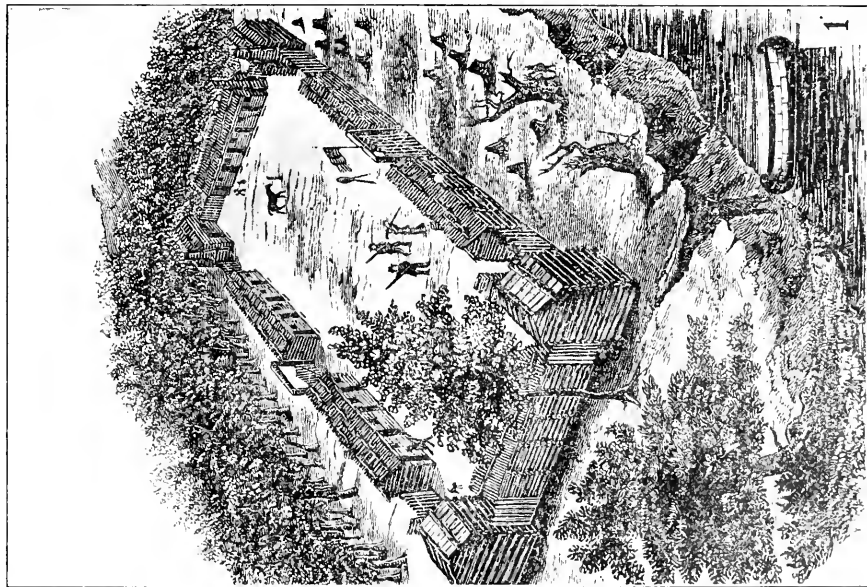
## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 216-218; Ashley, 219-221, 252-257; Channing, 219-227, 315-318; Hart, 191-196, 227, 265-270; James & Sanford, 185-190, 244-249; Johnston-MacDonald, 173-176, 201, 214-216; McMaster, 159-162, 190-194, 218-221, 241-246; Montgomery, 172, 183, 193-198; Muzzey, 161, 165, 207-211.
- For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, *Economic History*, 109-111, 170-175; Coman, *Industrial History*, 123-131, 156-174; Elson, U. S., 383-388; Hart, *Formation of Union*, 185-191; Walker, *Making of the Nation*, 177-186.
- For Topical Study.—
2. McMaster, U. S., III, 112-142.
  3. McMaster, I, 431-435, III, 486-495; Schouler, U. S., II, 295-298, 306-308.
  4. McMaster, III, 118-120.
  6. Adams, U. S., I, ch. 13-17; Channing, *Jeffersonian System*, ch. 4; Schouler, II, 40-46; Thwaites, *France in America*, ch. 18.
  7. Adams, III, ch. 10-14, 19; Hildreth, U. S., V, 594-626; McMaster, III, 49-88; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 16; Sparks, U. S., I, 283-288.
  8. Adams, II, ch. 1-6; Cambridge *Modern History*, VII, 321-326; Channing, ch. 5; Hart, *Foundations of American Foreign Policy*, ch. 6; Hildreth, V, 468-470, 478-499; Johnston, *American Political History*, I, 233-269; McMaster, II, 620-631, III, 1-30; Roosevelt, *Winning of West*, IV, ch. 6; Schouler, II, 46-59; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 17; Sparks, U. S., I, 283-299; von Holst, I, 183-199; Wilson, *American People*, III, 180-188.
  9. Channing, ch. 7; McMaster, II, 631-634, III, 112-115.
  10. McMaster, II, 634-635.
  11. Adams, III, ch. 5-6; Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, ch. 2; Channing, ch. 10; McMaster, III, 31-41, 209-215; Powell, *Nullification and Secession*, ch. 3, 5; Schouler, II, 345-349; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 18.
  12. Adams, IV, ch. 4-5; Babcock, ch. 2; McMaster, III, 528-540; Schouler, II, 81-86.
  13. Babcock, ch. 2.
  14. Channing, ch. 6; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 19; Willoughby, *Territories and Dependencies*.
  15. Bruce, Daniel Boone, McMaster, III, 469-486; Schouler, II, 270-280; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 12-13.
- Source References.—Callender, *Economic History*, ch. 12; Caldwell and Persinger, 310-316; Hart, *Source Book*, 200-202; Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. 5, 17; Johnston, *American Orations*, I, 180-201; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 279-282; MacDonald Documents, 160-171; Old South Leaflets, 40, 44, 105, 128, 131, 163, 174; Trail Makers' Series, *Expedition of Lewis and Clarke*.
- Biography.—Lives of Jefferson, Lewis and Clarke, Aaron Burr, Andrew Jackson, William Henry Harrison.

[illegible]

### Map Work for Topic U 19.

Slaves (a) Territories of the United States after purchase of Louisiana; (b) Disputed boundaries; (c) Explorations of Lewis and Clark, and Pike. See (a) Adams and Trent, 217; Ashley, 225; (b) Adams, 233; Pelsaert, 14; Hart, 264; James and Sanford, 243; Montgomery, Student's, 250; Muzzey, 210; (c) Shepherd, 118; Thomas, 208. (i) James and Sanford, 247; McMaster, 247; Muzzey, 210; Shepherd, 198. (e) Hart, 268; James and Sanford, 246; McLaughlin, 270; McMaster, 230, 221 (Pike); Montgomery, Student's, 392; Muzzey, 210; Shepherd, 198; Thomas, 205, 206 (Pike).



VIEWS TO ILLUSTRATE THE CHARACTER OF EARLY WESTERN SETTLEMENTS.

No. 1. Boonesborough, Ky., in 1773, the first fort erected in Kentucky, and the first permanent settlement in the State. Note the stockade connecting the outer walls of the houses; the windows and doors all face the interior of the enclosure.  
 No. 2. Astoria, in 1811, embodying the same principles of construction as seen in the Boonesborough picture.  
 No. 3. Fort Frye, Ohio, in 1792. This old engraving gives an excellent idea of the construction of the block-house with its overhanging story. One of these is placed at each angle of the triangular stockade.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

The first extract below is from a letter of President Jefferson, to Robert R. Livingston, on April 18, 1802; it shows Jefferson's alarm over the French acquisition of Louisiana. The second selection comprises extracts from the treaty of cession, of April 30, 1803. The money consideration does not appear in this treaty, but is arranged for in a separate convention.

The cession of Louisiana and the Floridas by Spain to France works most sorely on the U. S. On this subject the Secretary of State has written to you fully. Yet I cannot forbear recurring to it personally, so deep is the impression it makes in my mind. It completely reverses all the political relations of the U. S. and will form a new epoch in our political course. Of all nations of any consideration France is the one which hitherto has offered the fewest points on which we could have any conflict of right, and the most points of a communion of interests. From these causes we have ever looked to her as our *natural friend*, as one with which we never could have an occasion of difference. Her growth therefore we viewed as our own, her misfortunes ours. There is on the globe one single spot, the possessor of which is our natural and habitual enemy. It is New Orleans, through which the produce of three-eighths of our territory must pass to market, and from its fertility it will ere long yield more than half of our whole produce and contain more than half our inhabitants. France placing herself in that door assumes to us the attitude of defiance. Spain might have retained it quietly for years. . . . Not so can it ever be in the hands of France. The impetuosity of her temper, the energy and restlessness of her character, placed in a point of eternal friction with us, and our character, which though quiet, and loving peace and the pursuit of wealth, is high-minded, despising wealth in competition with insult or injury, enterprising and energetic as any nation on earth, these circumstances render it impossible that France and the U. S. can continue long friends when they meet in so irritable a position. They as well as we must be blind if they do not see this; and we must be very imprudent if we do not begin to make arrangements on that hypothesis. The day that France takes possession of N. Orleans fixes the sentence which is to restrain her forever within her low water mark. It seals the union of two nations who in conjunction can maintain exclusive possession of the ocean. From that moment we must marry ourselves to the British fleet and nation. We must turn all our attentions to a maritime force, for which our resources place us on very high grounds; and having formed and cemented together a power which may render reinforcement of her settlements here impossible to France, make the first cannon, which shall be fired in Europe the signal for tearing up any settlement she may have made, and for holding the two continents of America in sequestration for the common purposes of the united British and American nations. This is not a state of things we seek or desire. It is one which this measure, if adopted by France, forces on us, as necessarily as any other cause, by the laws of nature, brings on its necessary effect.—*The Works of Thomas Jefferson* (ed. by P. L. Ford), Vol. IX, pp. 361-366.

## Article I

. . . And whereas in pursuance of the Treaty [of France with Spain] and particularly of the third article the French Republic has an incontestible title to the domain and to the possession of the said Territory—The First Consul of the French Republic desiring to give to

the United States a strong proof of his friendship doth hereby cede to the said United States in the name of the French Republic forever and in full sovereignty the said territory with all its rights and appurtenances as fully and in the same manner as they have been acquired by the French Republic in virtue of the above mentioned Treaty concluded with his Catholic Majesty.

## Art: II

In the cession made by the preceding article are included the adjacent islands belonging to Louisiana all public lots and squares, vacant lands and all public buildings, fortifications, barracks and other edifices which are not private property. The Archives, papers and documents relative to the domain and sovereignty of Louisiana and its dependencies will be left in the possession of the Commissaries of the United States, and copies will be afterwards given in due form to the Magistrates and Municipal officers of such of the said papers and documents as may be necessary to them.

## Art: III

The inhabitants of the ceded territory shall be incorporated in the Union of the United States and admitted as soon as possible according to the principles of the Federal Constitution to the enjoyment of all the rights, advantages and immunities of citizens of the United States; and in the mean time shall be maintained and protected in the free enjoyment of their liberty, property and the Religion which they profess.

## Art: IV

There shall be sent by the Government of France a Commissary to Louisiana to the end that he do every act necessary as well to receive from the Officers of his Catholic Majesty the said country and its dependencies in the name of the French Republic if it has not been already done as to transmit it in the name of the French Republic to the Commissary or agent of the United States. . . .

## Art: VI

The United States promise to execute such treaties and articles as may have been agreed between Spain and the tribes and nations of Indians until by mutual consent of the United States and the said tribes or nations other suitable articles shall have been agreed upon—

## Art: VII

As it is reciprocally advantageous to the commerce of France and the United States to encourage the communication of both nations for a limited time in the country ceded by the present treaty until general arrangements relative to the commerce of both nations may be agreed on; it has been agreed between the contracting parties that the French ships coming directly from France or any of her colonies loaded only with the produce and manufactures of France or her said Colonies; and the ships of Spain coming directly from Spain or any of her colonies loaded only with the produce or manufactures of Spain or her Colonies shall be admitted during the space of twelve years in the Port of New-Orleans and in all other legal ports-of-entry within the ceded territory in the same manner as the ships of the United States coming directly from France or Spain or any of their Colonies without being subject to any other or greater duty on merchandise or other or greater tonnage than that paid by the citizens of the United States.— . . . —*Treaties, Conventions, etc.* (ed. 1910), I, 469-470.

# Topic U 20. The War of 1812 and Its Results

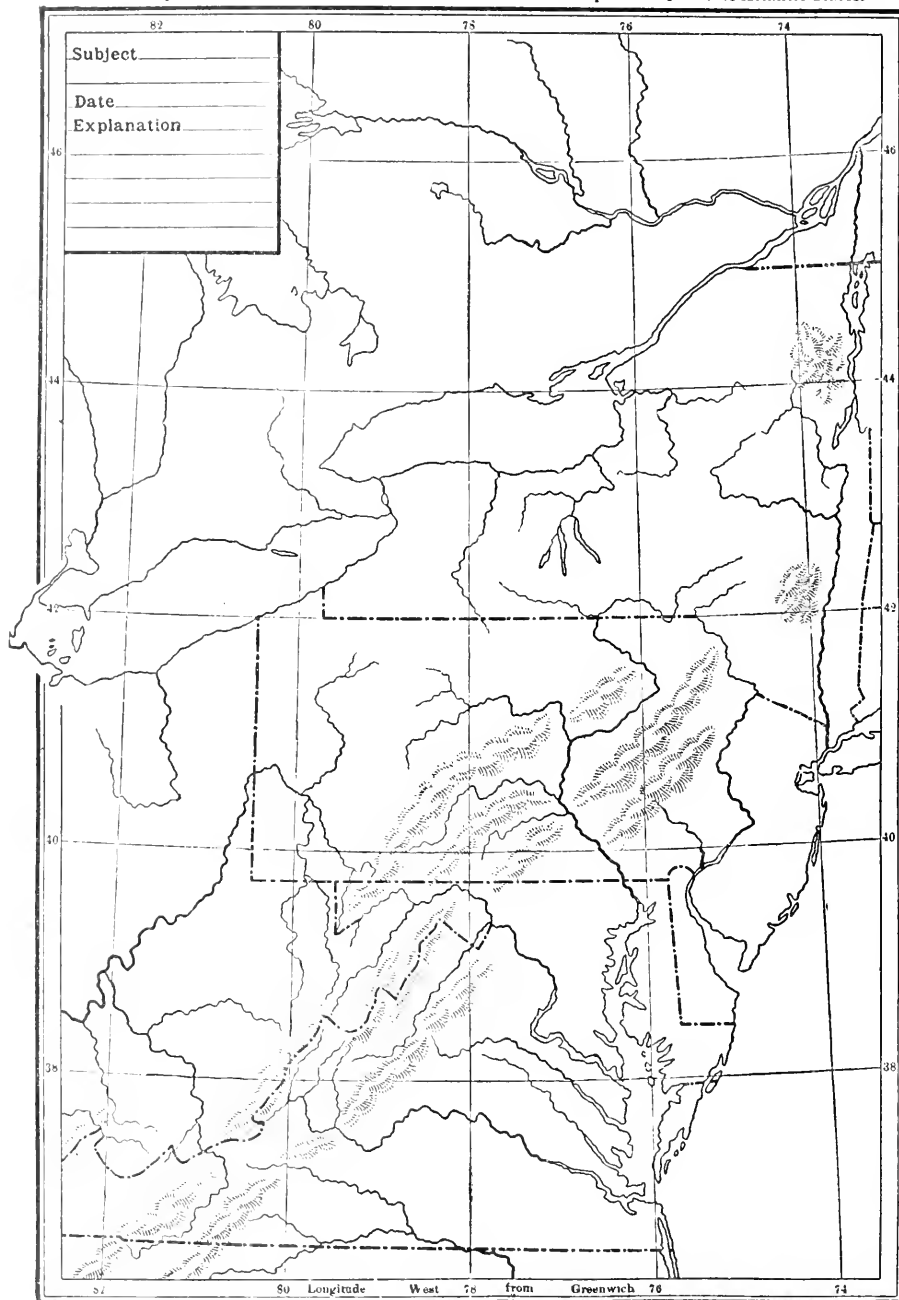
## OUTLINE OF TOPIC

1. Review of Causes.
2. American Unpreparedness for War.
  - a) Finance—income from customs falling off; difficulty in raising direct taxes; national bank not rechartered in 1811.
  - b) Navy—suffered to decline; very few men-of-war.
  - c) Army—small, inexperienced; State militia principal dependence, but uncertain.
  - d) Politics—New England strongly opposed to war.
3. Hasty preparations, 1812. A number of measures passed in spring of 1812 in the hope of getting ready for approaching conflict.
4. Declaration of War, June 18, 1812.
5. Comparison of Great Britain and the United States.
  - a) Location with reference to one another.
  - b) Comparison of armies and navies.
  - c) Vulnerable points.
6. Military and Naval Policy of Combatants.
  - a) Of the United States:
    - 1) Attack Canada from Lake Champlain, Niagara River and Detroit River.
    - 2) Injure English commerce by navy and privateers.
  - b) Of England:
    - 1) Blockade coast.
    - 2) Attack coast towns.
    - 3) Invade from Canada.
    - 4) Attack Southern Mississippi Valley.
7. American Military Failures, 1812.
  - a) At all three points of attack.
    - 1) Hull's surrender at Detroit.
  - b) British conquest of northwest.
8. American Successes.
  - a) Perry's victory of Lake Erie.
  - b) Harrison's campaign, reconquest of northwest, and invasion of Canada.
  - c) Petty successes at Niagara: Capture of York (Toronto).
  - d) Net result: naval control of Lake Erie; military control of Northwest and Upper Canada; failure to conquer Canada.
9. The Year 1814.
  - a) Continuation of petty campaigns along Niagara frontier.
  - b) British invasion defeated at Plattsburgh.
  - c) British burning of Washington and attack on Baltimore.
  - d) Terror in other coast cities.
  - e) Great armament sent against New Orleans.
    - 1) Jackson's early victories over Indians in South, 1812-1814.
    - 2) British use Spanish Florida as base.
    - 3) Attack on New Orleans: Jackson's victory (1815).
10. Naval Warfare.
  - a) Naval duels—Americans usually successful.
  - b) Attack by privateers on English commerce. Inflicted great injury.
11. Internal conditions.
  - a) Controversies over use of the militia.
  - b) Jealousies among army officers.
  - c) Inefficiency of cabinet officers.
  - d) Madison himself not a great administrator.
  - e) New England dissatisfied; Hartford Convention, 1814.

- f) Economic conditions.
  - 1) Means of transportation.
  - 2) Home manufactures.
  - 3) State banks and currency.
12. Treaty of Ghent, 1814.
  - a) Negotiations for.
  - b) Terms of treaty.
  - c) What subjects ignored.
  - d) Why was treaty accepted?
13. Results of the War.
  - a) International—gained respect for the United States, and for rights of neutrals.
  - b) National:
    - 1) Downfall of Federalists.
    - 2) Demand for.
      - (a) Protective tariff.
      - (b) New national bank.
      - (c) Internal improvements.
    - 3) Widened activity of national government by adoption of a) and b) above; c) not adopted owing to constitutional objections.
    - 4) The Democratic-Republican party forced by conditions of time to adopt many of old Federalist measures.
    - 5) Hence the "era of good feeling"; few differences of opinion among statesmen.

## REFERENCES

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 227-241; Ashley, 269-279; Channing, 333-348; Hart, 277-288; James & Sanford, 259-272; Johnston-MacDonald, 223-250; McLaughlin, 280-295; McMaster, 233-240; Montgomery, 199-210; Muzzey, 218-230.
- For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, *Economic History*, p. 142-152; Coman, *Industrial History*, p. 177-199 (results); Dewey, *Financial History*, p. 128-142; Elson, U. S., p. 114-150; Hart, *Formation*, p. 203-222; Taussig, *Tariff History*, p. 1-67; Walker, *Making of the Nation*, ch. 12-13.
- For Topical Study.—In General: *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, ch. 10; Johnston, *American Political History*, I, p. 303-323.
1. See references under Topic No. 18.
  2. Wilson, *American People*, III, p. 214-218. See references under Topic No. 18.
  3. Adams, U. S., VI, ch. 7-10; Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, ch. 4-5; Hildreth, U. S., VI, p. 302-312; Von Holst, U. S., I, p. 226-236.
  4. Adams, U. S., VI, ch. 11; Babcock, ch. 5.
  5. Adams, U. S., VI, ch. 14-16; Babcock, ch. 6; Hildreth, U. S., VI, p. 335-363; McMaster, U. S., III, p. 556-560, IV, p. 1-33; Schouler, U. S., II, p. 397-402; Wilson, III, p. 218-220.
  6. Adams, U. S., VII, ch. 4-10; Babcock, ch. 6; Hildreth, U. S., VI, p. 392-397; 409-437; McMaster, U. S., IV, p. 31-69; Schouler, U. S., II, p. 423-433.
  7. Adams, U. S., VIII, ch. 2-6, 12-11; Babcock, ch. 6, 8; Hildreth, U. S., VI, p. 434-433, ch. 28-29; McMaster, U. S., IV, 121-190; Schouler, U. S., II, p. 446-458; Wilson, III, 220-225.
  8. Adams, U. S., VI, ch. 17, VII, ch. 11-13, VIII, ch. 7; Babcock, ch. 12; Hildreth, U. S., VI, p. 364-400, 420-423; McMaster, U. S., IV, ch. 25; Schouler, U. S., II, p. 402-406, 434-438.
  9. Adams, U. S., VI, ch. 18-20, VIII, ch. 9-11, IX, ch. 4-5; Babcock, ch. 6-9, 13; Hildreth, U. S., VI, p. 379-391; McMaster, U. S., III, p. 543-556, IV, ch. 30; Schouler, U. S., II, p. 438-442, 458-477; Von Holst, U. S., I, 237-272.
  10. Adams, U. S., IX, ch. 1-3; Babcock, ch. 10; Hildreth, U. S., VI, p. 563-574; McMaster, U. S., IV, p. 256-279; Schouler, U. S., II, p. 442-444, 477-483; Wilson, III, p. 225-227.
  11. Adams, U. S., IX, ch. 5-8; Babcock, ch. 11-11; Hildreth, U. S., VI, ch. 30; McMaster, U. S., IV, ch. 31; Schouler, U. S., p. 492-513; Wilson, III, p. 227-231.
- Source References.—*American History Leaflets*, No. 35; Caldwell and Persinger, *Source History*, p. 327-339; Hart, *Source-Book*, p. 212-235; Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. 19; Johnston, *American Orations*, I, 205-218; MacDonald, *Source-Book*, p. 288-306; MacDonald, *Select Documents*, p. 183-212.



Copyright, 1902, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 20.

Show on the map the principal campaigns of the war, marking sites of important battles. For maps consult the following *text books and atlases*: Adams and Trent, 229, 236, 237; Ashley, 271, 272; Hart, 282; James and Sanford, 262; Johnston-Macdonald, 227, 240, 243, 245; McLaughlin, 282-3, 286, 288-9; McMaster, 234; Montgomery, *Leading Facts*, 203; Montgomery, *Student's*, 296; Muzzey, 220; Scudder, 244, 247, 248; Shepherd, *Historical Atlas*, 200; Thomas, 220.



## Source-Study for Topic U 20.

## THE CAPTURE OF WASHINGTON, AUGUST 24, 1814.

The three extracts which follow are drawn from very distinct sources and well illustrate the character of material which historians must judge and use in the construction of their narratives. The first is taken from Niles' *Weekly Register*, of Baltimore, probably the most carefully edited paper of its day; its account is sober and relatively accurate. The second extract is from the letters of Mrs. Madison, and shows vividly the emotions of the president's wife, left without protection in the White House. The third account is that of a participant untrained to observe carefully the events taking place about him.

... At two o'clock [in the afternoon of August 24, 1814] the enemy had nearly reached the Baltimore volunteers, and opened a heavy fire upon them from the right and left, as well as in front—the rear was only left open to them, and, being unsupported, they were ordered to disperse, and shift every one for himself—this was about twenty minutes past two. They carried off all their artillery (except one piece that was lost by the unruliness of the horses) and their arms; but the rout of the militia stationed immediately in their rear was disgraceful. They generally fled without firing a gun, and threw off every incumbrance of their speed!—Col. *Ragan* done all that a man could do to rally them, in vain, and was thus taken prisoner. It was now that the enemy came within reach of *Barney* and his gallant spirits, who had just gained the ground from a station near the navy yard, and from his three 18 pounders he opened the hottest, most active and destructive fire that, perhaps, ever was seen—they fell before him like the grass before the mower's scythe, until they had nearly reached the muzzles of his guns. Greater exertion or more determined courage could not have been exhibited; but what could 3 or 400 men, supported by a few marines only, do against 6000? The veteran commodore, who has yet all the fire and spirit that distinguished him when he captured the *General Monk* in the early part of the revolutionary war, fell badly wounded, and many of his brave fellows were killed—but he yet encouraged his men, and cautioned them not to waste their powder, until the last moment that it appeared possible for them to escape, when he ordered a retreat. . . . The fight being now done—the U. S. infantry and cavalry and other troops not having engaged, a strange rout and absolute confusion ensued. There seemed to be no rallying point given to the men, and they generally fled as many ways as there were individuals of them. A small party of the enemy, with admiral *Cockburn* and gen. *Ross*, entered the city. The male population was chiefly in arms among the fugitives, and many of the women and children had left it.—The navy yard, with all its shipping and stores, including the new frigate and sloop of war, was fired, blown up or destroyed by our own people. The capital and president's house, with all the public offices, except the post office (which they thought a private building) with several private buildings were fired by the enemy. . . . They otherwise behaved much better than was expected. They did not enter *Georgetown*, and retired in the night of the 25th so quietly that even at *Bladensburg* our people, whom they had made prisoners, knew not that their guards had gone. . . .—From Niles' *Weekly Register*, Vol. 6, pp. 442-444.

Tuesday, August 23, 1814.

Dear Sister, . . . [Mr. Madison writes that] I should be ready at a moment's warning to enter my carriage, and leave the city; that the enemy seemed stronger than had at first been reported, and it might happen that they would reach the city with the intention of destroying it. I am accordingly ready; I have pressed as many cabinet

papers into trunks as to fill one carriage; our private property must be sacrificed, as it is impossible to procure wagons for its transportation. I am determined not to go myself until I see Mr. Madison safe. . . .

*Wednesday Morning*, twelve o'clock.—Since sunrise I have been turning my spy-glass in every direction, and watching with unwearying anxiety, hoping to discover the approach of my dear husband and his friends; but alas! I can desery only groups of military, wandering in all directions, as if there was a lack of arms, or of spirit to fight for their own fireside.

Three o'clock.—Will you believe it, my sister? we have had a battle or skirmish, near *Bladensburg*, and here I am still, within sound of the cannon! Mr. Madison comes not. May God protect us! Two messengers, covered with dust, come to bid me fly; but here I mean to wait for him. . . . At this late hour a wagon has been procured, and I have had it filled with plate and the most valuable portable articles, belonging to the house. Whether it will reach its destination, the 'Bank of Maryland,' or fall into the hands of British soldiery, events must determine. Our kind friend, Mr. Carroll, has come to hasten my departure, and [is] in a very bad humor with me, because I insist on waiting until the large picture of General Washington is secured, and it requires to be unscrewed from the wall. This process was found too tedious for these perilous moments; I have ordered the frame to be broken, and the canvas taken out. . . . And now, dear sister, I must leave this house, or the retreating army will make me a prisoner in it by filling up the road I am directed to take. When I shall again write to you, or where I shall be tomorrow, I cannot tell!

DOLLY.

—From *Memoirs and Letters of Dolly Madison* (Houghton, Mifflin and Co.), pp. 109-111.

Being in possession of a strong position, they [the Americans] were of course less exposed in defending, than the others in storming it; and had they conducted themselves with coolness, and resolution, it is not conceivable how the day could have been won. But the fact is, that, with the exception of a party of sailors from the gun boats, under the command of Commodore *Barney*, no troops could behave worse than they did. The skirmishers were driven in as soon as attacked, the first line gave way without offering the slightest resistance, and the left of the main body was broken within half an hour after it was seriously engaged. . . . The defeat, however, was absolute, and the army, which had been collected for the defence of Washington, was scattered beyond the possibility of, at least, an immediate reunion. . . . the troops advanced forthwith into the town, and having first put to the sword all who were found in the house from which the shots were fired, and reduced it to ashes, they proceeded, without a moment's delay, to burn and destroy every thing in the most distant degree connected with government. In this general devastation were included the Senate-house, the President's palace, an extensive dock-yard and arsenal, barracks for two or three thousand men, several large storerooms filled with naval and military stores, some hundreds of cannon of different descriptions, and nearly twenty thousand stand of small arms. There were also two or three public ropewalks which shared the same fate, a fine frigate pierced for sixty guns, and just ready to be launched, several gun-brigs and armed schooners, with a variety of gun-boats and small craft. . . .—From *A Narrative of the Campaigns of the British Army*. . . by an Officer Who Served in the Expedition, Phila., 1821, pp. 125-137.



# Topic U 21. Political Reorganization, 1817-1829.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC

1. Monroe's election.
  - a) Monroe's character.
2. Era of Good Feeling.
  - a) Meaning of term.
  - b) Monroe's tour.
3. Republican party adopts national policy.
4. Influence of Supreme Court in nationalizing the government.
  - a) Work of John Marshall.
  - b) Great decisions.
5. Foreign Affairs. For details see Topic 22.
  - a) Settlement of National Boundaries.
    - 1) Treaty of 1818 with England.
    - 2) Treaty of 1819 with Spain.
    - 3) Treaty of 1824 with Russia.
  - b) The Monroe Doctrine; for details see Topic 22.
    - 1) American antecedents.
    - 2) European antecedents.
    - 3) Influence of England.
    - 4) Authorship of doctrine.
    - 5) Later applications.
  - c) The Panama Congress, see Topic 22.
6. The Missouri Compromises, see Topic 23.
  - a) History of slavery to 1818.
  - b) Growth of the West to 1818.
  - c) Slave and free states equal.
  - d) Demand of Missouri for admission claimed as a right. Why?
  - e) Struggle in Congress.
    - 1) House—anti-slavery.
    - 2) Senate—pro-slavery.
    - 3) Thomas compromise.
      - a) Slavery in Missouri.
      - b) No slavery in rest of Louisiana north of 36 degrees 30 minutes.
    - 4) Admission of Maine.
  - f) Objections to Missouri Constitution; Clay's compromise.
  - g) Seriousness of crisis.
  - h) Was compromise final?
7. Election of 1824-25.
  - a) Absence of party lines.
  - b) Candidates.
  - c) Election of Adams in House. Influence of Clay.
  - d) Charge of corrupt bargain.
8. Internal improvements.
  - a) Demand for, after 1815.
  - b) Monroe's vetoes of bills for.
  - c) State activities in building roads, bridges, canals.
  - d) The Erie Canal.
    - 1) De Witt Clinton.
    - 2) Immediate success of canal.
    - 3) Effects upon West, upon New York City, upon other coast cities.
9. Administration of J. Q. Adams.
  - a) Compare J. Q. Adams' character and his administration with his father's character and administration.
  - b) Revival of patriotic interest seen in:
    - 1) Lafayette's visit.
    - 2) Effects of deaths of J. Adams and Jefferson, July 1, 1826.
  - c) Failure of Panama Mission.
  - d) Georgia and the Indians.
    - e) The Tariff of Abominations.
    - f) Opposition to Adams.
10. Election of 1828.
  - a) Candidates.
  - b) A democratic movement.
  - c) Election of Jackson.
11. Political and Social Changes.
  - a) Spread of democratic thought and practice from West to East.
  - b) Growth of a city population and manufacturing industries.
  - c) Removal of restrictions on suffrage.
  - d) Extension of elective principle to new offices.
  - e) Attempts to control judiciary.
  - f) Breakdown of old party machinery; beginning (1830) of national platforms, and national conventions.
  - g) Overthrow of presidential traditions: Virginia dynasty; succession of secretary of state to presidency.
  - h) More democratic structure of society; democratic dress of men.
  - i) Anti-Masonic movement.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 245-262; Ashley, 279-298; Channing, 348-374; Hart, 303-315; James & Sanford, 273-296; Johnston-MacDonald, 254-270; McLaughlin, 296-321; McMaster, 255-278, 294-301; Montgomery, 211-222; Muzzey, 229-275.

For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, *The Middle Period*, ch. 1-8; Conant, *Industrial History*, 200-206; Dewey, *Financial History*, 143-196; Elson, U. S., 451-480; Hart, *Formation of Union*, 222-262; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 18-20; Sparks, *Men Who Made the Nation*, ch. 8; Stanwood, *History of Presidency*, ch. 9, 10, 11; Taussig, *Tariff History*, 68-108.

For Topical Study.—

1. Hildreth, U. S., VI, 620-623; McMaster, U. S., IV, 363-371, 376-380; Schouler, U. S., III, 1-8; Wilson, *American People*, III, 232-248.

2. Babcock, *Rise of American Nationality*, ch. 12; McMaster, IV, 380; Schouler, III, 8-13.

3. Babcock, ch. 12-15; Schouler, III, 40-51.

4. Babcock, ch. 18; McMaster, V, 391-416; Schouler, III, 195-197.

5. Babcock, ch. 16-17; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 362-371; Hildreth, VI, 626-660; McMaster, IV, 34-35; V, 18-27, 28-54; Schouler, III, 22-37, 57-99, 121-133, 175-178, 271-293, 358-367; Turner, *Rise of New West*, ch. 12; Wilson, III, 255-266.

6. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 357-361; Hildreth, VI, 660-711; McMaster, II, 15-21; McMaster, IV, ch. 39; Schouler, III, 99-103, 134-173, 178-189; Turner, ch. 10; Von Holst, I, 273-381; Wilson, III, 249-255.

7. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 372-374; McMaster, V, 55-81; Schouler, III, 234-244, 256-270, 304-335; Turner, ch. 15; Wilson, III, 266-278.

8. Hart, *National Ideals*, ch. 16; McMaster, V, 121-151; Schouler, III, 247-255, 295-297, 316-355; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 20; Turner, ch. 13.

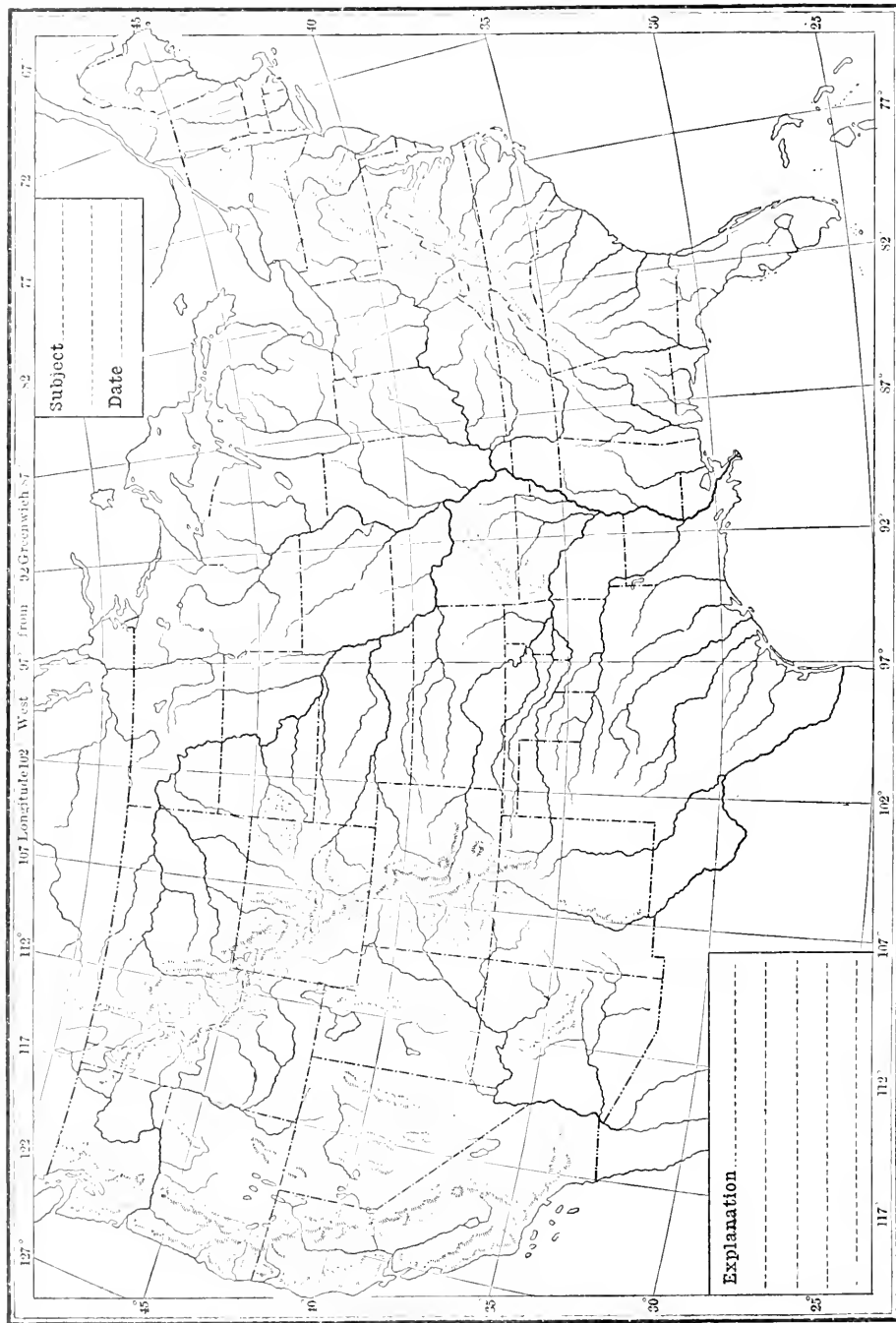
9. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 375-377; McMaster, V, ch. 16; Schouler, III, 336-426; Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, I, ch. 6-8; Turner, ch. 16-19; Von Holst, I, 409-438; Wilson, III, 278-289.

10. McMaster, V, 488-520; Schouler, III, 409-419; Wilson, III, 289-291.

11. McMaster, IV, 522-555; V, 82-120, ch. 50; Schouler, III, 200-232, 507-529; IV, 1-31; Turner, ch. 1-8.

Source References.—Caldwell and Persinger, 331-352; Hart, *Contemporaries*, III, ch. 20-23; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. 19; Johnston, *American Orations*, II, 3-101; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 306-320; MacDonald, *Documents*, 213-237.

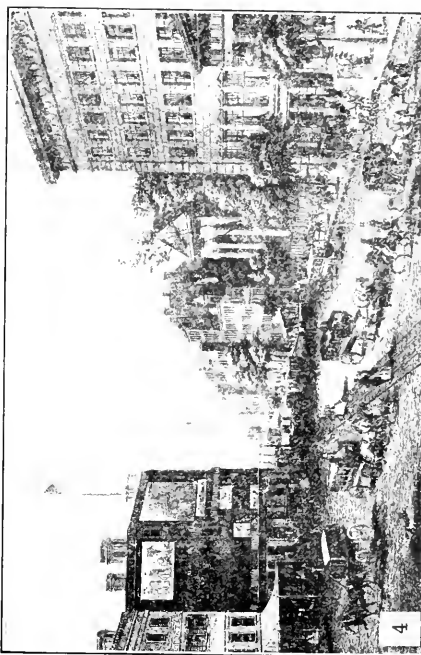
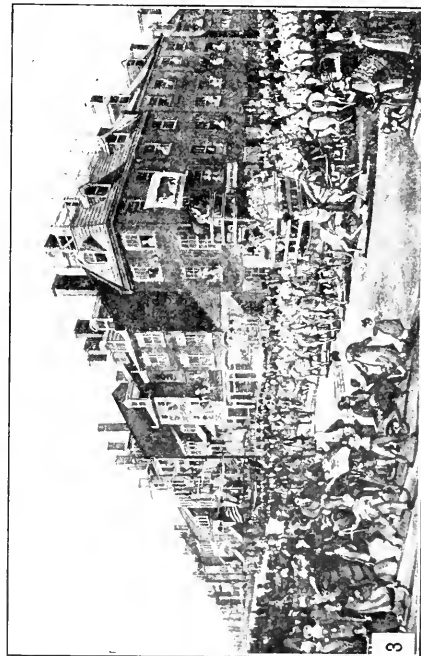
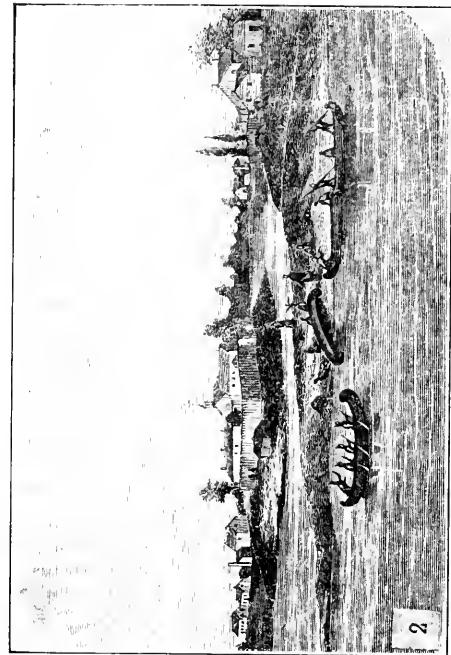
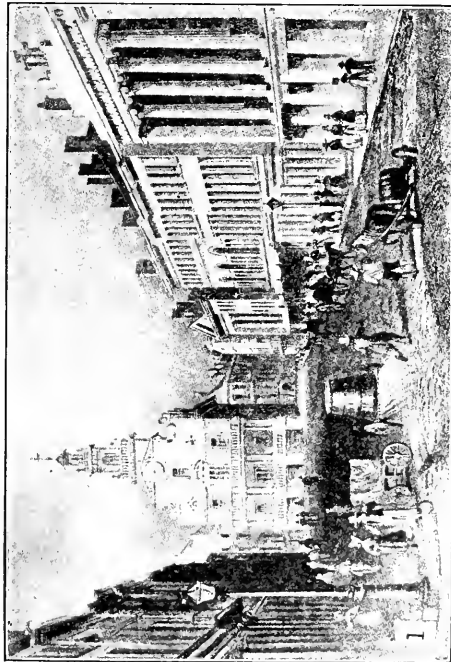
Biography.—Lives of Monroe, Clay, Calhoun, Webster, John Marshall, J. Q. Adams, DeWitt Clinton, Andrew Jackson.



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 21.

Show on the map the States in the Union, in 1821; the territories existing at the time; the area of free-soil and of slave-soil.



# VIEWS OF AMERICAN CITIES EARLY IN THE NINETEENTH CENTURY.

- No. 1. A view of State Street, Boston. From Mary Caroline Crawford's "Old Boston Days and Ways," p. 416, by permission of the author and the publishers, Little, Brown and Co.
- No. 2. Chicago, in 1848. From an early wood cut.
- No. 3. Street parade of the butchers in Philadelphia, in 1821. Note the forms of residence architecture, character of costumes and type of procession. From the original in the Historical Society of Pennsylvania.
- No. 4. A View of Broadway, New York City, about the middle of the nineteenth century. From a contemporary engraving.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

## THE ERIE CANAL.

Up until the beginning of the Panama Canal, probably no more important public work was ever undertaken in America than that brought to completion by the State of New York, in 1825. The credit for building the Erie Canal belongs properly to Governor De Witt Clinton. His sagacity saw the possibilities in the enterprise, and his perseverance and practical knowledge of politics secured the necessary legislation under which the canal was built. The first two selections below well represent the arguments used by Clinton to obtain support for the canal, and they show his clear insight into its future value. The other extracts are from a contemporary newspaper, and give an idea of the quaint ceremonies attendant upon the opening of the canal.

... It must be obvious, from these united considerations, that she [New York] will engross more than sufficient [of western trade] to render her the greatest commercial city in the world. The whole line of canal will exhibit boats loaded with flour, pork, beef, pot and pearl ashes, flax-seed, wheat, barley, corn, hemp, wool, flax, iron, lead, copper, salt, gypsum, coal, tar, fur, peltry, ginseng, beeswax, cheese, butter, lard, staves, lumber, and the other valuable productions of our country; and also, with merchandise from all parts of the world. Great manufacturing establishments will spring up; agriculture will establish its granaries, and commerce its warehouses in all directions. Villages, towns, and cities, will line the banks of the canal, and the shores of the Hudson from Erie to New York, . . .

... However serious the fears which have been entertained of a dismemberment of the Union by collisions between the north and the south, it is to be apprehended that the most imminent danger lies in another direction, and that a line of separation may be eventually drawn between the Atlantic and the western states, unless they are cemented by a common, an ever-acting, and a powerful interest. . . . New York is both Atlantic and western; and the only state in which this union of interests can be formed and perpetuated, and in which this great centripetal power can be energetically applied. Standing on this exalted eminence, with power to prevent a train of the most extensive and afflicting calamities that ever visited the world, (for such a train will inevitably follow a dissolution of the Union,) she will justly be considered an enemy to the human race, if she does not exert for this purpose the high faculties which the Almighty has put into her hands.

Lastly, It may be confidently asserted, that this canal, as to the extent of its route, as to the countries which it connects, and as to the consequences which it will produce, is without a parallel in the history of mankind. . . . It remains for a free state to create a new era in history, and to erect a work more stupendous, more magnificent, and more beneficial than has hitherto been achieved by the human race. . . .—Hosack, *Memoir of De Witt Clinton*, 406-420.

As an organ of communication between the Hudson, the Mississippi, the St. Lawrence, the great lakes of the north and west, and their tributary rivers, it [the Erie Canal] will create the greatest inland trade ever witnessed. The most fertile and extensive regions of America will avail themselves of its facilities for a market. All their surplus productions, whether of the soil, the forest, the mines, or the water, their fabrics of art and their supplies of foreign commodities, will concentrate in the city of New-York, for transportation abroad or consumption at home. Agriculture, manufactures, commerce, trade, navigation, and the arts, will re-

ceive a correspondent encouragement. That city will, in the course of time become the granary of the world, the emporium of commerce, the seat of manufactures, the focus of great moneyed operations, and the concentrating point of vast, disposable, and accumulating capitals, which will stimulate, culiven, extend, and reward the exertions of human labor and ingenuity, in all their processes and exhibitions. And before the revolution of a century the whole island of Manhattan, covered with habitations and replenished with a dense population, will constitute one vast city.—De Witt Clinton, in *View of the Grand Canal* (N. Y., 1825), p. 20; quoted in Turner, *Rise of the New West*, pp. 32-33.

The first gun, to announce the complete opening of the New York Canal, was to be fired at Buffalo, on Wednesday last, at 10 o'clock, precisely, and it is probable that so it was. It was repeated, by heavy cannon stationed along the whole line of the canal and river, at convenient distances, and the gladsome sound reached the city of New York at 20 minutes past 11—when a grand salute was fired at fort Lafayette, and reiterated back again to Buffalo. It passed up the river to Albany, 160 miles, in 18 minutes. The cannon that were used on this memorable occasion, on the line between Buffalo and Rochester, were some of those that *Perry* had before used on Lake Erie, on the memorable 11th of September, 1814. . . .

... [A] splendid ceremony took place [at Buffalo] on the 26th ult. when the boat "The Seneca Chief," started on her voyage to the city of New York. Gov. Clinton and lieutenant gov. Tallmadge were present—also the New York delegation and committees from many other places. The Seneca Chief was followed by many other boats, among them one called "Noah's Ark," filled with animals and creeping things—among them a bear, two fawns, many birds and fish, and two Indian youths in the dress of their nation. . . .

As was expected, the first boat from lake Erie arrived at New York on the 4th inst. She was conveyed by a fleet of steam boats, gaily dressed and decorated, and received with thunders of artillery, and the acclamations of rejoicing scores of thousands. Accompanying the "Seneca Chief," from Erie, was the "Young Lion of the West" from Rochester, and the "Niagara" from Black Rock. The Rochester boat had on board wolves, deer, racoon, a fox, and two Eagles—to denote the subjection of the wilderness to man. . . . At about 9 o'clock, the fleet from Albany, being joined by many other vessels, splendidly dressed, and some of which were ornamented with a profusion of flowers, started on a voyage to the sea. . . . When the procession reached Sandy Hook, gov. Clinton performed the ceremony of uniting the waters, by pouring a keg of that of lake Erie into the Atlantic; upon which he delivered the following address:

"The solemnity, at this place, on the first arrival of vessels from Lake Erie, is intended to indicate and commemorate the navigable communication, which has been accomplished between our Mediterranean seas and the Atlantic ocean, in about eight years, to the extent of more than four hundred and twenty-five miles, by the wisdom, public spirit and energy of the people of the state of New York, and may the God of the heavens and the earth smile most propitiously on this work, and render it subservient to the best interests of the human race."—*Niles' Register*, Vol. 29, pp. 129, 147, 173-174 (Oct. 29, Nov. 5, 12, 1826).

# Topic U 22. Foreign Affairs, 1817-1826.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Relations with England.
  - a) Questions under discussion:
    - 1) Northeast boundary.
    - 2) Northern boundary of Louisiana.
    - 3) Oregon question.
    - 4) Trade with West Indies.
  - b) Provisions of Treaty of 1818.
    - 1) Commission to decide Northeast boundary.
    - 2) Line of 49° from Lake of Woods to Rockies.
    - 3) Joint occupation of Oregon for ten years and thereafter until notice given.
    - 4) Slight privileges in West Indian trade.
2. Relations with Spain.
  - a) Controversies over southeastern and southwestern boundaries of Louisiana (West Florida and Texas).
    - 1) West Florida actually occupied by the United States after 1810.
  - b) Troubles along Florida boundary.
    - 1) English use of Florida in War of 1812.
    - 2) Florida a refuge for runaway slaves and marauding Indians.
    - 3) Seminole War, 1818: Jackson's destruction of negro fort; Englishmen executed; advances into Spanish territory.
    - 4) Questions arising out of Jackson's action.
  - c) Claims for damages to property of American citizens and for runaway slaves.
  - d) Popular demand for American occupation of Florida.
  - e) Treaty of 1819.
    - 1) Florida ceded to the United States.
    - 2) United States to pay not more than \$5,000,000 to American claimants vs. Spain.
    - 3) Western boundary settled, giving Texas to Spain.
    - 4) Long delay in ratifying the treaty.
  - f) Jackson first governor of Florida territory.
3. The Monroe Doctrine.
  - a) American conditions:
    - 1) Rebellion and independence of Spanish-American colonies.
    - 2) United States recognized their independence, 1822.
    - 3) Advance of Russia in Northwest; order of 1821 closing north Pacific to all but Russians.
  - b) European conditions:
    - 1) Holy Alliance—Russia, Prussia, Austria—later France.
    - 2) Popular revolutions suppressed by Allies in Spain, Portugal, and Naples.
    - 3) Proposal to restore colonies to Spain; or to establish monarchies therein.
  - c) Authorship of Doctrine.
    - 1) Early expressions by Hamilton, Jefferson, Washington.
    - 2) Clay's speeches in Congress, 1818-1820.
    - 3) J. Q. Adams' diplomatic correspondence.
    - 4) Proposals of British minister Canning.
    - 5) J. Q. Adams in Cabinet meetings, November, 1823.
    - 6) Monroe's message, December 2, 1823.

- d) Provisions of doctrine:
  - 1) United States not to interfere in politics of Europe.
  - 2) No interference with independence of new American republics.
  - 3) No new European colonies in America.
  - 4) No establishment of monarchical system in America.
- e) Results of message:
  - 1) Action of England and United States prevented the Allies from interfering in America.
  - 2) Treaty of 1824 with Russia: Withdrew north of 54° 40' north latitude.
- f) Later applications of doctrine.
  - 1) 1845—Texas and Oregon.
  - 2) 1851-52-54—Cuba.
  - 3) 1861-66—French in Mexico.
  - 4) 1895—English in Venezuela and Nicaragua.
4. Panama Congress, 1825-26.
  - a) Purpose of meeting.
  - b) Failure of the United States to participate.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 247-250; Ashley, 288-292; Channing, 352-359; Hart, 307-309; James & Sanford, 287-289; Johnston-MacDonald, 256, 259; McLaughlin, 307-309; McMaster, 259-265; Montgomery, 240, 247; Muzzey, 236-243.

For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, Middle Period, ch. 2, and pp. 122-128; Elson, U. S., 463-464; Hart, Formation of Union, 241-244; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 19.

For Topical Study.—

1. Babcock, Rise of American Nationality, ch. 16; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 362-371; Hildreth, U. S., VI, ch. 31; McMaster, U. S., IV, 457-474; V, 463-487.
2. Babcock, ch. 17; Hildreth, U. S., VI, ch. 32; McMaster, IV, 430-456, 474-483; Schouler, III, 24-37, 57-99, 175-178.
3. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 362-371; Edgington, Monroe Doctrine; Hart, Foundations of American Foreign Policy, ch. 7; Hildreth, VI, ch. 31; Johnston, American Political History, I, 324-340; McMaster, V, ch. 41; Reddaway, Monroe Doctrine; Schouler, III, 235, 274-293; Tucker, Monroe Doctrine; Turner, Rise of New West, ch. 12.
4. McMaster, V, 433-461; Schouler, III, 358-367.

Source References.—American Historical Leaflets, 4; Caldwell and Persinger, 343-344, 346-349; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 22; Hill, Liberty Documents, ch. 20; MacDonald, Source Book, 306-311, 318-320; MacDonald, Documents, 213-219, 228-231; Old South Leaflets, 56.

Biography.—Lives of Monroe, Jackson, J. Q. Adams, Bolivar.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

The source extracts under this topic have been chosen to show the course of foreign relations at the time. Selections are given from the Florida treaty with Spain, the conventions of 1818 and 1827 with England, concerning the northern boundaries and Oregon, and the convention of 1824, with Russia, concerning the same territory. Other extracts show the early expressions of foreign policy by Washington and Jefferson, preparatory to the definitive statement by Monroe.

### SPANISH TREATY, FEBRUARY 22, 1819.

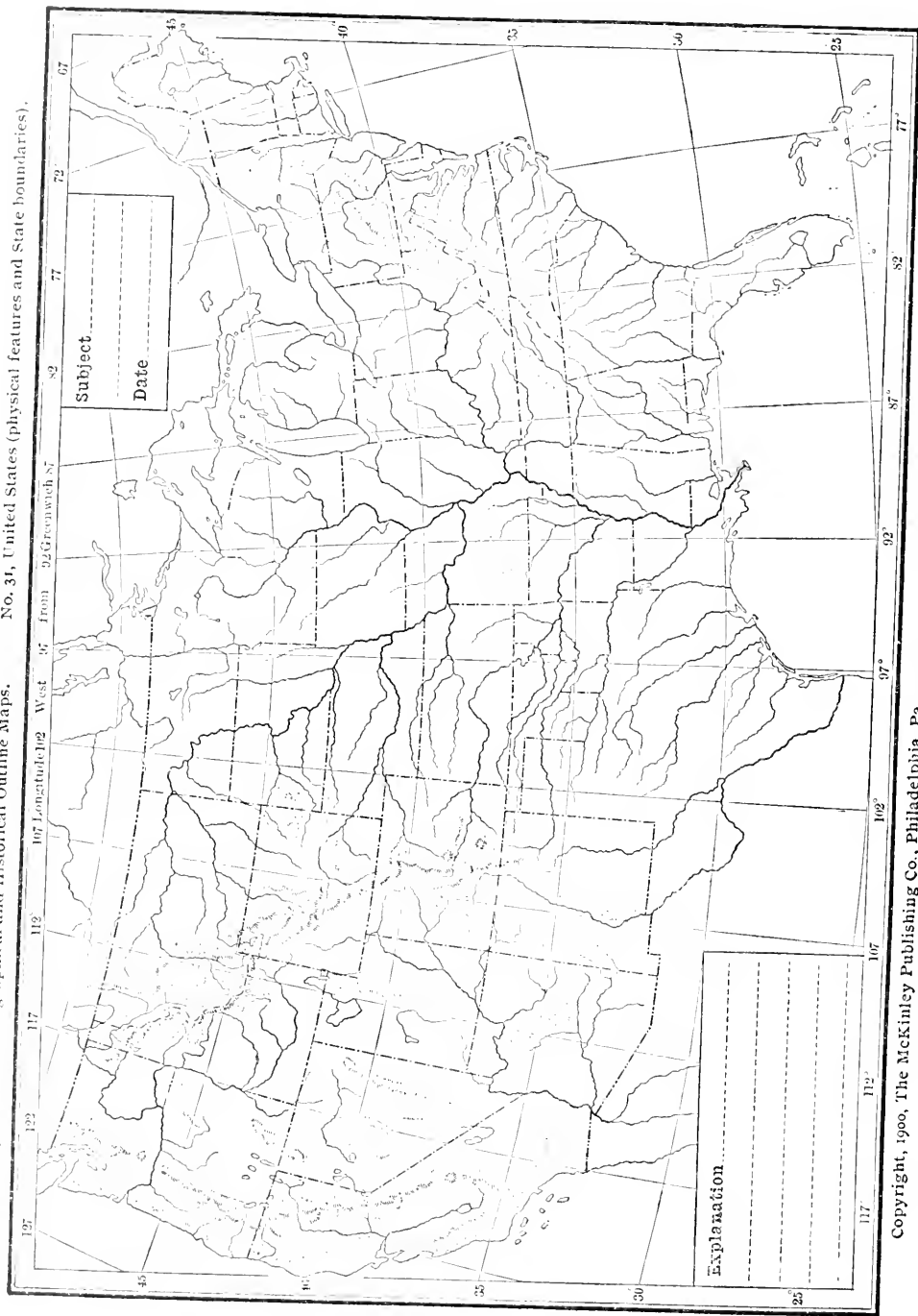
#### ARTICLE I.

There shall be a firm and inviolable peace and sincere friendship between the United States and their citizens and His Catholic Majesty, his successors and subjects, without exception of persons or places.

#### ARTICLE II.

His Catholic Majesty cedes to the United States, in full property and sovereignty, all the territories which belong to him, situated to the eastward of the Mississippi, known by the name of East and West Florida. . . .

(Continued on Page 3.)



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 22.

Show on the map the disputed boundaries, and the settlements of boundaries provided for in the treaties between 1818 and 1824. Locate the boundary lines from the text of the treaties given on the adjoining pages.

**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.****ARTICLE III.**

The boundary line between the two countries, west of the Mississippi, shall begin on the Gulf of Mexico, at the mouth of the river Sabine, in the sea, continuing north, along the western bank of that river, to the 32d degree of latitude; thence, by a line due north, to the degree of latitude where it strikes the Rio Roxo of Natchitoches, or Red River; then following the course of the Rio Roxo westward, to the degree of longitude 100 west from London and 23 from Washington; then, crossing the said Red River, and running thence, by a line due north, to the river Arkansas; thence, following the course of the southern bank of the Arkansas, to its source, in latitude 42 north; and thence, by that parallel of latitude, to the South Sea. The whole being as laid down in Melish's map of the United States, published at Philadelphia, improved to the first of January, 1818. But if the source of the Arkansas River shall be found to fall north or south of latitude 42, then the line shall run from the said source due south or north, as the case may be, till it meets the said parallel of latitude 42, and thence, along the said parallel, to the South Sea. . . .

The two high contracting parties agree to cede and renounce all their rights, claims, and pretensions, to the territories described by the said line, that is to say: The United States hereby cede to His Catholic Majesty, and renounce forever, all their rights, claims, and pretensions, to the territories lying west and south of the above-described line; and, in like manner, His Catholic Majesty cedes to the said United States all his rights, claims, and pretensions to any territories east and north of the said line, and for himself, his heirs, and successors, renounces all claim to the said territories forever. . . .

**ARTICLE V.**

The inhabitants of the ceded territories shall be secured in the free exercise of their religion, without any restriction; and all those who may desire to remove to the Spanish dominions shall be permitted to sell or export their effects, at any time whatever, without being subject, in either case, to duties.

**ARTICLE VI.**

The inhabitants of the territories which His Catholic Majesty cedes to the United States, by this treaty, shall be incorporated in the Union of the United States, as soon as may be consistent with the principles of the Federal Constitution, and admitted to the enjoyment of all the privileges, rights, and immunities of the citizens of the United States.

**ARTICLE IX.**

The two high contracting parties, animated with the most earnest desire of conciliation, and with the object of putting an end to all the differences which have existed between them, and of confirming the good understanding which they wish to be forever maintained between them, reciprocally renounce all claims for damages or injuries which they, themselves, as well as their respective citizens and subjects, may have suffered until the time of signing this treaty. . . .

**ARTICLE XI.**

The United States, exonerating Spain from all demands in future, on account of the claims of their citizens to which the renunciations herein contained extend, and considering them entirely cancelled, undertake to make satisfaction for the same, to an amount not exceeding five millions of dollars. To ascertain the full amount and validity of those claims, a commission, to consist of three Commissioners, citizens of the United States, shall be appointed by the President, by and with

the advice and consent of the Senate, which commission shall meet at the city of Washington. . . .—*Treaties, Conventions, etc.* (ed. 1910), II, pp. 1631-1638.

**ENGLISH TREATY OF OCTOBER 20, 1818.****ARTICLE II.**

It is agreed that a line drawn from the most northwestern point of the Lake of the Woods, along the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude, or, if the said point shall not be in the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude, then that a line drawn from the said point due north or south as the case may be, until the said line shall intersect the said parallel of north latitude, and from the point of such intersection due west along and with the said parallel shall be the line of demarcation between the territories of the United States, and those of His Britannic Majesty, and that the said line shall form the northern boundary of the said territories of the United States, and the southern boundary of the territories of His Britannic Majesty, from the Lake of the Woods to the Stony Mountains.

**ARTICLE III.**

It is agreed, that any country that may be claimed by either party on the northwest coast of America, westward of the Stony Mountains, shall, together with the harbours, bays, and creeks, and the navigation of all rivers within the same, be free and open, for the term of ten years from the date of the signature of the present convention, to the vessels, citizens, and subjects of the two Powers: it being well understood, that this agreement is not to be construed to the prejudice of any claim, which either of the two high contracting parties may have to any part of the said country, nor shall it be taken to affect the claims of any other Power or State to any part of the said country; the only object of the high contracting parties, in that respect, being to prevent disputes and differences amongst themselves. . . . (*Treaties, Conventions, etc.*, ed. 1910, p. 632.)

**ENGLISH CONVENTION OF AUGUST 6, 1827.****ARTICLE I.**

All the provisions of the third article of the convention [of October 20, 1818] . . . shall be, and they are hereby, further indefinitely extended and continued in force, in the same manner as if all the provisions of the said article were herein specifically recited.

**ARTICLE II.**

It shall be competent, however, to either of the contracting parties, in case either should think fit, at any time, after the twentieth of October, 1828, on giving due notice of twelve months to the other contracting party, to annul and abrogate this convention. . . . (*Treaties, Conventions, etc.*, ed. 1910, p. 644.)

**CONVENTION WITH RUSSIA, APRIL 17, 1824.****ARTICLE I.**

It is agreed that, in any part of the Great Ocean, commonly called the Pacific Ocean, or South Sea, the respective citizens and subjects of the high contracting Powers shall be neither disturbed nor restrained, either in navigation or in fishing, or in the power of resorting to the coasts, upon points which may not already have been occupied, for the purpose of trading with the natives, saving always the restrictions and conditions determined by the following articles.

**ARTICLE II.**

. . . it is agreed that the citizens of the United States shall not resort to any point where there is a Russian es-

tablishment, without the permission of the governor or commander; and that, reciprocally, the subjects of Russia shall not resort, without permission, to any establishment of the United States upon the Northwest coast.

#### ARTICLE III.

It is moreover agreed that, hereafter, there shall not be formed by the citizens of the United States, or under the authority of the said States, any establishment upon the Northwest coast of America, nor in any of the islands adjacent, to the north, of fifty-four degrees and forty minutes of north latitude; and that, in the same manner, there shall be none formed by Russian subjects, or under the authority of Russia, south of the same parallel. . . . —*Treaties, Conventions, etc.*, ed. 1910, p. 1513.

#### ANTECEDENTS OF MONROE DOCTRINE.

The great rule of conduct for us, in regard to foreign Nations, is, in extending our commercial relations, to have with them as little *Political* connexion as possible.—So far as we have already formed engagements, let them be fulfilled with perfect good faith.—Here let us stop.—

Europe has a set of primary interests, which to us have none, or a very remote relation.—Hence she must be engaged in frequent controversies, the causes of which are essentially foreign to our concerns.—Hence therefore it must be unwise in us to implicate ourselves, by artificial ties in the ordinary vicissitudes of her politics, or the ordinary combinations and collisions of her friendships, or enmities. . . . —Washington, *Farewell Address*, in Ford, *Writings of Washington*, XIII, 311-318.

I hope he sees, and will promote in his new situation, the advantages of a cordial fraternization among all the American nations, and the importance of their coalescing in an American system of policy, totally independent of and unconnected with that of Europe. The day is not distant when we may formally require a meridian of partition through the ocean which separates the two hemispheres, on the lither side of which no European gun shall ever be heard, nor an American on the other, and when, during the rage of the eternal wars of Europe, the lion and the lamb, within our regions, shall be drawn together in peace. . . . The principles of society there and here, then, are radically different, and I hope no American patriot will ever lose sight of the essential policy of interdicting in the seas and territories of both Americas, the ferocious and sanguinary contests of Europe. I wish to see this coalition begin.—Jefferson in letter to William Short, August 4, 1820 (quoted in Moore, *Digest of International Law*, VI, 371).

#### MONROE DOCTRINE.

At the proposal of the Russian imperial government, made through the minister of the Emperor residing here, a full power and instructions have been transmitted to the Minister of the United States at St. Petersburg, to arrange, by amicable negotiation, the respective rights and interests of the two nations on the northwest coast of this continent. . . . In the discussions to which this interest has given rise, and in the arrangements by which they may terminate, the occasion has been judged proper for asserting, as a principle in which the rights and interests of the United States are involved, that the American continents, by the free and independent condition which they have assumed and maintain, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers. . . .

Of events in that quarter of the globe [Europe] with which we have so much intercourse, and from which we

derive our origin, we have always been anxious and interested spectators. The citizens of the United States cherish sentiments the most friendly, in favor of the liberty and happiness of their fellow men on that side of the Atlantic. In the wars of the European powers, in matters relating to themselves, we have never taken any part, nor does it comport with our policy so to do. It is only when our rights are invaded, or seriously menaced, that we resent injuries, or make preparation for our defence. With the movements in this hemisphere, we are, of necessity, more immediately connected, and by causes which must be obvious to all enlightened and impartial observers. The political system of the allied powers is essentially different, in this respect, from that of America. This difference proceeds from that which exists in their respective governments. And to the defence of our own, which has been achieved by the loss of so much blood and treasure, and matured by the wisdom of their most enlightened citizens, and under which we have enjoyed unexampled felicity, this whole nation is devoted. We owe it, therefore, to candor, and to the amicable relations existing between the United States and those powers, to declare, that we should consider any attempt on their part to extend their system to any portion of this hemisphere, as dangerous to our peace and safety. With the existing colonies, or dependencies of any European power, we have not interfered, and shall not interfere. But with the governments who have declared their independence, and maintained it, and whose independence we have, on great consideration, and on just principles, acknowledged, we could not view any interposition for the purpose of oppressing them, or controlling, in any other manner, their destiny, by any European power, in any other light than as the manifestation of an unfriendly disposition towards the United States. In the war between those new governments and Spain, we declared our neutrality at the time of their recognition, and to this we have adhered, and shall continue to adhere, provided no change shall occur, which, in the judgment of the competent authorities of this government, shall make a corresponding change, on the part of the United States, indispensable to their security.

The late events in Spain and Portugal, shew that Europe is still unsettled. Of this important fact, no stronger proof can be adduced than that the allied powers should have thought it proper, on any principle satisfactory to themselves, to have interposed, by force, in the internal concerns of Spain. To what extent such interposition may be carried, on the same principle, is a question, to which all independent powers, whose governments differ from theirs, are interested; even those most remote, and surely none more so than the United States. Our policy, in regard to Europe, which was adopted at an early stage of the wars which have so long agitated that quarter of the globe, nevertheless remains the same, which is, not to interfere in the internal concerns of any of its powers; to consider the government *de facto* as the legitimate government for us; to cultivate friendly relations with it, and to preserve those relations by a frank, firm, and manly policy; meeting, in all instances, the just claims of every power; submitting to injuries from none. But, in regard to these continents, circumstances are eminently and conspicuously different. It is impossible that the allied powers should extend their political system to any portion of either continent, without endangering our peace and happiness; nor can any one believe that our Southern Brethren, if left to themselves, would adopt it of their own accord. . . . —Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, II, pp. 209, 218-219.



# Topic U 23. Missouri Compromise and the West, 1812-1821.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. The Slavery question in national politics is an outgrowth of the development of the West. From 1818 to 1862 the controversy was not mainly over slavery in the older states, but over the question. Should it be admitted into new western territories and states?
  - a) In colonies.
  - b) Attitude of revolutionary fathers.
  - c) Slavery in the Constitution:
    - Three-fifths clause; foreign slave trade; return of fugitive slaves.
  - d) Early abolition societies.
  - e) Emancipation in northern states. Immediate in New England; gradual elsewhere.
2. Review of history of slavery.
  - a) In colonies.
  - b) Attitude of revolutionary fathers.
  - c) Slavery in the Constitution:
    - Three-fifths clause; foreign slave trade; return of fugitive slaves.
  - d) Early abolition societies.
  - e) Emancipation in northern states. Immediate in New England; gradual elsewhere.
3. Growth of Cotton Culture.
  - a) In 18th century insignificant.
  - b) Invention of cotton gin, 1793.
  - c) Immediate profits in cotton culture.
  - d) Spread of culture to the uplands of south and southwest.
  - e) Great importance of culture to south; and necessity for slave labor.
  - f) Demand for new lands when fertility of old plantations was exhausted.
4. Attitude of the United States toward Slavery.
  - a) Forbidden in Northwest territory.
  - b) Permitted in Southwest territory.
  - c) Foreign slave trade prohibited from January 1, 1808.
  - d) Admission of new states: In 1819 equal number of free and slave states; equality continued until 1850.
5. American Colonization Society, 1817. Purpose to colonize free negroes in Africa; came under influence of slave-holders who wished to be rid of free negroes.
6. Growth of West, 1812-1819.
  - a) Rapid flux of population to west after war of 1812; influenced by hard times, and by introduction of steamboats on western waters.
  - b) Admission of Indiana, 1816; Mississippi, 1818; Alabama, 1819; and Illinois, 1818.
  - c) Rapid growth of Missouri territory.
7. Demand for admission of Missouri.
  - a) Claimed as a right under treaty of 1803.
  - b) Petitions to Congress, 1818.
8. Congressional History of Compromise. (An excellent opportunity to study the actual workings of congress and its committees).
  - a) Session of 1818-1819. House passed Missouri bill with Tallmadge amendment prohibiting slavery; Senate refused to accept.
  - b) Session of 1819-1820.
    - House passed bill for admission of Maine; Senate passed one bill for admitting Maine as a free state and Missouri with slavery, but prohibiting slavery in rest of Louisiana tract north of 36° 30' (Thomas amendment). House passed bill for admission of Missouri without slavery.
    - Conference committee reported Maine and Missouri bills separately, latter with Thomas amendment.
    - Conference report adopted by two houses and passed.
  - c) Session of 1820-1821.
    - Objection to clauses concerning free negroes in Missouri constitution. Clay brings about a compromise.
9. Provisions of Missouri Compromise.
  - a) Maine as free; Missouri as slave state.
  - b) No slavery in Louisiana north of 36° 30'.
  - c) Free negroes not to be forbidden to come into Missouri.
10. Character of the debate.
  - a) Violent speeches in Congress.
  - b) Excitement throughout country.
  - c) Jefferson's fears.
11. Was Compromise final?
  - a) What it settled.
  - b) What it left unsettled.
  - c) Did north or south gain most?

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 250-253; Ashley, 281-288; Channing, 351, 360-363; Hart, 289-301; James and Sanford, 273-284; Johnston-MacDonald, 256-258; McLaughlin, 296-307; McMaster, 266-277; Montgomery, 211-216; Muzzey, 245-259, 303-314.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, Industrial History, 115-128, 170-185; Burgess, Middle Period, ch. 3-4; Elson, U. S., 156-162; Hart, Formation of Union, 233-241; Sparks, U. S., I, ch. 18.

For Topical Study.—

1. Schouler, U. S., III, 96-101; Turner, Rise of New West, ch. 1.

2. Johnston, American Political History, II, 1-41; McMaster, U. S., II, 15-21, III, 514-528; Rhodes, U. S., I, 4-38; Turner, ch. 4; Von Holst, U. S., I, 273-324.

3. McMaster, II, 162-165.

4. Du Bois, Suppression of Slave Trade; Schouler, III, 136-138; Von Holst, I, 333-339.

5. McMaster, IV, 556-569; Schouler, III, 138-144; Von Holst, I, 325-339.

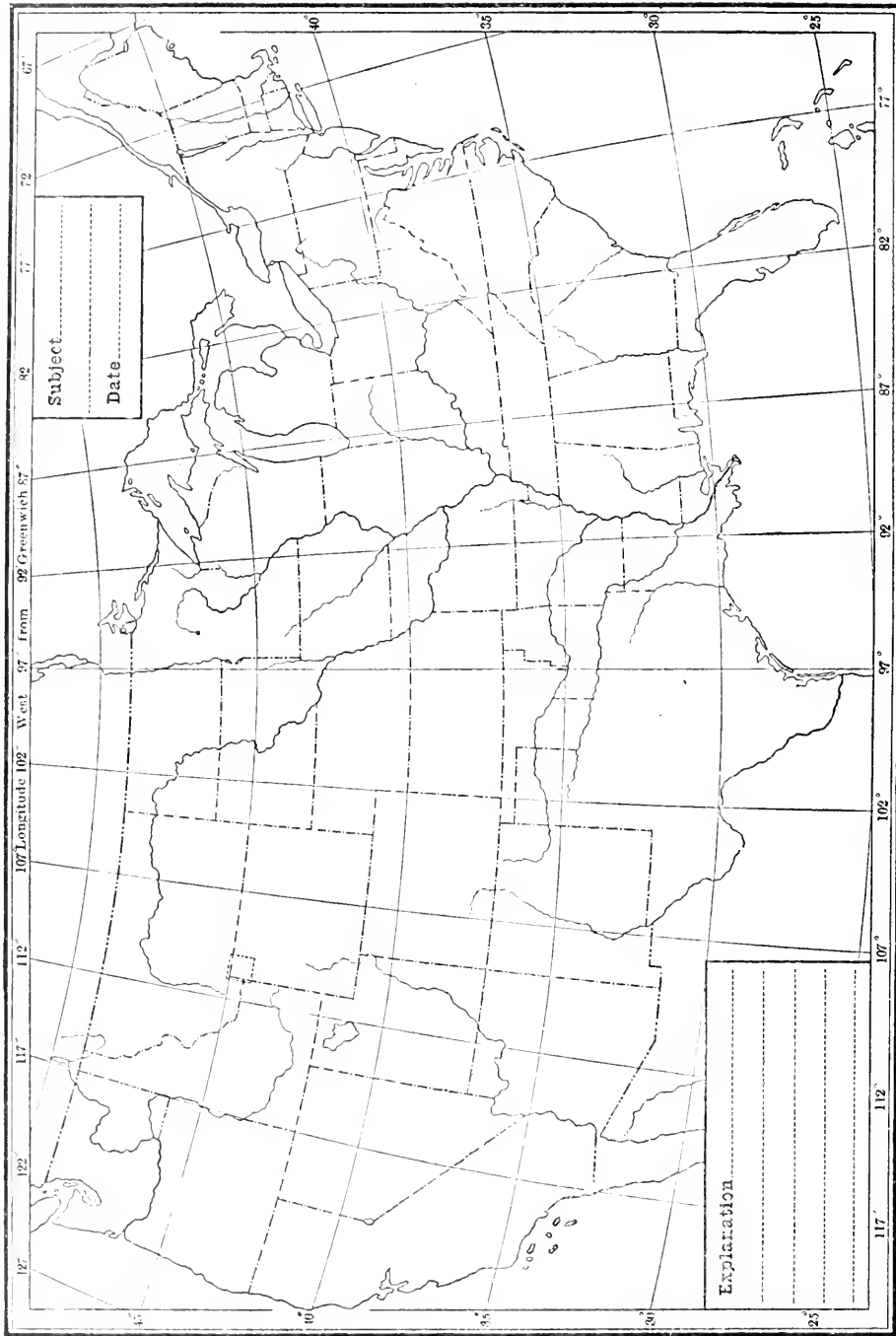
6. Babcock, Rise of American Nationality, ch. 15; Hinsdale, Old Northwest, ch. 16-19; McMaster, III, 541-542, IV, 381-429; Sparks, Expansion of American People, ch. 17-25; Turner, ch. 5-8; Von Holst, I, 310-356.

7. McMaster, IV, 570-574; Turner, ch. 10.

8. Babcock, ch. 15; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 357-361; Hildreth, U. S., VI, 661-711; Johnston, II, 110-120; MacDonald, Select Documents, 212-220 (summary of Congressional history); McMaster, IV, 579-600; Schouler, III, 147-173, 178-189; Turner, ch. 10; Von Holst, I, 356-381.

Source References. Callender, Economic History, ch. 12; Caldwell and Persinger, 314-346; Hart, Source Book, 231-241; Hart, Contemporaries, III, 152-158 and ch. 21; Johnston, American Orations, II, 3-101; MacDonald, Source Book, 311-318; MacDonald, Documents, 219-226.

Biography.—Lives of Monroe, Clay.



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 23.

Show the free and slave States; also territory closed and open to slavery after the compromise of 1820. See Adams and Trent, 251; Fiske, 311; Hart, 300; McLaughlin, 305; McMaster, 276; Montgomery, Leading Facts, 214; Montgomery, Student's, 316; Muzzey, 311; Shepherd, 206; Thomas, 257.

# 1 ALL SLAVE-KEEPERS That keep the Innocent in Bondage, APOSTATES

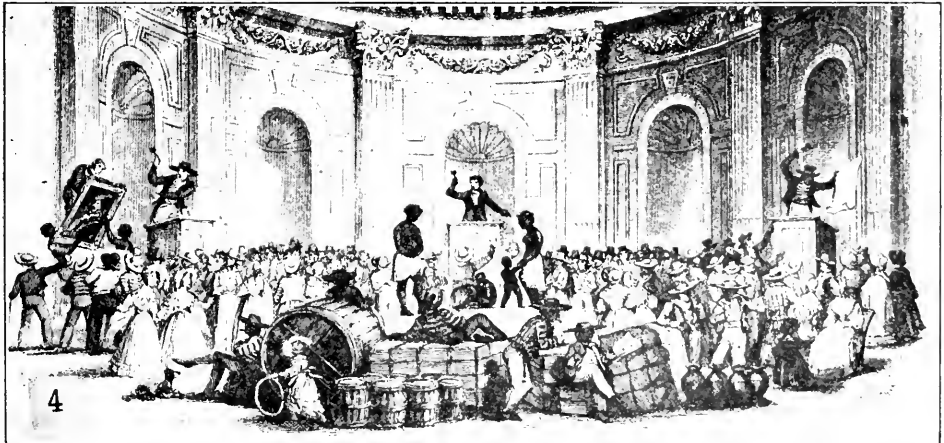
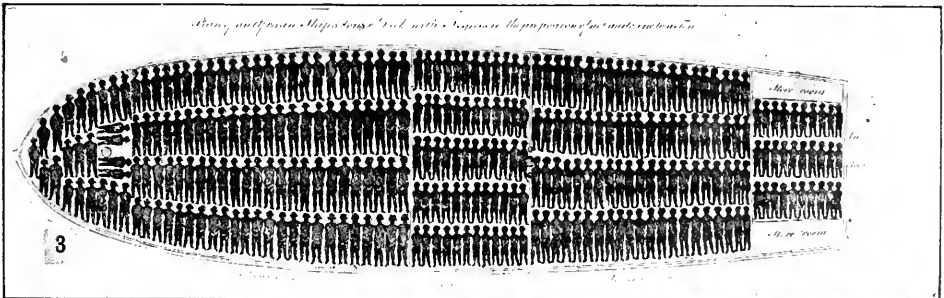
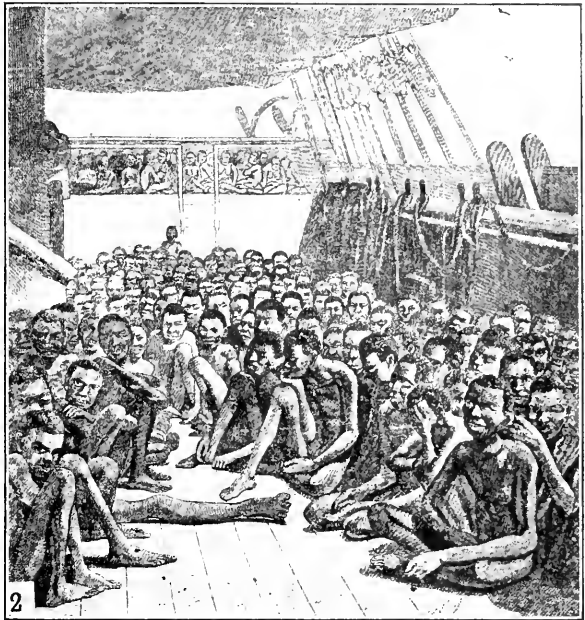
Pretending to lay Claim to the Pure & Holy Christian Religion; of what Congregation soever; but especially in their Ministers, by whose example the filthy Leprosy and Apostasy is spread far and near; it is a notorious Sin, which many of the true Friends of Christ, and his pure Truth, called Quakers, has been for many Years, and still are concern'd to write and bear Testimony against; as a Practice so gross & hurtful to Religion, and destructive to Government, beyond what Words can set forth, or can be declared of by Men or Angels, and yet lived in by Ministers and Magistrates in America.

*The Leaders of the People cause them to Err.*

Written for a General Service, by him that truly and sincerely desires the present and eternal Welfare and Happiness of all Mankind, all the World over, of all Colours, and Nations, as his own Soul;

BENJAMIN LAY.

PHILADELPHIA:  
Printed for the AUTHOR.. 1737.



No. 1. The title page of an early anti-slavery pamphlet.

No. 2. The deck of a captured slaver. This picture is taken from a daguerreotype of slave-vessel captured in 1860

No. 3. The plan of a slave ship's lower deck, with negroes in the proportion of not quite one to a ton. This arrangement of the cargo was permitted by the English Act of 1788. From an old print.

No. 4. View from an English traveler's account of the Southern States, showing slave auction in New Orleans.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

## THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE.

The following extracts give the proposed anti-slavery amendments to the Missouri bill; the Thomas amendment as adopted; portions of the Missouri enabling act; the objectionable features in the Missouri constitution, and the resolution of Congress thereon.

## TALLMADGE'S AMENDMENT, FEBRUARY 13, 1819.

*And provided*, That the further introduction of slavery or involuntary servitude be prohibited, except for the punishment of crimes, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted; and that all children born within the said State, after the admission thereof into the Union, shall be free at the age of twenty-five years.—*Annals of Congress*, 15th Cong., 2d Sess., 1170.

## TAYLOR'S AMENDMENT, JANUARY 26, 1820.

Mr. Taylor, of New York, proposed to amend the bill by incorporating in [the fourth] section the following provision:

Section 4, line 25, insert the following after the word "States": "And shall ordain and establish, that there shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in the said State, otherwise than in the punishment of crimes, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted: *Provided, always*, That any person escaping into the same, from whom labor or service is lawfully claimed in any other State, such fugitive may be lawfully reclaimed, and conveyed to the person claiming his or her labor or service as aforesaid: *And provided, also*, That the said provision shall not be construed to alter the condition or civil rights of any person now held to service or labor in the said Territory."—*Annals*, 16th Cong., 1st Sess., 947.

## THOMAS'S AMENDMENT, FEBRUARY 17, 1820.

*And be it further enacted*, That, in all that territory ceded by France to the United States, under the name of Louisiana, which lies north of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes north latitude, excepting only such part thereof as is included within the limits of the State contemplated by this act, slavery and involuntary servitude, otherwise than in the punishment of crimes whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall be and is hereby forever prohibited: *Provided always*, That any person escaping into the same, from whom labor or service is lawfully claimed in any State or Territory of the United States, such fugitive may be lawfully reclaimed, and conveyed to the person claiming his or her labor or service, as aforesaid.—*Annals*, 16th Cong., 1st Sess., 427, 428.

## ENABLING ACT, MARCH 6, 1820.

*Be it enacted* . . . That the inhabitants of that portion of the Missouri territory included within the boundaries hereinafter designated, be, and they are hereby, authorized to form for themselves a constitution and state government, and to assume such name as they shall deem proper; and the said state, when formed, shall be admitted into the Union, upon an equal footing with the original states, in all respects whatsoever.

SEC. 2. *And be it further enacted*, That the said state shall consist of all the territory included within the following boundaries, to wit: Beginning in the middle of the Mississippi river, on the parallel of thirty-six degrees of north latitude; thence west, along that parallel of latitude, to the St. Francois river; thence up, and following the course of that river, in the middle of the main channel thereof, to the parallel of latitude of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes; thence west, along the same, to a point where the said parallel is intersected by

a meridian line passing through the middle of the mouth of the Kansas river, where the same empties into the Missouri river, thence, from the point aforesaid north, along the said meridian line, to the intersection of the parallel of latitude which passes through the rapids of the river Des Moines, making the said line to correspond with the Indian boundary line; thence east, from the point of intersection last aforesaid, along the said parallel of latitude, to the middle of the channel of the main fork of the said river Des Moines; thence down and along the middle of the main channel of the said river Des Moines, to the mouth of the same, where it empties into the Mississippi river; thence, due east, to the middle of the main channel of the Mississippi river; thence down, and following the course of the Mississippi river, in the middle of the main channel thereof, to the place of beginning. . . .

SEC. 8. *And be it further enacted*, That in all that territory ceded by France to the United States, under the name of Louisiana, which lies north of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes north latitude, not included within the limits of the state, contemplated by this act, slavery and involuntary servitude, otherwise than in the punishment of crimes, whereof the parties shall have been duly convicted, shall be, and is hereby, forever prohibited: *Provided always*, That any person escaping into the same, from whom labor or service is lawfully claimed, in any state or territory of the United States, such fugitive may be lawfully reclaimed and conveyed to the person claiming his or her labour or service as aforesaid.—*U. S. Stat. at Large*, III, 545-548.

## OBJECTIONABLE PROVISION IN MISSOURI CONSTITUTION, JULY 19, 1820.

[The general assembly shall have power to pass laws] To permit the owners of slaves to emancipate them, saving the right of creditors, where the person so emancipating will give security that the slave so emancipated shall not become a public charge.

It shall be their duty, as soon as may be, to pass such laws as may be necessary—

1. To prevent free negroes and [and] mulattoes from coming to and settling in this State, under any pretext whatsoever; and,

2. To oblige the owners of slaves to treat them with humanity, and to abstain from all injuries to them extending to life or limb. . . .—Thorpe, *American Charters, Constitutions, etc.*, IV, 2154.

## RESOLUTION FOR ADMISSION OF MISSOURI, MARCH 2, 1821.

*Resolved by the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America, in Congress assembled*, That Missouri shall be admitted into this union on an equal footing with the original states, in all respects whatever, upon the fundamental condition, that the fourth clause of the twenty-sixth section of the third article of the constitution submitted on the part of said state to Congress, shall never be construed to authorize the passage of any law, and that no law shall be passed in conformity thereto, by which any citizen, of either of the states in this Union, shall be excluded from the enjoyment of any of the privileges and immunities to which such citizen is entitled under the constitution of the United States: *Provided*, That the legislature of the said state, by a solemn public act, shall declare the assent of the said state to the said fundamental condition, and shall transmit to the President of the United States, on or before the fourth Monday in November next, an authentic copy of the said act. . . .—*U. S. Stat. at Large*, III, 645.

# Topic U 24. The Jacksonian Epoch, 1829-1841 (I).

(Continued in Topic U 25).

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Character of period. Period of political, industrial, and social reconstruction. Spread of democratic ideas. See Topic 21.
2. Character and early life of Jackson.
  - a) Boyhood.
  - b) Early life in Tennessee.
  - c) Part in war of 1812.
  - d) Actions in Florida.
  - e) Presidential election of 1824.
3. Personal Politics.
  - a) Kitchen cabinet.
  - b) The Spoils System—Jackson's theories and practices. Arguments *pro* and *con* on desirability of rotation in office based on party services. Extent and results of changes.
  - c) Postmaster-general admitted to cabinet.
  - d) Peggy O'Neill affair.
4. Tariff and Nullification.
  - a) Review of history of tariff.
    - 1) Low revenue tariff to 1816.
    - 2) Protective features of tariff of 1816.
    - 3) Demand for more protection, tariff of 1824.
    - 4) Tariff of abominations, 1828.
  - b) Change in Southern attitude toward tariff.
    - 1) In 1816 not opposed.
    - 2) Growing belief that protective tariff was unjust to the south. Why?
    - 3) Calhoun's Exposition called forth by tariff of 1828.
  - c) Review of States Rights Theories.
    - 1) Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions of 1798-99; Hartford Convention; Georgia's opposition to Indian policy of the United States, 1825-30; Calhoun's exposition.
    - 2) The theory used by dissatisfied states north and south.
  - d) Retained longer in the south because an agricultural community did not need national measures as much as the northern industrial regions needed them.
  - e) Webster-Hayne Debate, 1830. Webster stood for new national theory of the union; Hayne stood for old federal theory.
  - f) Progress of nullification movement in South Carolina.
  - g) Tariff of 1832; led South to believe that high tariff was a permanent policy of government.
  - h) Ordinance of Nullification.
    - 1) Jackson's proclamation against; force to be used in executing laws.
  - j) Action of Congress, 1833.
    - 1) Force act—giving President power to carry out laws.
    - 2) Compromise tariff; gradual reduction till 1842, when no duties should be over 20%.
  - k) Effect of these measures; South Carolina gives up her opposition.
    - 1) Part of Clay in this compromise.
5. The West, 1825-1837.
  - a) Influence of expanding lines of transportation—turnpikes, canals, steamboats, railroads. See Topic No. 26.

- b) Influx of population.
- c) Public land question in Congress; attempt to make land sales easier, and to use proceeds of sales in states where lands were located.
- d) Great sales of public lands; speculation in lands.
- e) Admission of Arkansas, 1836; Michigan, 1837.
6. Foreign Affairs.
  - a) Relations with France.
    - 1) Character and amount of our claims against France.
    - 2) Long delay in getting the debt recognized by France.
    - 3) Jackson urged that no such delay be permitted in having the debt paid.
    - 4) Recall of ministers.
    - 5) Quieting of excitement and settlement of debt in full.
  - b) Relations with England; at last succeeded in getting trade with West Indies.
  - c) Relations with Texas and Mexico.
    - 1) Early history of Texas.
    - 2) Settlement of American slaveholders in Texas.
    - 3) Struggle for independence of Texas.
    - 4) Recognition by United States of Texan independence.
    - 5) Attempt to admit Texas as state.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 263-290; Ashley, 298-311; Channing, 377-409; Hart, 316-336; James & Sanford, 297-320; Johnston-MacDonald, 271-298; McLaughlin, 322-348; McMaster, 301-316; Montgomery, 226-244; Muzzey, 277-298.
- For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, Middle Period, ch. 8, 10, and pp. 163-165; Elson, U. S., 478-508; Sparks, Men Who Made the Nation, ch. 8, 9, 10, Stanwood, History of Presidency, ch. 12; Tausig, Tariff History, 100-114; Wilson, Division and Reunion, 2-68.
- For Topical Study.—
1. MacDonald, Jacksonian Democracy, ch. 1; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 1; Wilson, American People, IV, 1-10.
  2. MacDonald, ch. 2; Von Holst, U. S., II, 1-22.
  3. MacDonald, ch. 4; McMaster, U. S., V, 520-536, VI, 121-125; Schouler, U. S., III, 151-164, 191-202; IV, 31-38; Von Holst, II, 23-31, 72-79; Wilson, IV, 10-14.
  4. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 378-382, 409-416; Houston, Nullification in South Carolina; Johnston, American Political History, I, 314-437; MacDonald, ch. 5-6, 9; McMaster, V, 227-267, VI, 11-48, 127-136, 118-150, 153-181; Powell, Nullification and Secession, ch. 6; Schouler, III, 180-191, IV, 38-41, 51-69, 85-111; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 4; Stanwood, Tariff Controversies, I, ch. 9-10; Turner, Rise of New West, ch. 14, 18-19; Von Holst, I, 396-408, 459-505; Wilson, IV, 19-40.
  5. McMaster, VI, 79-95; Schouler, IV, 152-156; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 2.
  6. MacDonald, ch. 12; McMaster, VI, ch. 66; Schouler, IV, 239-257, 316-320.
- Source References.—American History Leaflets, 30; Caldwell, Economic History, ch. 10-12; Caldwell and Persinger, 354-378; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 21; Johnston, American Orations, I, 219-319, IV, 191-237; MacDonald, Source Book, 320-360; MacDonald, Documents, 231-333; Preston, Documents, 299-304.
- Biography.—Lives of Jackson, Webster, Calhoun, Clay.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### TARIFF AND NULLIFICATION.

PROTEST OF SOUTH CAROLINA, DECEMBER 19, 1828.

The Senate and House of Representatives of South Carolina . . . solemnly protest against the system of protecting duties, lately adopted by the Federal Government, for the following reasons:—

3. Because they believe that the tariff law, passed by Congress at its last session, and all other acts of which the principal object is the protection of manufactures, or any other branch of domestic industry—if they be considered as the exercise of a supposed power in Congress, to tax the people at its own good will and pleasure, and to apply the money raised to objects not specified in the constitution—is a violation of these fundamental principles, a breach of a well defined trust, and a perversion of the high powers vested in the federal government, for federal purposes only. . . .

7. Because, even admitting Congress to have a constitutional right to protect manufactures by the imposition of duties or by regulations of commerce, designed principally for that purpose, yet a Tariff, of which the operation is grossly unequal and oppressive, is such an abuse of power, as is incompatible with the principles of a free government, and the great ends of civil society, justice, and equality of rights and protection.

8. Finally, because South Carolina, from her climate, situation, and peculiar institutions is, and must ever continue to be, wholly dependant upon agriculture and commerce, not only for her prosperity, but for her very existence as a State—because the abundant and valuable products of her soil—the blessings by which Divine Providence seems to have designed to compensate for the great disadvantages under which she suffers, in other respects—are among the very few that can be cultivated with any profit by slave labor—and if, by the loss of her foreign commerce, these products should be confined to an inadequate market, the fate of this fertile State would be poverty and utter desolation; her citizens, in despair, would emigrate to more fortunate regions, and the whole frame and constitution of her civil polity, be impaired and deranged, if not dissolved entirely.

Deeply impressed with these considerations, the Representatives of the good people of this commonwealth . . . do, in the name of the commonwealth of South Carolina, claim to enter upon the journals of the Senate, their protest against [the system of protecting duties] as unconstitutional, oppressive, and unjust.—J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, ed. by Crallé, VI, pp. 57-59.

WEBSTER'S REPLY TO HAYNE, JANUARY 26, 27, 1830.

. . . It so happens that, at the very moment when South Carolina resolves that the tariff laws are unconstitutional, Pennsylvania and Kentucky resolve exactly the reverse. They hold those laws to be both highly proper and strictly constitutional. And now, sir, how does the honorable member propose to deal with this case? How does he relieve us from this difficulty, upon any principle of his? His construction gets us into it; how does he propose to get us out?

In Carolina, the tariff is a palpable, deliberate usurpation; Carolina, therefore, may nullify it, and refuse to pay the duties. In Pennsylvania, it is both clearly constitutional and highly expedient; and there, the duties are to be paid. And yet we live under a Government of uniform laws, and under a constitution, too, which contains an express provision, as it happens, that all duties shall be equal in all the States! Does not this approach absurdity?

If there be no power to settle such questions, independent of either of the States, is not the whole Union a rope of sand? Are we not thrown back again, precisely upon the old Confederation?

It is too plain to be argued. Four-and-twenty interpreters of constitutional law, each with a power to decide for itself, and none with authority to bind anybody else, and this constitutional law the only bond of their union. . . .

Some authority must, therefore, necessarily exist, having the ultimate jurisdiction to fix and ascertain the interpretation of these grants, restrictions, and prohibitions. The constitution has, itself, pointed out, ordained, and established, that authority. How has it accomplished this great and essential end? By declaring, sir, that "the constitution and the laws of the United States, made in pursuance thereof, shall be the supreme law of the land, anything in the constitution or laws of any State to the contrary, notwithstanding."

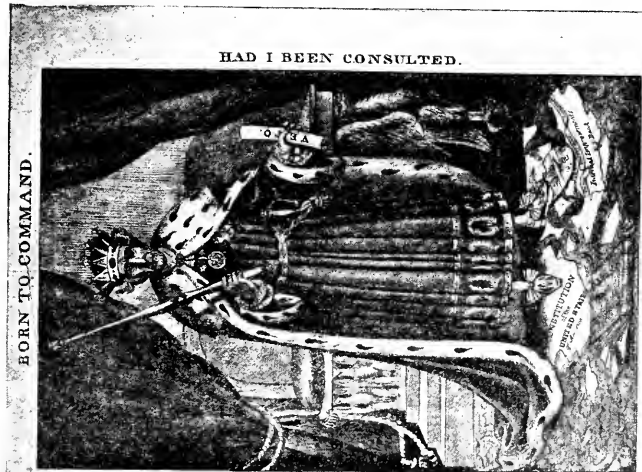
This, sir, was the first great step. By this, the supremacy of the constitution and laws of the United States is declared. The people so will it. No State law is to be valid which comes in conflict with the constitution or any law of the United States passed in pursuance of it. But who shall decide this question of interference? To whom lies the last appeal? This, sir, the constitution itself decides also, by declaring "that the judicial power shall extend to all cases arising under the constitution and laws of the United States." These two provisions, sir, cover the whole ground. They are, in truth, the key-stone of the arch. With these, it is a constitution; without them, it is a confederacy. . . .

. . . It is to that Union we owe our safety at home, and our consideration and dignity abroad. It is to that Union that we are chiefly indebted for whatever makes us most proud of our country. That Union we reached only by the discipline of our virtues in the severe school of adversity. It had its origin in the necessities of disordered finance, prostrate commerce, and ruined credit. Under its benign influences, these great interests immediately awoke, as from the dead, and sprang forth with newness of life. Every year of its duration has teemed with fresh proofs of its utility and its blessings; and, although our territory has stretched out wider and wider, and our population spread farther and farther, they have not outrun its protection or its benefits. It has been to us all a copious fountain of national, social, and personal happiness. I have not allowed myself, sir, to look beyond the Union, to see what might lie hidden in the dark recess behind. I have not coolly weighed the chances of preserving liberty, when the bonds that unite us together shall be broken asunder. I have not accustomed myself to hang over the precipice of disunion, to see whether, with my short sight, I can fathom the depth of the abyss below; nor could I regard him as a safe counsellor, in the affairs of this Government, whose thoughts should be mainly bent on considering, not how the Union should be best preserved, but how tolerable might be the condition of the people when it shall be broken up and destroyed. While the Union lasts, we have high, exciting, gratifying prospects spread out before us, for us and our children. Beyond that, I seek not to penetrate the veil. God grant that, in my day, at least, that curtain may not rise. God grant that, on my vision, never may be opened what lies behind. . . . —*Register of Debates in Congress*, 21st Cong., 1st Sess., 78-80.

HAYNE'S REPLY TO WEBSTER, JANUARY 27, 1830.

It is clear that questions of sovereignty are not the proper subjects of judicial investigation. They are much too large, and of too delicate a nature, to be brought within the jurisdiction of a court of justice. . . .

No doubt can exist, that, before the States entered into the compact, they possessed the right, to the fullest extent, of determining the limits of their own powers—it is incident to all sovereignty. Now, have they given



# ANDREW

THE FIRST,  
"Born to Command."



CARTOONS UPON JACKSON.

The left hand one shows the impression made upon his enemies by Jackson's arbitrary actions.  
The right hand cartoon shows Jackson's power weakening (according to the artist) and the cabinet members resigning (1831).  
Copyright, 1912, McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

# SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

away that right, or agreed to limit or restrict it in any respect? Assuredly not. They have agreed that certain specific powers shall be exercised by the Federal Government; but the moment that government steps beyond the limits of its charter, the right of the States "to interpose for arresting the progress of the evil, and for maintaining, within their respective limits, the authorities, rights, and liberties, appertaining to them," is as full and complete as it was before the constitution was formed. It was plenary then, and never having been surrendered, must be plenary now. But what then, asks the gentleman? A State is brought into collision with the United States, in relation to the exercise of unconstitutional powers; who is to decide between them? Sir, it is the common case of difference of opinion between sovereigns as to the true construction of a compact. Does such a difference of opinion necessarily produce war? No. And if not, among rival nations, why should it do so among friendly States? . . .

The gentleman has called upon us to carry out our scheme practically. Now, sir, if I am correct in my view of this matter, then it follows, of course, that the right of a State being established, the Federal Government is bound to acquiesce in a solemn decision of a State, acting in its sovereign capacity, at least so far as to make an appeal to the people for an amendment to the constitution. This solemn decision of a State (made either through its Legislature, or a convention, as may be supposed to be the proper organ of its sovereign will—a point I do not propose now to discuss) binds the Federal Government, under the highest constitutional obligation, not to resort to any means of coercion against the citizens of the dissenting State. How, then, can any collision ensue between the Federal and State Governments, unless, indeed, the former should determine to enforce the law by unconstitutional means? . . .—*Register of Debates in Congress*, 21st Cong., 1st Sess., 87-91.

## ORDINANCE OF NULLIFICATION, NOVEMBER 24, 1832.

Whereas the Congress of the United States, by various acts, purporting to be acts laying duties and imposts on foreign imports, but in reality intended for the protection of domestic manufactures, and the giving of bounties to classes and individuals engaged in particular employments, at the expense and to the injury and oppression of other classes and individuals, and by wholly exempting from taxation certain foreign commodities, such as are not produced or manufactured in the United States, to afford a pretext for imposing higher and excessive duties on articles similar to those intended to be protected, hath exceeded its just powers under the Constitution, which confers on it no authority to afford such protection, and hath violated the true meaning and intent of the Constitution, which provides for equality in imposing the burthens of taxation upon the several States and portions of the confederacy, . . .

We, therefore, the people of the State of South Carolina in Convention assembled, to declare and ordain, and it is hereby declared and ordained, that the several acts and parts of acts of the Congress of the United States, purporting to be laws for the imposing of duties and imposts on the importation of foreign commodities, and now having actual operation and effect within the United States . . . are unauthorized by the Constitution of the United States, and violate the true meaning and intent thereof, and are null, void, and no law, nor binding upon this State, its officers or citizens; and all promises, contracts, and obligations, made or entered into, or to be made or entered into, with purpose to secure the duties

imposed by the said acts, and all judicial proceedings which shall be hereafter had in affirmance thereof, are and shall be held utterly null and void, . . .—MacDonald, *Select Documents of the History of the United States*, 268-269.

## JACKSON'S NULLIFICATION PROCLAMATION, DECEMBER 10, 1832.

. . . I, ANDREW JACKSON, *President of the United States*, have thought proper to issue this my PROCLAMATION, stating my views of the Constitution and laws applicable to the measures adopted by the Convention of South Carolina, and to the reasons they have put forth to sustain them, declaring the course which duty will require me to pursue, and, appealing to the understanding and patriotism of the people, warn them of the consequences that must inevitably result from an observance of the dictates of the Convention. . . .

The ordinance is founded, not on the indefeasible right of resisting acts which are plainly unconstitutional, and too oppressive to be endured; but on the strange position that any one State may not only declare an act of Congress void, but prohibit its execution—that they may do this consistently with the Constitution—that the true construction of that instrument permits a State to retain its place in the Union, and yet be bound by no other of its laws than those it may choose to consider as constitutional. . . .

I consider, then, the power to annul a law of the United States, assumed by one State, INCOMPATIBLE WITH THE EXISTENCE OF THE UNION, CONTRADICTED EXPRESSLY BY THE LETTER OF THE CONSTITUTION, UNAUTHORIZED BY ITS SPIRIT, INCONSISTENT WITH EVERY PRINCIPLE ON WHICH IT WAS FOUNDED, AND DESTRUCTIVE OF THE GREAT OBJECT FOR WHICH IT WAS FORMED. . . .

This, then, is the position in which we stand. A small majority of the citizens of one State in the Union have elected delegates to a State Convention; that Convention has ordained that all the revenue laws of the United States must be repealed, or that they are no longer a member of the Union. The Governor of that State has recommended to the Legislature the raising of an army to carry the secession into effect, and that he may be empowered to give clearances to vessels in the name of the State. No act of violent opposition to the laws has yet been committed, but such a state of things is hourly apprehended; and it is the intent of this instrument to proclaim, not only that the duty imposed on me by the Constitution "to take care that the laws be faithfully executed," shall be performed to the extent of the powers already vested in me by law, or of such others as the wisdom of Congress shall devise and entrust to me for that purpose, but to warn the citizens of South Carolina who have been deluded into an opposition to the laws, of the danger they will incur by obedience to the illegal and disorganizing ordinance of the Convention. . . .

. . . Having the fullest confidence in the justness of the legal and constitutional opinion of my duties, which has been expressed, I rely, with equal confidence, on your undivided support in my determination to execute the laws—to preserve the Union by all constitutional means—to arrest, if possible, by moderate but firm measures, the necessity of a recourse to force; and, if it be the will of Heaven, that the recurrence of its primeval curse on man for the shedding of a brother's blood should fall upon our land, that it be not called down by any offensive act on the part of the United States, . . .—Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, II, 610-656.



# Topic U 25. The Jacksonian Epoch, 1829-1841 (II).

(Continued from Topic U 24).

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

7. Indian Affairs.
  - a) Trouble between Georgia and Indians.
  - b) Ignoring of United States Supreme Court.
  - c) Eventual removal of Indians to west of Mississippi River.
  - d) Establishment of new Indian boundary west of Mississippi River.
8. The Bank Controversy.
  - a) Review of charter of bank: capital, term of years, monopoly, fiscal agent of government, etc.
  - b) Reasons for Jackson's opposition to bank.
    - 1) A moneyed monopoly opposed to democratic theory.
    - 2) Personal reasons.
  - c) Jackson's attacks on bank; messages of 1829, 1830, 1831.
  - d) Move to recharter the bank; act passed July, 1832.
  - e) Jackson's veto; failure to pass over it.
  - f) The Bank in the campaign of 1832.
    - 1) Clay and National Republicans favored it.
    - 2) Jackson men opposed it.
  - g) Jackson re-elected. Interpreted by him as popular mandate to destroy the bank, 1833.
  - h) Removal of deposits from United States Bank to state banks (pet banks).
  - i) Jackson censured by vote of Senate, 1834.
  - j) Vote of censure expunged by influence of Benton, 1837.
  - k) Bank takes out state charter; soon goes out of business.
9. Influence of overthrow of bank.
  - a) United States gives up control of banking, leaving it to states to control.
  - b) Many new state banks chartered; they issue large circulation of paper money.
  - c) Encourages speculation.
  - d) Leads to the establishment of:
10. The Independent Treasury System.
  - a) Dangers of depositing national money in state banks.
  - b) Demand that government keep its own funds.
  - c) Independent treasury act, 1840.
  - d) Repealed in 1841, but permanently adopted in 1846.
11. Financial Questions.
  - a) Payment of national debt by 1835.
  - b) Surplus revenue.
    - 1) Caused by payment of debt and determination not to reduce the tariff faster than provided by compromise tariff.
    - 2) Suggestions for use of surplus—complicated because Jackson men did not believe that Congress had power to use it for internal improvements.
    - 3) Distributed among states. How used by them?
  - c) Speculation: caused by:
    - 1) National prosperity.
    - 2) Organization of state banks and issue of paper money.
    - 3) Easy purchases of public lands.
- 4) Distribution of surplus.
  - a) Specie Circular.
    - 1) Drafted by T. H. Benton.
    - 2) Provided—land sales to be made for specie, notes of specie-paying banks and land script.
- c) Financial Panic of 1837.
  - 1) Causes (see c) and d) preceding).
  - 2) Effects—number and extent of business failures.
  - 3) Influence upon state banks and state banking systems.
  - 4) Upon national financial measures; disappearance of surplus; independent treasury.
  - 5) Influence upon west and southwest.
12. Political Affairs.
  - a) Rise and influence of Anti-Masons.
  - b) Adoption of national nominating conventions and of national platforms by political parties.
  - c) New names for parties.
    - 1) Jackson men are now called "Democrats."
    - 2) Clay men—National Republicans—are called "Whigs."
  - d) Election of Van Buren—the political heir of Jackson, 1836.
  - e) Election of 1840—Log Cabin and Hard Cider Campaign.
    - 1) Unpopularity of Van Buren.
    - 2) Democrats blamed for hard times.
    - 3) Whigs win in a hurrah campaign.
    - 4) Election of 1840.
  - f) Liberty party—see Topic 27.
13. Abolition Movement, 1831-1840. (See Topic 27.)

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Frent, 263-290; Ashley, 298-314; Channing, 377-409; Hart, 316-336; James & Sanford, 297-320; Johnston-MacDonald, 271-298; McMaster, 301-316; Montgomery, 236-244; Muzzey, 277-298.

For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, Middle Period, ch. 9, 11, 12; Coman, Industrial History, 227-231; Dewey, Financial History, 197-233; Elson, U. S., 478-508; Sparks, Men Who Made the Nation, ch. 8, 9; Stanwood, History of Presidency, ch. 13-16; Wilson, Division and Reunion, 69-115.

For Topical Study.—

7. MacDonald, ch. 10; McMaster, V, 337-339; McMaster, VI, 327-334; Schouler, IV, 233-236; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 3; Wilson, IV, 14-18.

8. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 384-385; Johnston, American Political History, I, 393-420; MacDonald, Jacksonian Democracy, ch. 7, 13; McMaster, U. S., VI, 1-10, 132-117, 183-212; Schouler, U. S., III, 467-475; IV, 43-54, 68-70, 132-170; Von Holst, U. S., II, 34-72; White, Money and Banking, 278-315; Wilson, American People, IV, II-66.

10. Schouler, IV, 283.

11. Hart, Slavery and Abolition, ch. 20; MacDonald, ch. 16; McMaster, VI, 213-223, 308-326, 494-497, 523-533, 515-517, and ch. 63, 65; Schouler, IV, 160, 170-183, 229-231, 257-265, 276-294; Von Holst, II, 174-218; Wilson, IV, 66-73.

12. McMaster, VI, 236-270, 299-303, ch. 64; Schouler, IV, 77-82, 188-200.

13. See references under Topic No. 27.

Source References.—American History Leaflets, 24; Caldwell and Persinger, 354-378; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 21; Johnston, American Orations, I, 320-336; MacDonald, Source Book, 320-360; MacDonald, Documents, 231-333.

Biography.—Lives of Jackson, Clay, T. H. Benton, Martin Van Buren.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### JACKSON AND THE UNITED STATES BANK.

FIRST ANNUAL MESSAGE, DECEMBER 8, 1829.

The charter of the Bank of the United States expires in 1836, and its stockholders will most probably apply for a renewal of their privileges. In order to avoid the evils resulting from precipitancy in a measure involving such important principles, and such deep pecuniary interests, I feel that I cannot, in justice to the parties interested, too soon present it to the deliberate consideration of the Legislature and the People. Both the constitutionality and the expediency of the law creating this Bank are well questioned by a large portion of our fellow-citizens; and it must be admitted by all, that it has failed in the great end of establishing a uniform and sound currency.

Under these circumstances, if such an institution is deemed essential to the fiscal operations of the Government, I submit to the wisdom of the Legislature whether a national one, founded upon the credit of the Government and its revenues, might not be devised, which would avoid all constitutional difficulties; and, at the same time, secure all the advantages to the Government and country that were expected to result from the present Bank. . . . —Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, II, 462.

• SECOND ANNUAL MESSAGE, DECEMBER 7, 1830.

The importance of the principles involved in the inquiry, whether it will be proper to recharter the Bank of the United States, requires that I should again call the attention of Congress to the subject. Nothing has occurred to lessen, in any degree, the dangers which many of our citizens apprehend from that institution, as at present organized. In the spirit of improvement and compromise which distinguishes our country and its institutions, it becomes us to inquire, whether it be not possible to secure the advantages afforded by the present bank, through the agency of a Bank of the United States, so modified in its principles and structure as to obviate constitutional and other objections. These suggestions are made, not so much as a recommendation, as with a view of calling the attention of Congress to the possible modifications of a system which can not continue to exist in its present form without occasional collisions with the local authorities, and perpetual apprehensions and discontent on the part of the States and the people. . . . —Richardson, II, 528-529.

VETO MESSAGE, JULY 10, 1832.

A Bank of the United States is, in many respects, convenient for the Government, and useful to the people. Entertaining this opinion, and deeply impressed with the belief that some of the powers and privileges possessed by the existing bank are unauthorized by the constitution, subversive of the rights of the States, and dangerous to the liberties of the people, I felt it my duty, at an early period of my administration, to call the attention of Congress to the practicability of organizing an institution combining all its advantages, and obviating these objections. I sincerely regret, that, in the act before me, I can perceive none of those modifications of the bank charter which are necessary, in my opinion, to make it compatible with justice, with sound policy, or with the constitution of our country. . . .

The modifications of the existing charter, proposed by this act, are not such, in my view, as make it consistent with the rights of the States or the liberties of the people. The qualification of the right of the bank to hold real estate, the limitation of its power to establish branches,

and the power reserved to Congress to forbid the circulation of small notes, are restrictions comparatively of little value or importance. All the objectionable principles of the existing corporation, and most of its odious features, are retained without alleviation. . . .

Is there no danger to our liberty and independence in a bank, that, in its nature, has so little to bind it to our country? The President of the bank has told us that most of the State banks exist by its forbearance. Should its influence become concentrated, as it may under the operation of such an act as this, in the hands of a self-elected directory, whose interests are identified with those of the foreign stockholder, will there not be cause to tremble for the purity of our elections in peace, and for the independence of our country in war? Their power would be great whenever they might choose to exert it; but if this monopoly were regularly renewed every fifteen or twenty years, on terms proposed by themselves, they might seldom in peace put forth their strength to influence elections, or control the affairs of the nation. But if any private citizen or public functionary should interpose to curtail its powers, or prevent a renewal of its privileges, it cannot be doubted that he would be made to feel its influence.

Under the decision of the Supreme Court, therefore, it is the exclusive province of Congress and the President to decide whether the particular features of this act are *necessary and proper* in order to enable the bank to perform conveniently and efficiently the public duties assigned to it as a fiscal agent, and therefore constitutional; or *unnecessary and improper*, and therefore unconstitutional. Without commenting on the general principle affirmed by the Supreme Court, let us examine the details of this act in accordance with the rule of legislative action which they have laid down. It will be found that many of the powers and privileges conferred on it cannot be supposed necessary for the purpose for which it is proposed to be created, and are not, therefore, means necessary to attain the end in view, and consequently not justified by the constitution. . . .

Suspicious are entertained, and charges are made, of gross abuse and violation of its charter. An investigation unwillingly conceded, and so restricted in time as necessarily to make it incomplete and unsatisfactory, discloses enough to excite suspicion and alarm. In the practices of the principal bank partially unveiled, in the absence of important witnesses, and in numerous charges confidently made, and as yet wholly uninvestigated, there was enough to induce a majority of the Committee of Investigation, a committee which was selected from the most able and honorable members of the House of Representatives to recommend a suspension of further action upon the bill, and a prosecution of the inquiry. . . .

The bank is professedly established as an agent of the Executive branches of the Government, and its constitutionality is maintained on that ground. Neither upon the propriety of present action, nor upon the provisions of this act, was the Executive consulted. It has had no opportunity to say that it neither needs nor wants an agent clothed with such powers, and favored by such exemptions. There is nothing in its legitimate functions which make it necessary or proper. Whatever interest or influence, whether public or private, has given birth to this act, it cannot be found either in the wishes or necessities of the Executive Department, by which present action is deemed premature, and the powers conferred upon its agent not only unnecessary, but dangerous to the Government and country. . . . —Richardson, II, 576-591.

(Continued on Page 4.)



These plates show "the latest Paris Fashions" for 1840 (plate 1) and for 1844 (plate 2). Taken from a popular ladies' magazine of the day. It should be noted that Paris dictated fashions then as now.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

FAREWELL ADDRESS, MARCH 4, 1837.

We behold systematic efforts publicly made to sow the seeds of discord between different parts of the United States and to place party divisions directly upon geographical distinctions; to excite the *South* against the *North* and the *North* against the *South*, and to force into the controversy the most delicate and exciting topics—topics upon which it is impossible that a large portion of the Union can ever speak without strong emotion. Appeals, too, are constantly made to sectional interests in order to influence the election of the Chief Magistrate, as if it were desired that he should favor a particular quarter of the country instead of fulfilling the duties of his station with impartial justice to all; and the possible dissolution of the Union has at length become an ordinary and familiar subject of discussion. Has the warning voice of Washington been forgotten, or have designs already been formed to sever the Union? . . .

The various interests which have combined together to impose a heavy tariff and to produce an overflowing Treasury are too strong and have too much at stake to surrender the contest. The corporations and wealthy individuals who are engaged in large manufacturing establishments desire a high tariff to increase their gains. Designing politicians will support it to conciliate their favor and to obtain the means of profuse expenditure for the purpose of purchasing influence in other quarters; and since the people have decided that the Federal Government can not be permitted to employ its income in internal improvements, efforts will be made to seduce and mislead the citizens of the several States by holding out to them the deceitful prospect of benefits to be derived from a surplus revenue collected by the General Government and annually divided among the States; and if, encouraged by these fallacious hopes, the States should disregard the principles of economy which ought to characterize every republican government, and should indulge in lavish expenditures exceeding their resources, they will before long find themselves oppressed with debts which they are unable to pay, and the temptation will become irresistible to support a high tariff in order to obtain a surplus for distribution. . . .

The immense capital and peculiar privileges bestowed upon [the Bank] enabled it to exercise despotic sway over the other banks in every part of the country. From its superior strength it could seriously injure, if not destroy, the business of any one of them which might incur its resentment; and it openly claimed for itself the power of regulating the currency throughout the United States. In other words, it asserted (and it undoubtedly possessed) the power to make money plenty or scarce at its pleasure, at any time and in any quarter of the Union, by controlling the issues of other banks and permitting an expansion or compelling general contraction of the circulating medium, according to its own will. The other banking institutions were sensible of its strength, and they soon generally became its obedient instruments, ready at all times to execute its mandates; and with the banks necessarily went also that numerous class of persons in our commercial cities who depend altogether on bank credits for their solvency and means of business, and who are therefore obliged, for their own safety, to propitiate the favor of the money power by distinguished zeal and devotion to its service. . . .

• We are not left to conjecture how the moneyed power, thus organized and with such a weapon in its hands, would be likely to use it. The distress and alarm which pervaded and agitated the whole country when the Bank of the United States waged war upon the people in order

to compel them to submit to its demands can not yet be forgotten. The ruthless and unsparing temper with which whole cities and communities were oppressed, individuals impoverished and ruined, and a scene of cheerful prosperity suddenly changed into one of gloom and despondency ought to be indelibly impressed on the memory of the people of the United States. If such was its power in a time of peace, what would it not have been in a season of war, with an enemy at your doors? No nation but the freemen of the United States could have come out victorious from such a contest; yet, if you had not conquered, the Government would have passed from the hands of the many to the hands of the few, and this organized money power from its secret conclave would have dictated the choice of your highest officers and compelled you to make peace or war, as best suited their own wishes. The forms of your Government might for a time have remained, but its living spirit would have departed from it. . . .

The paper-money system and its natural associations—monopoly and exclusive privileges—have already struck their roots too deep in the soil, and it will require all your efforts to check its further growth and to eradicate the evil. The men who profit by the abuses and desire to perpetuate them will continue to besiege the halls of legislation in the General Government as well as in the States, and will seek by every artifice to mislead and deceive the public servants. It is to yourselves that you must look for safety and the means of guarding and perpetuating your free institutions. In your hands is rightfully placed the sovereignty of the country, and to you everyone placed in authority is ultimately responsible. It is always in your power to see that the wishes of the people are carried into faithful execution, and their will, when once made known, must sooner or later be obeyed; and while the people remain, as I trust they ever will, uncorrupted and incorruptible, and continue watchful and jealous of their rights, the Government is safe, and the cause of freedom will continue to triumph over all its enemies. . . .

In presenting to you, my fellow-citizens, these parting counsels, I have brought before you the leading principles upon which I endeavored to administer the Government in the high office with which you twice honored me. Knowing that the path of freedom is continually beset by enemies who often assume the disguise of friends, I have devoted the last hours of my public life to warn you of the dangers. The progress of the United States under our free and happy institutions has surpassed the most sanguine hopes of the founders of the Republic. Our growth has been rapid beyond all former example in numbers, in wealth, in knowledge, and all the useful arts which contribute to the comforts and convenience of man, and from the earliest ages of history to the present day there never have been thirteen millions of people associated in one political body who enjoyed so much freedom and happiness as the people of these United States. You have no longer any cause to fear danger from abroad; your strength and power are well known throughout the civilized world, as well as the high and gallant bearing of your sons. It is from within, among yourselves—from cupidity, from corruption, from disappointed ambition and inordinate thirst for power—that factions will be formed and liberty endangered. It is against such designs, whatever disguise the actors may assume, that you have especially to guard yourselves. . . . —Richardson, III, 293-308.

# Topic U 26. Transportation in the United States to 1840.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Physical Conditions of Transportation.
  - a) The Atlantic Coast, its ports and river systems.
  - b) The Gulf and its ports.
  - c) The barrier of the Alleghenies.
  - d) Advantage of Mississippi Valley river systems.
  - e) Absence of communication with Pacific Coast.
2. Political Conditions of Transportation.
  - a) Prevalent constitutional theory that national government could not engage in internal improvement.
  - b) Hence left almost exclusively to the states.
  - c) By the states turned over generally to counties or to private corporations.
  - d) Hence difficulty of executing a national system of improvement.
3. Review of Early Modes of Transportation.
  - a) Early horseback, wagon and stage-coach means.
  - b) Coast-wise trading and passenger vessels.
  - c) Interior waters—canoes, flat-boats, keel-boats, Durham boats, etc.
  - d) During blockade of War of 1812, development of wagon transportation.
4. Development of the steamboat.
  - a) Early experiments of Rumsey, Fitch and Evans.
  - b) Practical success of Fulton.
  - c) The Livingston-Fulton monopoly—held by Supreme Court not to extend to inter-state traffic (1824).
  - d) The development of the steamboat on western waters. Importance in settlement of west.
  - e) The first trans-Atlantic steamship.
5. Development of the Railroad.
  - a) Early experiments upon steam carriages in the United States and England.
  - b) Stephenson's locomotive made practical by tubular boiler, forced draft, and direct drive.
  - c) First American railroads not for locomotive use; gravity, horse-power, sails, etc.
  - d) Introduction of locomotives, 1829.
  - e) Spread of their use; first made in the United States, 1830.
6. Internal Improvements. Early efforts by private companies.
  - a) Canals—Chesapeake and Ohio; Dismal Swamp Canal, etc.
  - b) Turnpike roads and toll bridges.
  - c) Discouraged in period 1800-1806 by profits in foreign trade.
7. Internal Improvements by State Action.
  - a) Erie Canal—work of De Witt Clinton; great influence. See Topic 21.
  - b) Pennsylvania system of canals, railways and inclined planes.
  - c) Maryland system—Chesapeake and Ohio Canal; Baltimore and Ohio Railway.
  - d) In the south—railroads from coast to centre of cotton production.
  - e) In the west—canals to connect Great Lakes and Ohio valley.
  - f) Great expenditures; many plans failed.
8. Internal Improvements by Private Action, 1820-1840.
  - a) Action of states stimulated capitalists to invest in improvement enterprises.
  - b) Great era (1830-1840) of canals, turnpikes, bridges, and railroads.

- c) Many engineering and financial failures.
9. Internal Improvements by National Action.
  - a) Grand proposal of Gallatin, 1807.
  - b) Congress (particularly Clay men) frequently favored appropriations for internal improvements.
  - c) Presidents almost uniformly opposed them on constitutional grounds—Madison, Monroe, Jackson.
  - d) Yet Cumberland road was built across the Alleghenies and extended through states of Ohio and Indiana.
  - e) A few national appropriations for other enterprises—e. g., Delaware and Chesapeake Canal.
  - f) General result—matter left to states and to individuals or corporations authorized by states.
10. Influence of Improved Means of Transportation.
  - a) Cheapened cost of marketing goods; thus made available many new lands in the West.
  - b) Gave great impetus to the settlement of the West.
  - c) Benefited the East by extending the market for manufactures.
  - d) But encouraged eastern workmen to go west.
  - e) Note, that lines of communication generally ran east and west; except for the Mississippi Valley there were no direct means of communication between north and south.

## REFERENCES.

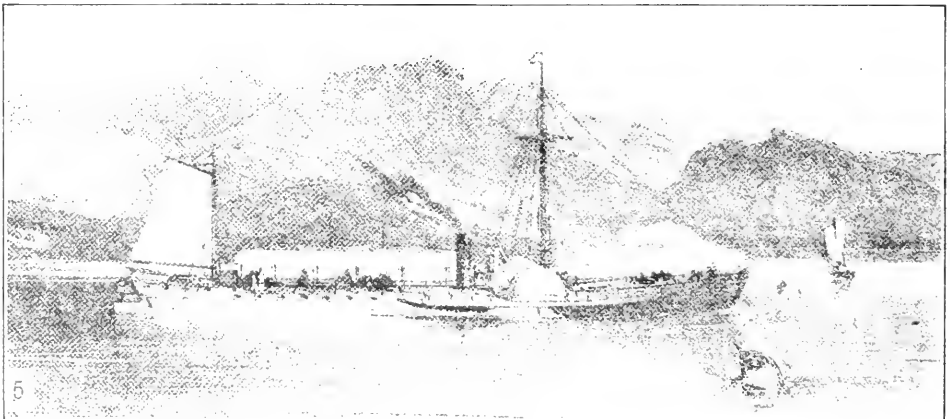
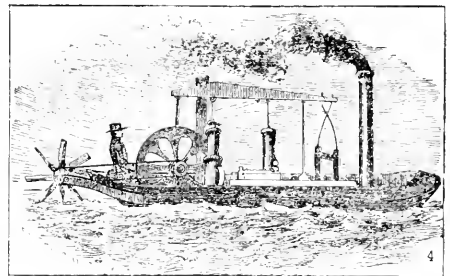
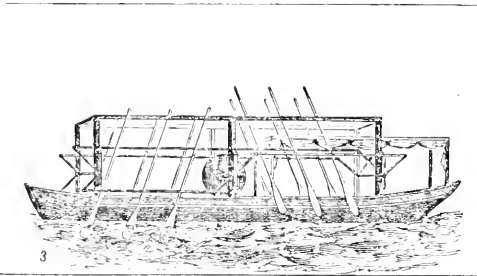
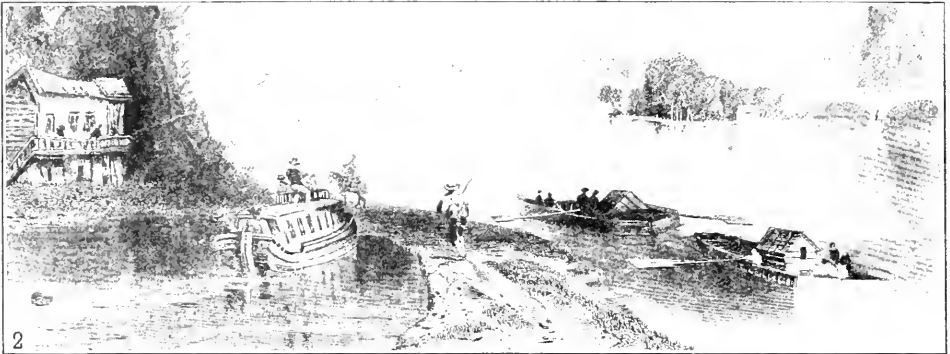
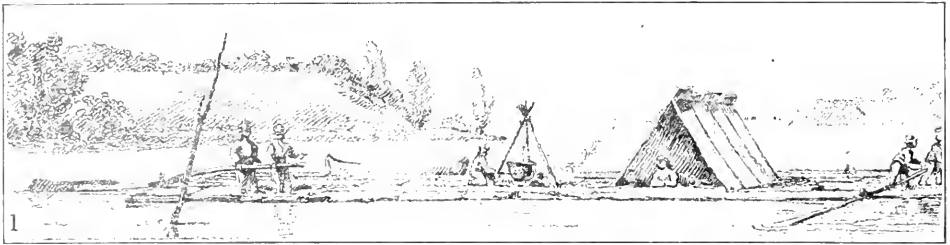
- Textbooks.—Ashley, 121-122, 228-229, 317-322; Channing, 381-387; Hart, 232-231, 290-295, 326-329; James & Sanford, 273-279, 296, 299-302; Johnston-MacDonald, see index under Canals, Roads, Railroads, Steamboats; McLaughlin, 314-317, 337; McMaster, 186-190, 351-253, 279-289; Muzzey, 289-291.
- For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, Economic History, 109-112, 186-202; Coman, Industrial History, 216-227; Elson, U. S., 472-473; Sparks, Expansion, ch. 21-23; Sparks, Men Who Made the Nation, 261-281.
- For Topical Study.—
1. Hart, Slavery and Abolition, pp. 32-34.
  3. Hart, 34-35.
  4. McMaster, U. S., III, 483-493, IV, 396-406.
  5. Hart, 40-48; Hadley, Railroad Transportation, ch. 1-2; Johnston, American Railway Transportation, ch. 1-8; Johnston, Elements of Transportation, ch. 2, 4; McMaster, III, 492-493, V, 138-148, VI, 87-94; Schouler, IV, 121-132; Shaler, U. S., II, ch. 2, and pp. 163-178; Wilson, American People, IV, 20-36.
  7. Hart, 38-40; McMaster, IV, 410-426; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 5.
  9. Babcock, Rise of American Nationality, ch. 13; Hart, 33-37; MacDonald, Jacksonian Democracy, ch. 8; Schouler, III, 346-352; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 5; Turner, Rise of New West, ch. 13.
  10. McMaster, VI, 93-96.
- Source References.—Callender, Economic History, ch. 8; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 25.
- Biography.—Lives of John Fitch, Robert Fulton, George Stephenson.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

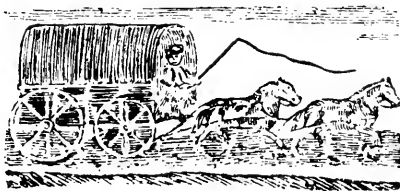
### CHARLES DICKENS'S JOURNEY ACROSS THE ALLEGHENIES.

Nor was the sight of this canal boat, in which we were to spend three or four days, by any means a cheerful one; as it involved some uneasy speculations concerning the disposal of the passengers at night, and opened a wide field of inquiry touching the other domestic arrangements of the establishment, which was sufficiently disconcerting.

(Continued on Page 4.)



- No. 1. A raft on a western stream, from a contemporary sketch.
- No. 2. An interesting view on the Susquehanna River. Note the flat boats with long paddles; the canal boat for passengers, showing the cabin windows, and passengers seated on top. From a magazine of 1841.
- No. 3. John Fitch's Steamboat of 1786-87. The steam engine worked a series of rods by which the motion was transferred to vertical paddles. The boat was a serious success, but did not prove popular. Fitch later experimented with screw propeller and with paddle-wheels.
- No. 4. The Fraktur Amphibolis of Oliver Evans (1804). This boat on wheels propelled itself through the streets of Philadelphia, and entering the river paddled down the stream.
- No. 5. Fulton's Clermont, showing the vessel after the first season (1807), when some changes had been made in her construction. Reproduced by permission of The Rudder Publishing Co., New York, from "The Rudder."



To the PUBLIC.  
**THE FLYING MACHINE**, kept by John Mercereau, at the New Blazing-Star-Ferry, near New-York, sets off from Powles Hook every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday Mornings, for Philadelphia, and performs the Journey in a Day and a Half, for the summer season, till the 1st of November; from that time to go twice a Week till the first of May, when they again perform it three Times a Week. When the Stages go only twice a Week, they set off Mondays and Thursday. The Waggon in Philadelphia set out from the Sign of the George, in Second-Street, the same Morning. The Passengers are desired to cross the Ferry the Evening before, as the Stages must set off early the next Morning. The Price for each Passenger is *Twenty Shillings*, Proce. and Goods as usual. Passengers going Part of the Way to pay in Proportion.  
 As the Proprietor has made such Improvements upon the Machines, one of which is in Imitation of a Coach, he hopes to merit the Favour of the Publick.  
**JOHN MERCEREAU.**

## THROUGH TO THE VIRGINIA SPRINGS, IN THREE DAYS,

BY JAMES RIVER CANAL AND THE NATURAL BRIDGE, WITH 60 MILES LESS STAGING THAN BY ANY OTHER ROUTE.

Fare through, (Board on the Boats included,) to the White Sulphur \$12; actual passage money only \$10.



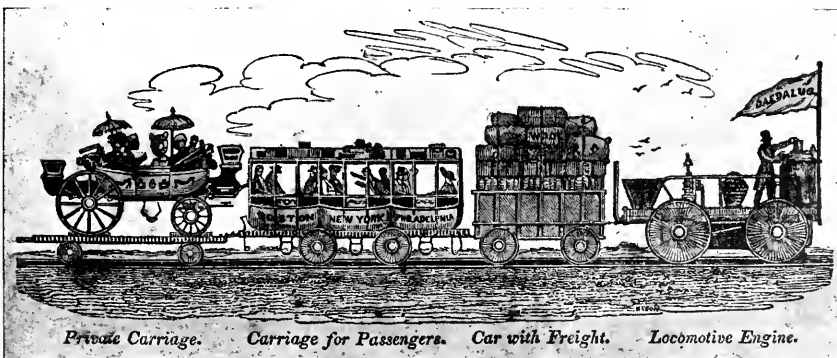
Our Packet Boats leave Richmond daily at 5, P. M., (Sundays excepted;) arrive in Lynchburg, 146 miles, in 32 hours, thence by Stage, leave at 5, A. M., breakfast at Eagle's Eyrie; dine at the Natural Bridge, going time to view it, and arrive at Dabrell's Spring, 57 miles, by dusk; leave Dabrell's next, A. M., after breakfast, and arrive at the White Sulphur, 43 miles, at 5 P. M. The distance by Stage, 109 miles, is divided into two days, to accommodate invalids and large parties, by avoiding the night travel they are subject to on all other routes to the Springs.

The Stage by Fincastle and the Sweet Springs to the White, leaves Lynchburg Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays at 5, A. M., and arrives at the White next day at 5, P. M.

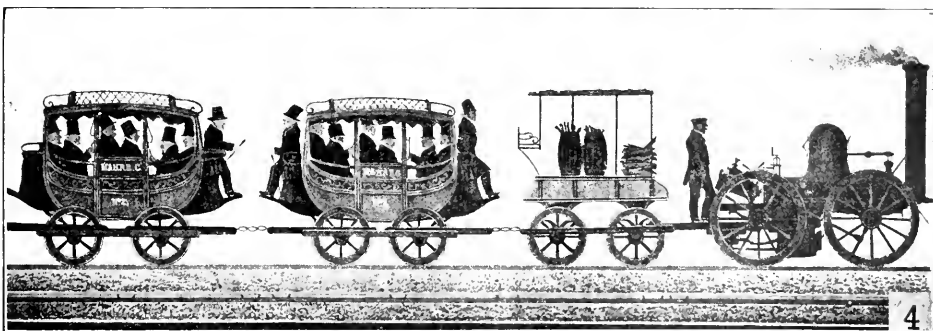
The main Mail route by Wytheville and Abingdon into Tennessee, leaves Lynchburg same days at 5, A. M.; also the Stage for Danville.

On Monday, Wednesday and Friday, the Boats connect at Cartersville with the Stages for Farnville, Charlotte Courthouse, and Halifax Courthouse; and at Scottsville the Boats connect with W. F. Farish & Co.'s line of Stages for Staunton.

Passengers avoid night travel in Stages by this route for Staunton, with \$1.50 less expense than by the Railroad.  
**BOYD, EDMOND & DAVENPORT.**



Private Carriage. Carriage for Passengers. Car with Freight. Locomotive Engine.



4

No. 1. Advertisement of a stage-coach from a New York paper, of 1771. Read carefully the terms offered to passengers.  
 No. 2. Advertisement of a transportation route in Virginia, in 1845. Note the prices of fare, the distances traveled by canal boat and by stage, the particular inducements offered by the route and the competition with railroads.

No. 3. Sketch of a railroad train about 1830, from a gazetteer of the day. Note the character of the locomotive; the kinds of cars, and particularly the private carriage placed upon a flat-car.

No. 4. Sketch of a train (July 31, 1832), on the Mohawk and Hudson Railway. Reproduced from a cutting on black paper made at the time before the train started.

**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.**

However, there it was—a barge with a little house in it, viewed from the outside, and a caravan at a fair, viewed from within. . . .

We sat here, looking silently at the row of little tables, which extended down both sides of the cabin, and listening to the rain as it dripped and pattered on the boat, and plashed with a dismal merriment in the water, until the arrival of the railway train, for whose final contribution to our stock of passengers, our departure was alone deferred. It brought a good many boxes, which were bumped and tossed upon the roof, almost as painfully as if they had been deposited on one's own head, without the intervention of a porter's knot; and several damp gentlemen, whose clothes, on their drawing around the stove, began to steam again. No doubt it would have been a thought more comfortable if the driving rain, which now poured down more soakingly than ever, had admitted of a window being opened, or if our number had been something less than thirty; but there was scarcely time to think as much, when a train of three horses was attached to the tow-rope, the boy upon the leader smacked his whip, the rudder creaked and groaned complainingly, and we had begun our journey.

As it continued to rain most perseveringly, we all remained below; the damp gentlemen round the stove, gradually becoming mildewed by the action of the fire; and the dry gentlemen lying at full length upon the seats, or slumbering uneasily with their faces on the tables, or walking up and down the cabin, which it was barely possible for a man of the middle height to do, without making bald places on his head by scraping it against the roof. At about six o'clock, all the small tables were put together to form one long table, and everybody sat down to tea, coffee, bread, butter, salmon, shad, liver, steaks, potatoes, pickles, ham, chops, black-puddings and sausages. . . .

By the time the meal was over, the rain, which seemed to have worn itself out by coming down so fast, was nearly over too; and it became feasible to go on deck; which was a great relief, notwithstanding its being a very small deck, and being rendered still smaller by the luggage, which was heaped together in the middle under a tarpaulin covering; leaving, on either side, a path so narrow, that it became a science to walk to and fro without tumbling overboard into the canal. It was somewhat embarrassing at first, too, to have to duck nimbly every five minutes whenever the man at the helm cried "Bridge!" and sometimes, when the cry was "Low Bridge," to lie down nearly flat. But custom familiarizes one to anything, and there were so many bridges that it took a very short time to get used to this.

As night came on, and we drew in sight of the first range of hills, which are the outposts of the Allegheny Mountains, the scenery, which had been uninteresting hitherto, became more bold and striking. . . . The night was cloudy yet, but moonlight too; and when we crossed the Susquehanna river—over which there is an extraordinary wooden bridge with two galleries, one above the other, so that even there, two boat teams meeting, may pass without confusion—it was wild and grand.

I have mentioned my having been in some uncertainty and doubt, at first, relative to the sleeping arrangements on board this boat. I remained in the same vague state of mind until ten o'clock or thereabouts, when going below, I found suspended on either side of the cabin, three long tiers of hanging book-shelves, designed apparently for volumes of the small octavo size. Looking

with greater attention at these contrivances (wondering to find such literary preparations in such a place), I descried on each shelf a sort of microscopic sheet and blanket; then I began dimly to comprehend that the passengers were the library, and that they were to be arranged, edge-wise, on these shelves, till morning. . . .

As soon as any gentleman found his number, he took possession of it by immediately undressing himself and crawling into bed. . . . As to the ladies, they were already abed, behind the red curtain, which was carefully drawn and pinned up the centre; though as every cough, or sneeze, or whisper, behind this curtain was perfectly audible before it, we had still a lively consciousness of their society. . . .

Between five and six o'clock in the morning we got up, and some of us went on deck, to give them an opportunity of taking the shelves down; while others, the morning being very cold, crowded round the rusty stove, cherishing the newly kindled fire, and filling the grate with those voluntary contributions of which they had been so liberal all night [expectorations]. The washing accommodations were primitive. There was a tin ladle chained to the deck, with which every gentleman who thought it necessary (many were superior to this weakness), fished the dirty water out of the canal, and poured it into a tin basin, secured in like manner. There was also a jack-towel. And hanging up before a little looking-glass in the bar, in the immediate vicinity of the bread and cheese and biscuits, were a public comb and hair-brush.

At eight o'clock, the shelves being taken down and put away and the tables joined together, everybody sat down to [breakfast]. . . . When everybody had done with everything, the fragments were cleared away; and one of the waiters appearing anew in the character of a barber, shaved such of the company as desired to be shaved. . . .

The canal extends to the foot of the mountain, and there, of course, it stops; the passengers being conveyed across it by land carriage, and taken on afterwards by another canal boat. . . .

We had left Harrisburg on Friday. On Sunday morning we arrived at the foot of the mountain, which is crossed by railroad. There are ten inclined planes; five ascending, and five descending; the carriages are dragged up the former, and let slowly down the latter, by means of stationary engines; the comparatively level spaces between, being traversed, sometimes by horse, and sometimes by engine power, as the case demands. Occasionally the rails are laid upon the extreme verge of a giddy precipice; and looking from the carriage window, the traveller gazes sheer down, without a stone or fence between, into the mountain depths below. The journey is very carefully made, however, only two carriages travelling together; and while proper precautions are taken, is not to be dreaded for its dangers. . . .

It was amusing, too, when we had dined, and rattled down a steep pass, having no other moving power than the weight of the carriages themselves, to see the engine released, long after us, come buzzing down alone. . . . But it stopped short of us in a very business-like manner when we reached the canal; and before we left the wharf [for Pittsburgh], went panting up the hill again, with the passengers who had waited our arrival for the means of traversing the road by which we had come. . . . — Charles Dickens, *American Notes*, parts of chapters 9 and 10.



# Topic U 27. Slavery and Abolition, 1820-1850.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

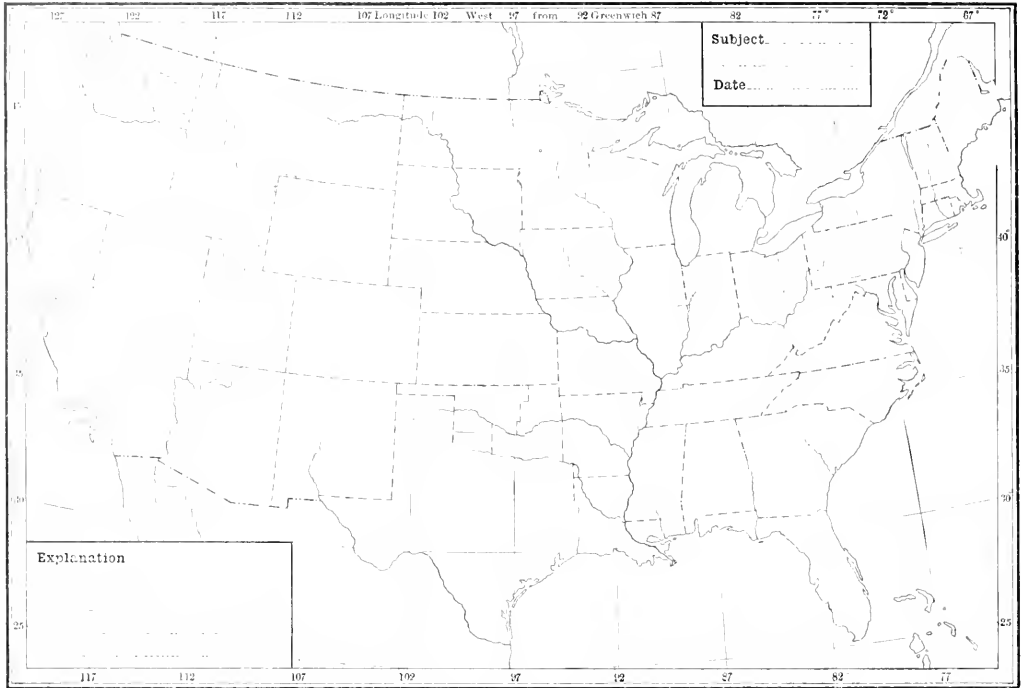
1. Review of History of Slavery. See Topics 21 and 23.
2. Review of Early Anti-slavery Movements.
3. Conditions of Slavery, 1820-1850.
  - a) Number of slaves at each census.
  - b) Distribution of slaves throughout the south.
  - c) Localities of large and small slave plantations.
  - d) Physical treatment of slaves: their huts, dress, food, etc. Compare with northern laborers and with European workmen.
  - e) Legal position of slaves: the property of master; laws requiring humane treatment of slaves; limitations upon slaves going from place to place, upon holding meetings, upon educating them.
  - f) Nat Turner's Rebellion in Virginia, 1831.
  - g) Varying descriptions of slave institutions by travellers in the south.
  - h) Traffic in slaves; domestic slave trade.
  - i) Economic advantages and disadvantages of slavery.
4. Position of Free Negroes.
  - a) Rapid increase in number of, owing to emancipation in north, and natural increase.
  - b) Not desired either north or south.
  - c) Unsuccessful attempts to colonize in Africa; negroes would not go.
  - d) Many restrictions upon them.
5. Foreign Slave Trade.
  - a) Forbidden after January 1, 1808.
  - b) Difficulty of stopping; slaves smuggled from Florida, Mexico and West Indies.
  - c) Slave trade made piracy, but death penalty never inflicted until 1862.
  - d) Numbers of slaves smuggled in.
6. New Anti-Slavery Movement, 1830-1840.
  - a) William Lloyd Garrison. His life; the Liberator, 1831-1865; Immediate and Uncompensated Emancipation; Abolitionism.
  - b) Organization of new radical anti-slavery societies: The American Anti-Slavery Society, 1833; local societies by the hundreds.
  - c) Anti-Slavery Propaganda:
    - 1) Purpose: to arouse the north and the slaveholders to the evils of slavery.
    - 2) Means: Pamphlets, books, newspapers, circulated by hundreds of thousands; by lectures throughout the country; by local societies; by petitions, especially against slavery and slave-trade in District of Columbia.
  - d) Attitude of Churches: Quakers early opposed to slavery; other denominations avoided question till about 1844, when several split upon the subject.
  - e) Anti-slavery movement in literature: many poems and other writings by Longfellow, Whittier, Lowell, Lydia Maria Child, Wendell Phillips, T. W. Higginson, etc.
7. Pro-Slavery Reaction in North.
 

General impulse: feeling that Missouri Compromise had settled question, and that further discussion would endanger the Union, and the extensive trade of North with South.

  - a) Opposition to negro schools.
  - b) Mobbing of anti-slavery leaders—Garrison, Birney, etc.; Lovejoy killed.
  - c) Destruction of property of negroes and of abolitionists; Pennsylvania Hall burned in Philadelphia in 1838.
8. Anti-Slavery Material in the Mails.
  - a) Great amount circulated.
  - b) Not distributed by postmasters in the South; Postmaster-General and Jackson upheld this action.
9. Anti-Slavery Measures in Congress.
  - a) Many petitions against slavery sent to Congress.
  - b) Gag-resolutions to commit these petitions without reading.
  - c) J. Q. Adams in House began fight for freedom of petition. Gag-resolutions finally set aside, 1844.
10. Anti-Slavery Movement in Politics.
  - a) Garrison and many abolitionists believed only in moral suasion; no political action on the subject.
  - b) James G. Birney the first great political anti-slavery leader.
  - c) Movement strong in the Northwest.
  - d) Organization of Liberty party in 1840; opposed slavery in general.
  - e) The free-soil party, 1844-1848; opposed to further extension of slavery in territories.
  - f) Other political leaders: S. P. Chase in Ohio; W. H. Seward in New York.
  - g) Later coalesced with Anti-Nebraska men and Anti-Slavery Whigs to form Republican party, 1854.
11. Results of Anti-Slavery Agitation.
  - a) Led north to believe slavery was wrong.
  - b) Led south to stronger insistence upon its righteousness.
  - c) Focused political action upon the struggle to preserve new western territories for freedom.
  - d) At last furnished a cause for secession.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trant, 281; Ashley, 335-336, 339-340; Channing, 399-402; Hart, 343-351; James & Sanford, 314-318; Johnston-MacDonald, see index under Abolitionists; Slavery; McLaughlin, 312-315; McMaster, 312-315; Montgomery, see index; Muzzey, 303-327.
- For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, Economic History, 251-265; Burgess, Middle Period, ch. 11; Elson, U. S., 509-513; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 6; Sparks, Men Who Made the Nation, ch. 11; Wilson, Division and Reunion, 116-132.
- For Topical Study.—
1. Hart, Slavery and Abolition, ch. 4; Rhodes, U. S., I, 53-75; Von Holst, II, 80-86.
  2. Hart, ch. 11; McMaster, U. S., V, 185-226.
  3. Hart, ch. 5, 7-8; McMaster, VI, ch. 76.
  4. Hart, ch. 16; Thorpe, Constitutional History of American People.
  5. Du Bois, Suppression of Slave Trade; Hart, ch. 9.
  6. Hart, ch. 12-17; Johnston, American Political History, II, 46-65; McMaster, VI, 70-78, 271-277; Schouler, IV, 202-229, 296-310, 341-343; Von Holst, II, 86-122, 219-224.
  7. Hart, ch. 12-18.
  8. Hart, ch. 17; McMaster, VI, 278-290; Von Holst, II, 120-139.
  9. Hart, ch. 18; Hart, National Ideals, ch. 4; McMaster, VI, 291-298, 383-386, ch. 68; Von Holst, II, 245-291, 466-508.
  11. Hart, Slavery and Abolition, ch. 21.
- Source References.—American History Leaflets, 10; Callender, Economic History, ch. 15 (economics of slavery); Hart, Source Book, 242-265; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 25-28; Johnston, American Orations, II, 102-122, 219-267; MacDonald, Documents, 301-305, 333-334; Old South Leaflets, 78-81, 140, 180.
- Biography.—Lives of Garrison, Birney, J. Q. Adams, Whittier.



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 27.

Show on the map the progress of emancipation in the Northern States.

### SOURCE-STUDY.

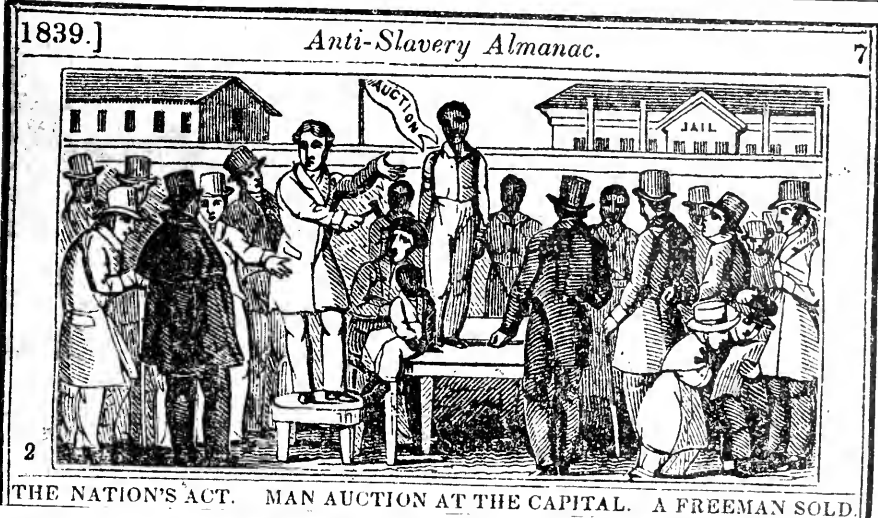
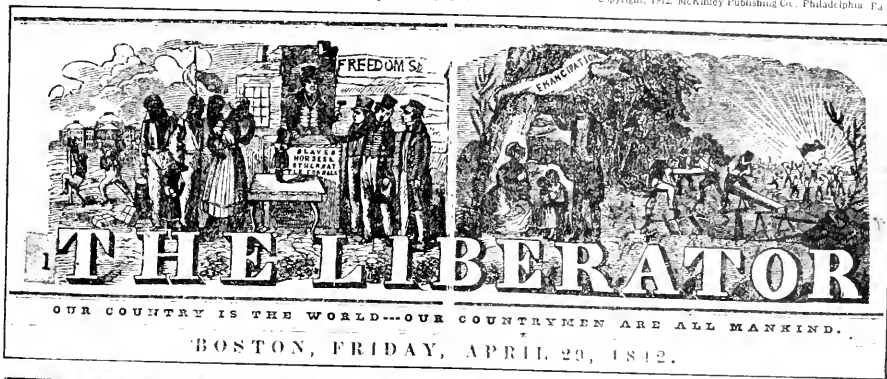
#### INCIDENTS OF SLAVERY.

The following extracts are taken from the descriptions of European travelers in America. While both of these writers were opposed to slavery, they were fairly accurate in their statements of facts.

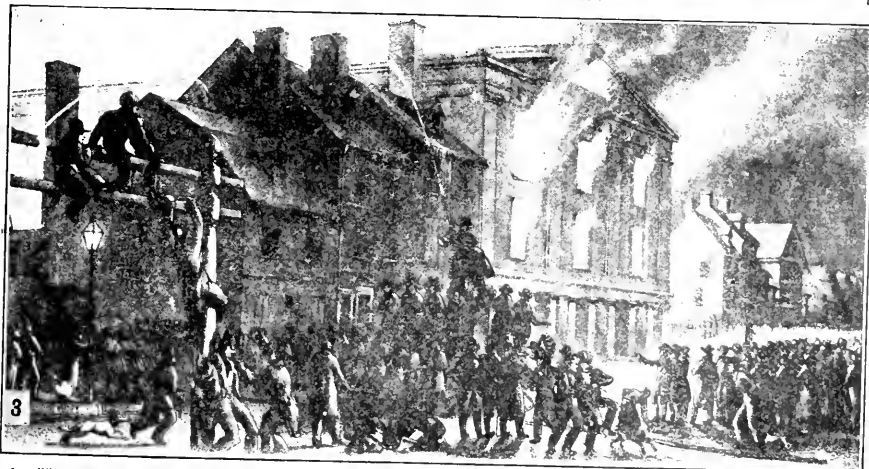
On the other side of the river I came to a plantation where I met with the owner himself, who was a clergyman. He conducted me through the slave village, and talked to me about the happiness of the negro slaves, which convinced me that he himself was a slave of Mammon. Certain it is that under a good master they are far from unhappy, and much better provided for than the poor working people of Europe. But under a wicked master they have fallen into direful and hopeless misery. Sophists, who are determined to see only the sunny side of the picture, deny absolutely that such are ever to be found. But I have already both heard and seen enough of them. That which the North testifies against the South I will not believe; but that which the South testifies against itself I am compelled to believe. Besides, the best master is no justification of slavery, for the best master dies sooner or later, and his slaves are then sold to the highest bidder, like cattle. The slaves out in the fields present a joyless appearance; their dark color and their gray dress, without a single white or colored garment to enliven it, give them a gloomy and dull appearance. I must, however, mention as an exception the knitted cotton caps of the men, which have generally a couple of red or blue stripes knitted into

the gray ground-color. At work in the field, they look like figures of earth. Quite different is the appearance of our peasants in their white linen, their showy, ornamental attire [in Sweden]. The slave villages, on the other hand, as I have already remarked, have rather a comfortable appearance, excepting that one very rarely sees glass in the windows of their houses. The windows generally consist of a square opening, which is closed with a shutter. But so also are those in the houses of the poor white people, and in Carolina there are many such to be met with. In the room one sees, nearly always, a couple of logs burning on the hearth, and the household furniture and little provision stores resemble those which are to be found in the homes of our poorest people in town and country [of Sweden]. Here and there, however, one sees more attention paid to the house; a little ornament about it, together with well-supplied beds. Every house has a pig-sty, in which there is generally a very fat pig; and many hens and chickens swarm about the garden-plot, in which they grow Indian corn, beans, and different kinds of roots. These little plots, however, do not look very well attended to. The slaves sell eggs and chickens, and every Christmas their pig also, and thus obtain a little money to buy treacle, or molasses (of which they are very fond), biscuits, and other eatables. They often lay up money; and I have heard speak of slaves who possess several hundred dollars. This money they generally place out at interest in the hands of their masters, whom, when they are good, they regard as their best friends, and who

(Continued on Page 4.)



THE NATION'S ACT. MAN AUCTION AT THE CAPITAL. A FREEMAN SOLD.



- No. 1. The heading of "The Liberator," as used in the forties.  
 No. 2. The abolitionists flooded the country with hundreds of thousands of their publications. Often the appeal was put forth in the form of an almanac through which were scattered pictures, and anti-slavery sentiments and arguments, as well as the usual weather predictions. The favorite picture was one depicting a slave auction, as above.  
 No. 3. The burning of Pennsylvania Hall, Philadelphia, on May 17, 1838, from an engraving by John Sartain. The hall was erected by the abolitionists at a cost of \$10,000, and on the day after the first meetings were held in the hall, it was destroyed by a mob, which prevented the firemen from putting out the fire.

**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.**

really are so. All the slave villages which I saw perfectly resemble each other, only that some of the houses are better, and others worse kept. The slaves are under the management of one or two overseers, appointed by the master, and under these there is, for each village, a driver, who wakes the slaves in the morning, or drives them to work when they are late. The driver is always a negro, and is often the most cruel and the most severe man in the whole plantation; for when the negro is unmerciful, he is so in a high degree, and he is the worst torment of the negroes. Free negroes who are possessed of slaves—and there are such—are commonly the worst of masters. So, at least, I have been told by trustworthy persons. . . .

One of these friends of humanity had advanced to a negro woman a little capital, which enabled her, by her own labor, not only to pay monthly interest to her owner for the money he had paid for her, but by which she had the means of purchasing the freedom of four of her children; the fifth had yet to be purchased, but even this one, also, would shortly be free, through the help of a benevolent man. And who does not admire this slave, who thinks nothing of continuing herself a slave, but merely of purchasing the freedom—of emancipating her children? Such a mother would, in the times of Athens and Sparta, have been proclaimed as "an honor to humanity." But this mother remains an unknown slave. It is true that she feels herself well off in her situation, and does not wish for a freedom which at her age could not be obtained but at the exchange of a life free from care, for one much harder—at least in Liberia. "When I am old," said she, "and no longer able to work, master and mistress will take care of me!" So think many old slaves, and do not trouble themselves about a freedom in which they would have to take care of themselves. And this is good when the master and mistress are good, and do not die before the old slaves, in which case the fate of these is very uncertain, and becomes sometimes, under new masters, worse than that of the domestic animals. . . .

A pretty little village on the plantation [in Florida] is the home of the black nurse of the gentleman of the houses, and there she rests from her labors, under circumstances which testify the tenderest care. She has her own neat little house, on a terrace by the river, and within it every convenience that an old person can desire; a comfortable rocking-chair is even among these, and children and children's children, whom she has faithfully nursed, visit her with love and presents. She has had many children of her own, but she acknowledged that the white children were dearest to her; and this affection of the black nurses, or foster-mothers, to the children of the whites is a well-known fact. Another fact also, which is often witnessed in the slave states, is the tender care which is bestowed upon these faithful black foster-mothers in their old age by the family, that is to say, when the families are able. . . .

One of these negro schools [in Charleston, S. C.], was for the children of free negroes. It was kept by a white master, and with open doors. I saw here an assembly of colored children, of all shades between raven black and almost perfect white. The school-books, which I desired to see, were the same as those in use in the American schools for the children of the whites. . . .

I had also heard speak of secret schools for the children of slaves, but had extreme difficulty in discovering such an one, and when I had discovered one, to gain admittance into it, so great was the dread of the law's severity, which forbids, under a heavy punishment, the instruction of a slave in reading and writing. And when

I did gain admittance into this secret chamber, I found in a wretched dark hole only half a dozen poor children, some with an aspect that testified the greatest stupidity and mere animal life. They had evidently been brought hither as an attempt to humanize them.—Frederika Bremer, *The Homes of the New World*, I, 295, 297, 363, II, 210-211, 487-488, 499.

In the black population I observed no peculiarities worthy of remark. As in other towns, the slaves engaged in domestic service appeared to be well treated, and generally content; but those belonging to the neighboring plantations, and engaged in out-door occupations, were as ill-clad, dirty, and miserable in appearance, as over-worked and under-fed laborers were likely to be. We saw here, more than elsewhere as I thought, a number of children, from the ages of four to seven, playing about the streets under the care of negro boys and girls but little older than themselves. . . . But the little whites soon learn their own superiority, and make great progress in the art of tormenting and abusing their black guardians. . . .

We saw here, [Augusta, Ga.] a number of waggons and carts, in which negroes had been brought from the North, on their way from Virginia. . . . The price of a common field negro we ascertained to be from 800 to 1000 dollars; of an artisan, a carpenter, or smith, 1500 dollars; and of a smart active boy of fourteen, about 500 dollars; women of an age to begin the bearing of children, from 600 to 800 dollars, according to their good appearance and strength of constitution. The manner in which they were huddled together for conveyance, was greatly inferior in comfort to that in which sheep, calves, and hogs are carried to market. . . .

A planter from Carolina, travelling with his son and daughter, had purchased a negro from another white man, and employed him as the driver of his carriage. The person selling the negro, happened to know that the gentleman purchasing him had a large sum of money with him, to the amount, it is said of 8000 dollars, and he conceived the diabolical plan of hiring the slave to murder his new master, and seize his wealth, on condition that the negro should have a share of the plunder, and receive his freedom besides! The slave readily assented to this, and watching his opportunity while all three of the party were asleep on a sultry afternoon, he took a small axe, with which he had provided himself, and beat out the brains, first of the father and then of the son and daughter. In these lonely roads, there being no one near, he had time to drag the bodies separately into a neighboring ditch, and there leave them, while he went off with the empty carriage in another direction. He was soon, however, arrested; the traces of blood on the road having led to the discovery of the bodies and the detection of the murder. When brought to trial, he confessed his guilt, and stated the facts already mentioned, as to the instigation to this act being given by his former master and the conditions of reward promised him for its commission. But, by the laws of this and other Slave States, the testimony of a negro cannot be received in any case against a white man; and therefore, though the general opinion was that the negro was speaking truth—as the bad character of his former master rendered it more probable that he should be the instigator of the murder for the sake of the plunder, than that the negro should have committed such a deed on a whole family, in whose service he had been but a few days,—yet a negro's evidence against a white man cannot be legally taken; so that the instigator escaped all punishment, while the negro was hanged. . . .—Buckingham, *The Slave States of America*, II, 28, 43-44, 112, 168-169.

## Topic U 28. Economic Advance, Intellectual Life, and Social Movements, 1820-1850.

### OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Early Influence of Industrial Revolution upon United States. Substitution of machines for human labor; the factory system; growth of a laboring class; increase in city population.
2. New Inventions. Study life of any one great inventor.
  - a) Cotton-gin—Eli Whitney, 1793.
  - b) Improvements in spinning and weaving cotton and wool.
  - c) Steam-boats and steam locomotives. See Topic 26.
  - d) Mower and reaper—McCormick (1834).
  - e) Revolver—Colt (1835).
  - f) Screw propeller—Ericsson (1836).
  - g) Vulcanizing rubber—Goodyear (1839).
  - h) Photography—Draper after Daguerre.
  - i) Electric telegraph—Henry, Morse, Vail; particularly Morse (1844).
  - j) Ether, painless surgery—Morton (1846).
  - k) Sewing machine—Howe (1846).
  - l) Steam cylinder printing press—Hoe (1847).
3. Foreign Commerce of United States to 1850.
  - a) Situation at close of Revolutionary War—Americans cut out of their old trade with West Indies.
  - b) Failure to obtain satisfactory treaty on subject with England until 1830; efforts of John Adams, Jay, Monroe, J. Q. Adams, etc.
  - c) Profitable commerce during war between France and England until 1806.
  - d) Effects of French decrees, English orders in council, and our own embargo and non-intercourse acts.
  - e) Steady growth up to 1840.
  - f) Period of great prosperity, 1840-1860. American clippers and packet ships; great superiority of American wooden sailing vessels.
  - g) Articles carried; and countries traded with.
  - h) Decline of American marine with introduction of steam propulsion; and of iron vessels.
4. Literary Awakening.
  - a) In poetry, Longfellow, Whittier, Lowell, Holmes, Poe.
  - b) In history—Baneroft, Prescott, Motley, Parkman.
  - c) In prose—Emerson, Thoreau.
5. Educational Advance.
  - a) Existence of public school system in New England.
  - b) National provision for education in the territories by granting one-thirty-sixth (later one-eighteenth) of the public lands for school purposes. Most munificent grant for education ever made.
  - c) Spread of common school system into the west, and from there into the older eastern states of New York, Pennsylvania, etc.
  - d) Work of Horace Mann.
  - e) Establishment of high schools, normal schools, lengthening of school term; improvement of school buildings and text-books; improvement of teaching force; educational journals founded.
5. A Period of Social Experiments.
  - a) Theories of socialism and communism.
  - b) Establishment of many such communities; Brook Farm, Economy, etc. Generally failed.
  - c) Mormons: Origin of sect; beliefs and practices; early settlement in Illinois; removal to Utah.
6. Social Reforms.
  - a) Reform of prisons.
  - b) Abolition of imprisonment for debt.
  - c) Abolition of cruel punishments.
  - d) Temperance movement.
  - e) Woman suffrage movement.
  - f) Anti-slavery agitation.
7. Religious Life.
  - a) A period of great activity in the churches.
  - b) American Bible Society—a Bible in every home.
  - c) Western circuit riders and
  - d) Great religious meetings; revival meetings; camp meetings.
  - e) Missionary activities; foreign and at home.

### REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 265-270, 350; Ashley, 322-334; Channing, 377-390; Hart, 338-343; James & Sanford, 353-357; Johnston-MacDonald, 295-297, 309-310, 333-334; McLaughlin, 382-384; McMaster, 289-292; Montgomery, 241-248, 262-265; Muzzy, 289-291.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, *Economic History*, 130-169, 217-237; Coman, *Industrial History*, 232-268; Elson, *U. S.*, 616-623; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 24; Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, 102-115.

For Topical Study.—

1. MacDonald, *Jacksonian Democracy*, ch. 1; McMaster, *U. S.*, VII, ch. 73, 75, 76; Wright, *Industrial Revolution*, ch. 10.

2. McMaster, VII, 125-135; Shaler, *U. S.*, II, 134-140; Wilson, *American People*, IV, 72-75, 132-134; Wright, ch. 11.

3. Clark, *Clipper Ship Era*; Johnson, *Elements of Transportation*, ch. 24.

4. Hart, *Slavery and Abolition*, 26-32; Shaler, II, 395-409, see also histories of American literature.

5. Hart, 20-25; McMaster, VII, 157-162; Shaler, II, 309-322.

6. Hart, 15-18; McMaster, VI, 95-113, 219-223; VII, 112-146, 208-220; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 31-33.

7. Hart, 7-11; MacDonald, 274-275; McMaster, VII, 116-189.

8. Hart, 11-15.

Source References.—Callender, *Economic History*, ch. 7, 9; Caldwell and Persinger, 379-396.

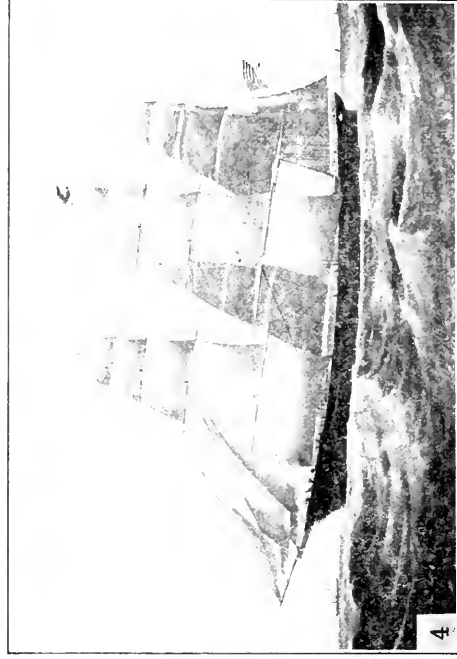
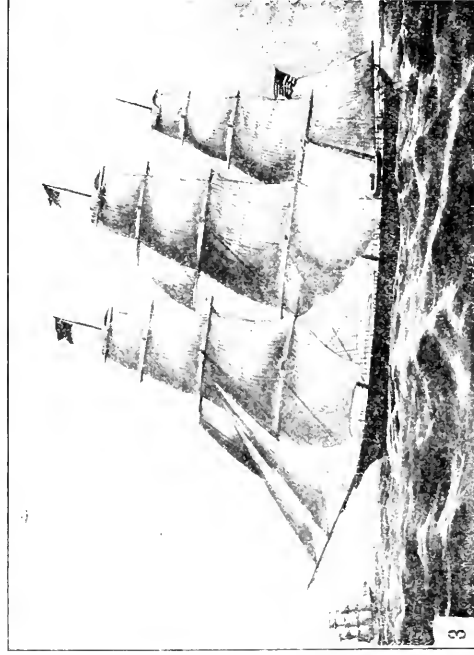
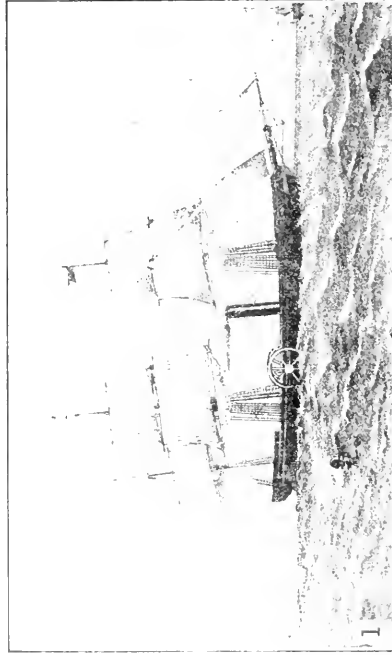
### SOURCE-STUDY.

#### THE WORK OF HORACE MANN.

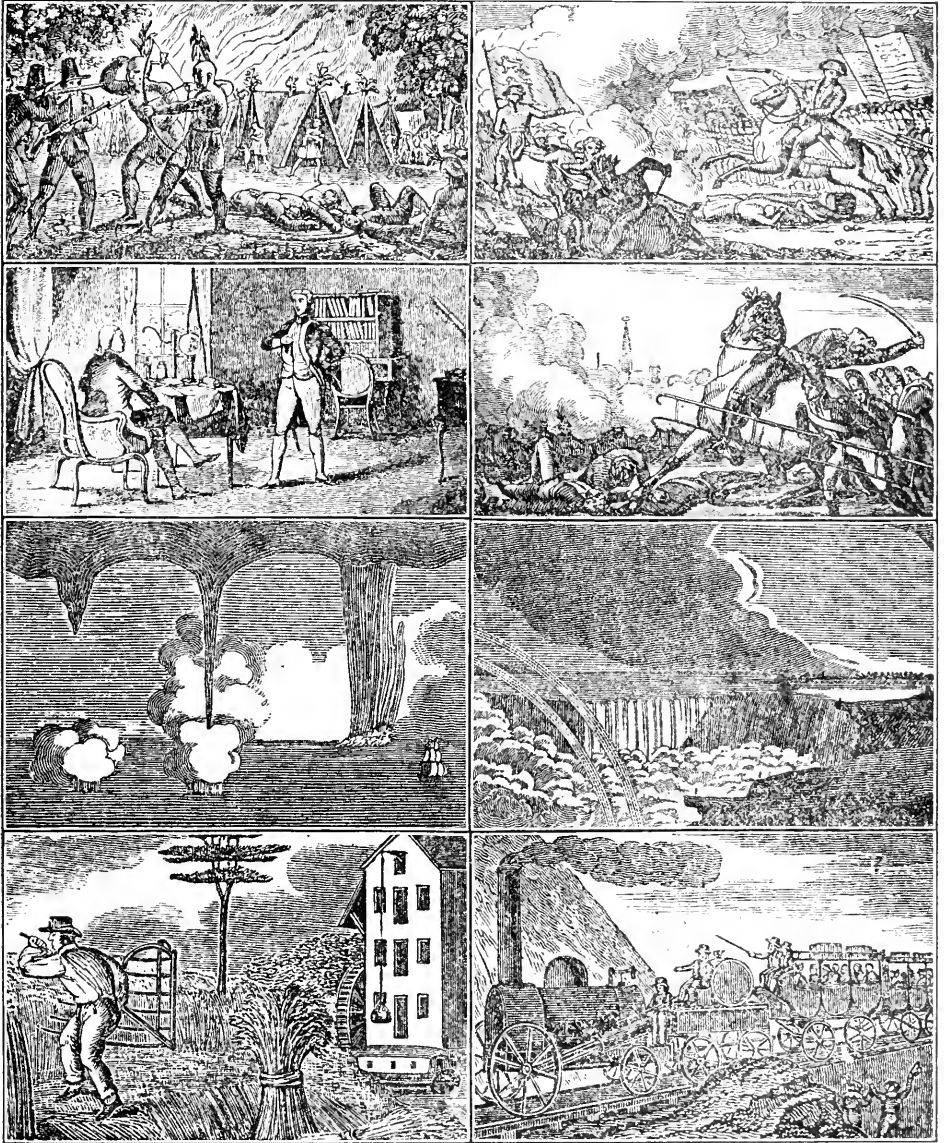
No American educator did so much for the improvement of the common school system of the country as Horace Mann. It is fitting that every school pupil should know of his work. The following extracts are not true source-material, but are recent accounts of Mann's contributions to American school history.

When the villages began to catch the urban spirit and establish graded schools with a full annual session there came a demand for a higher order of teacher—the professional teacher, in short. This caused a comparison of ideals and the most enlightened in the community began an agitation of the school question, and supervision was demanded. In Massachusetts, where the urban civilization had made most progress, this agitation resulted in the formation of a State board of education in 1837 and the employment of Horace Mann as its secretary (June, 1837). . . . Horace Mann came to the head of education in Massachusetts just at the beginning of this epoch of railroads and the growth of cities. He attacked with unsparring severity the evils of the schools as he found them, these evils being chiefly the survivals of the rural-school epoch. The school-district system, introduced into Connecticut in 1701, into Rhode Island about 1750, and into Massachusetts in 1780, was pronounced by Horace Mann to be the most disastrous feature in the whole history of educational legislation in Massachusetts. Side by side with the new impulse given to education in the

(Continued on Page 4.)



- No. 1. The Savannah, the first vessel fitted with steam to cross the Atlantic (1819). The steam power was used for only a part of the voyage; note the unprotected paddle-wheels. Reproduced by courtesy of the *Master, Mate and Pilot*, New York.
- No. 2. A typical vessel of the middle century with auxiliary steam power; the United States steam frigate "Mississippi," upon which Commodore M. C. Perry sailed to Japan, 1852-1854.
- No. 3. The clipper-ship "Young America," built for the California trade around Cape Horn. Reproduced by permission from Clark's *The Clipper Ship Era*, published by Longmans, Green and Co., New York and London.
- No. 4. The "Sovereign of the Seas," another California clipper-ship. From Clark's *The Clipper Ship Era*.



This page presents a series of pictures from early text-books, showing the character of illustrations furnished to school children in the period 1820-1840.

The four upper engravings are taken from a school history of the United States (1842), and show the destruction of the Pequot Indians, the battle of Cowpens, Lafayette offering his services to Franklin, and the Battle of New Orleans with the wounding of the English general.

The next two pictures are taken from a geography published in 1827, and depict the horrors of water-spouts on the ocean, and the beauty of Niagara Falls.

The lower two cuts are from a geography of 1836, one shows the manner of harvesting wheat with a cradle, the mill for grinding the grain being situated in convenient proximity, and the canal boat ready to carry away the barrelled flour; the other is a sketch of a railroad train of the time.



**SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.**

villages, no doubt the district system seemed very bad. Its evils were manifest in the opposition to central graded schools which were needed in the populous villages, but which would break up the old district lines. Local power is never given up to a central power without a struggle. . . . Horace Mann's efforts did not at once abolish the district system in Massachusetts, but they prevailed to consolidate districts in populous sections of the State. His school reports were widely read outside of the State, and spread the agitation of the school question into Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, and elsewhere. Connecticut succeeded in abolishing her district system in 1856, but Massachusetts clung to it until 1869, after several vain attempts to get rid of it. . . .

Horace Mann extended his criticisms and suggestions to the examination of teachers, and their instruction in institutes; to the improvement of school buildings; the raising of school funds by taxation; the creation of a correct public opinion in school questions; the care for vicious youth in appropriate schools. He discarded the hidebound text-book method of teaching and substituted the oral discussion of the topic in place of the memorizing of the words of the book. He encouraged school libraries and school apparatus.

Horace Mann's influence aided in founding the first normal school in the United States at Lexington . . . and a second one at Barre, both in 1839, and a third one at Bridgewater in the fall of the next year. . . . The establishment of a State-board of education and the appointment of Horace Mann as its secretary . . . mark an era of return from the extreme of individualism to the proper union of local and central authority in the management of schools. . . . The first report of Horace Mann, as secretary, was made in 1837 and contains the best statement ever made of the duties of school committees, especially in the selection of teachers. It sets forth the apathy of the people regarding the schools and regrets the employment of incompetent teachers.

There was a supplementary report on school houses which discussed the matter of ventilation and warming, the proper kind of desks, the location of the building, the lighting of the room, the playgrounds, and the duties of the teacher in regard to light and ventilation.

In the second report, 1838, there is much discussion of the method of teaching reading. . . . A just criticism is made upon the character of school reading books.

In the third report, 1839, he discusses the responsibility of the people for the improvement in common schools, the employment of children in manufactories, the importance of libraries, and the kind of books needed, the effect of reading on the formation of character, and recommends strongly the establishment of school-district libraries.

The fourth, 1840, points out the desirability of union schools for the sake of grading and classifying the pupils and cheapening the cost of instruction. . . .

The fifth report, 1841, . . . showed how education awakened thought, increased the resources of the individual, opening his eyes to the possibility of combinations not seen by the uneducated.

In his sixth report, 1842, he presents the subject of physiology and its importance as a branch to be taught in the schools.

The seventh report, 1843, records his observations in European schools, and starts endless questions regarding the methods of organization and instruction, bringing into light the questions of corporal punishment and the overcultivation of the memory of words. . . .

In the eighth report, 1844, he treats of the employment of female teachers and of the method of conducting teachers' institutes, teachers' associations, and the study of vocal music.

In his ninth report, 1845, he discusses the motives to which the teacher should appeal, describes the school vices to be avoided, points out the transcendent importance of moral instruction, and shows how obedience should be secured by affection and respect and not by fear. . . .

The tenth report, 1846, gives the history of the common-school system of Massachusetts. . . .

The eleventh report, 1847, makes a strong presentation of the power of the common schools to redeem the State from social evils and crimes.

The twelfth and last report of Horace Mann presents anew the capacity of the common-school system to improve the pecuniary condition and elevate the intellectual, moral, and religious character of the Commonwealth. . . .

He shows the importance of religion and the reading of the Bible in the common school; shows the importance of health and the necessity of providing for physical training in the schoolroom; sets forth the necessity of the schools for the political education of the citizen. . . .

In conclusion, I suggest again the thought of Mr. Mann as a character inspired with missionary zeal to reform society by means of the school system. It was this missionary zeal that led him to advocate in the Massachusetts legislature the first insane asylum and secure its establishment; to favor establishment of asylums for deaf, dumb, and blind; to secure normal schools, humane school discipline, methods of instruction that appeal to the child's interest and arouse him to self-activity, and finally to devote the evening of his life to the Antioch College experiment.—

Article by W. T. Harris, U. S. Commissioner of Education, in *Report of Commissioner for 1895-'96*, pp. 887-897.

In nothing was the educational statesmanship of Horace Mann more evident than in his immediate grasp of the situation, his estimate of the points of attack, and his commanding influence over the foremost public men, and wise manipulation of the legislature of the Commonwealth during his entire administration. Already an eminent lawyer and rising statesman, a man of mark, who had risen from humble estate by his own energy, well informed concerning the New England life of the period, he needed little of pedagogic preparation for his new work. He well understood the art of the popular reformer, at once to magnify the dangers of the situation and the corresponding importance of his own office and measures. His tremendous arraignment of the condition of popular education in the State was rather the thundering of a great educational revolutionist than a strictly accurate account of what really existed. It underestimated as he always did underrate the force of the private, secondary and higher education that made the Massachusetts of sixty years ago in some respects the foremost of American Commonwealths, and emphasized the support of popular education as the soul of a people's civilization. But while in discussion he wielded without apology all the weapons of the educational agitator, he was in public policy conservative, cautious, careful to preserve what was already worth the saving, and only to add new features, according to the ability and disposition of people to accept and the probability of their permanent support.—A. D. Mayo, *Common School Systems, 1830-1865*, in *Report of Commissioner of Education of U. S., 1897-'98*, pp. 358-359.



# Topic U 29. Texas and Compromise of 1850; (1841-1852).

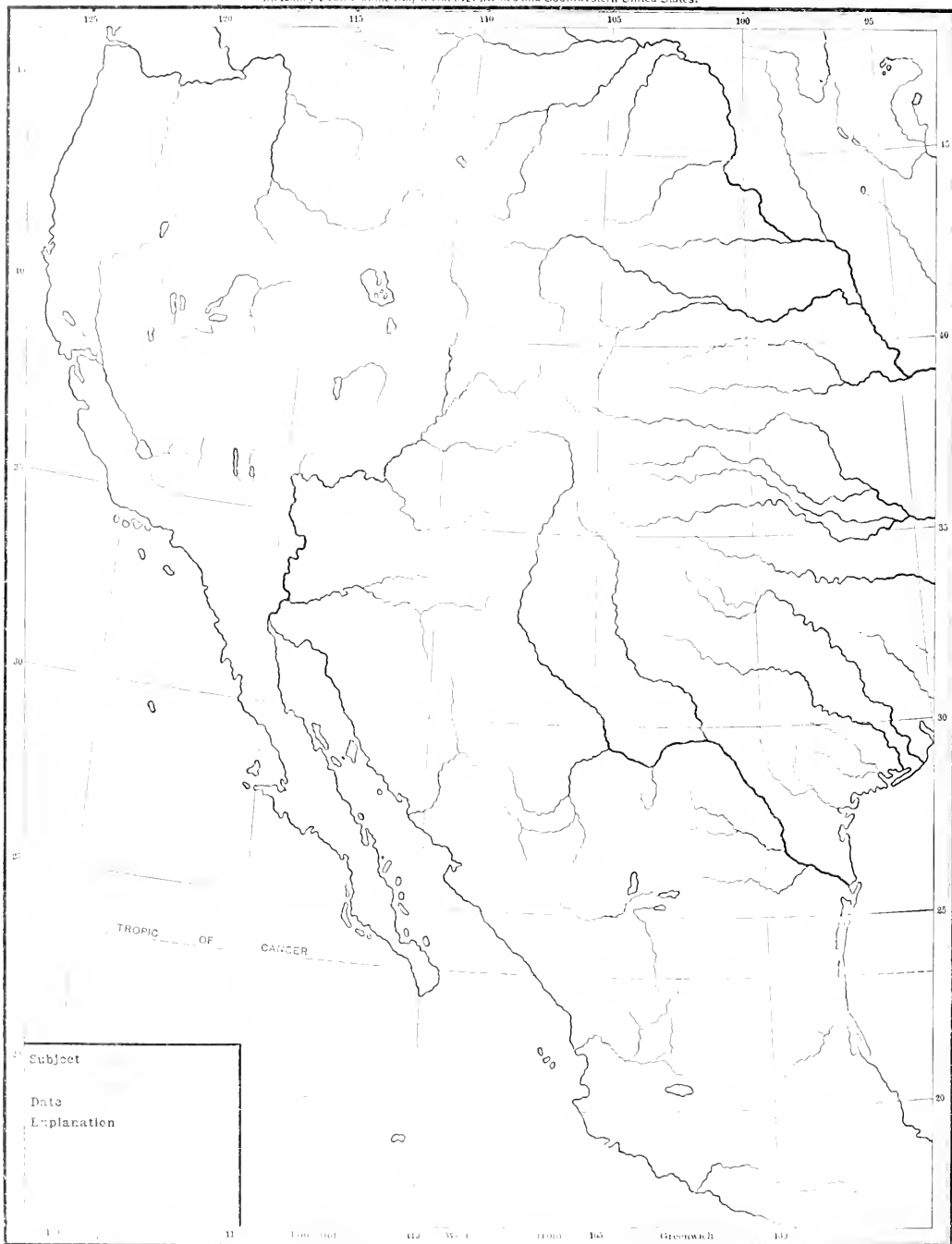
## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Election of 1840: candidates; character of campaign; results.
2. Whig Supremacy.
  - a) Controlled President, Senate, and House.
  - b) Planned broad national development; a bank, internal improvements, etc. Clay's "American Policy."
  - c) Death of Harrison, April 4, 1841.
  - d) Tyler: character, and preceding political life.
3. Tyler's Break with Whigs.
  - a) Refused to accept their bank bills.
  - b) Cabinet resigned; little accomplished thereafter.
  - c) Tariff of 1842.
  - d) Webster-Ashburton treaty, 1842.
4. The Texan Situation.
  - a) Review of early history of Texas.
  - b) Movement to annex to United States, 1837-1845.
  - c) Tyler in 1844 negotiated a treaty for this purpose.
  - d) Surprise of the politicians.
  - e) Oregon united with Texan question.
5. Campaign of 1844.
  - a) Democrats: re-annexation of Texas; re-occupation of Oregon.
  - b) Whigs; Henry Clay again.
  - c) Liberty and free-soil parties.
  - d) Election of Polk.
6. The Mexican War:
  - a) Causes: Annexation of Texas (March, 1845), and occupation by United States of disputed territory; claims of American citizens for damages sustained in Mexico; desire for more slave territory; refusal of Mexico to sell California to United States.
  - b) Campaigns:
    - 1) To occupy and protect disputed lands; General Taylor.
    - 2) To seize California and New Mexico; General Kearney, Commodore Stockton, Colonel Fremont.
    - 3) Attack on City of Mexico to conquer a peace; under General Scott.
  - c) Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, February 2, 1848.
  - d) Results of War:
    - 1) Territorial.
    - 2) Political; Defeat of Democrats, 1848; Unpopularity of war; Lowell's *Bigelow Papers*.
7. Slavery in the territories.
  - a) Review of attitude of United States government toward slavery in the territories.
  - b) The Wilmot Proviso, 1846. To exclude slavery from any territory acquired from Mexico.
  - c) Oregon settlement:
    - 1) Boundaries settled by treaty of 1846.
    - 2) Territorial government established, August, 1848, forbidding slavery.
  - d) Proposals respecting slavery in territory obtained from Mexico.
    - 1) Forbid it in all.
    - 2) Permit it in all.
    - 3) Extend Missouri Compromise Line to Pacific.
    - 4) Squatter sovereignty.
    - 5) Leave it to courts to decide.
8. Election of 1848.
  - a) Parties and candidates.
  - b) Election of Taylor (a slave-holding Whig) and Fillmore.
9. California and Discovery of Gold. (See also Topic 31.)
  - a) Establishment of civil government in California.
  - b) Discovery of Gold, 1848.
  - c) Effect upon California; great influx of immigrants; 49'ers.
  - d) Government: vigilance committees; territorial and state government; application for admission.
10. Compromise of 1850.
  - a) The matters which needed settlement:
    - 1) Slavery in new territory.
    - 2) Return of fugitive slaves.
    - 3) Slavery in District of Columbia
    - 4) Admission of California.
    - 5) The public debt of Texas.
  - b) The prominent men taking part in discussions:
    - 1) The old school: Clay, Webster, Calhoun, all believed compromise possible.
    - 2) The new anti-slavery leaders—Seward, Chase, Giddings, etc.
    - 3) The new slavery leaders—Stephens, Davis, Douglas, Foote, etc.
  - c) Clay's proposals; the Omnibus Bill.
  - d) Death of Taylor; effect.
  - e) Terms of compromise as adopted:
    - 1) California admitted as free state.
    - 2) Squatter sovereignty in remainder of Mexican cession.
    - 3) Slave trade (not slavery) forbidden in District of Columbia.
    - 4) More stringent fugitive slave act.
    - 5) Texas given \$10,000,000.
  - f) Finality of Compromise. Discussion in 1850-52 as to whether the compromise was a final settlement of dispute.
  - g) What compromise accomplished:
    - 1) Broke equality of representation of sections in the Senate.
    - 2) Delayed secession movement.
    - 3) Introduced squatter sovereignty idea.
    - 4) Led to difficulties over fugitive slave act.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 290-312; Ashley, 339-354; Channing, 411-438; Harl, 353-381; James & Sanford, 320-340; Johnston-MacDonald, 301-308, 311-332; McLaughlin, 348-382; McMaster, 316-343; Montgomery, 244-262; Muzzey, 328-364.
- For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, *Middle Period*, ch. 13-17; Dewey, *Financial History*, 234-256; Elson, *U. S.*, 513-548; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 25-28; Sparks, *U. S.*, II, ch. 7-9; Stanwood, *History of Presidency*, ch. 17, 18; Tausig, *Tariff History*, 112-154; Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, 133-178.
- For Topical Study.—
1. Garrison, *Westward Expansion*, ch. 3; McMaster, *U. S.*, VI, ch. 69; Schouler, *IV*, 328-341; Von Holst, *U. S.*, II, 371-405; Wilson, *American People*, IV, 81-93.
  2. McMaster, VI, 600-704.
  3. Garrison, ch. 4; McMaster, VI, 604-637; Schouler, *IV*, 372-375; Von Holst, II, 406-440; Wilson, *IV*, 93-102.
  4. Garrison, ch. 1-2, 6-8; McMaster, VII, 304-331; Rhodes, *U. S.*, I, 75-87; Schouler, *IV*, 246-256, 441-470, 481-488; Von Holst, II, 548-714; III, 1-115, 198-238; Wilson, *IV*, 100-110.
  5. Garrison, ch. 9; McMaster, VII, 271-331, ch. 78-79; Schouler, *IV*, 465-469, 471-478; Wilson, *IV*, 110-113.
  6. Garrison, ch. 13-15; McMaster, VII, ch. 80, 82; Schouler, *IV*, 518-550, V, 1-61; Von Holst, III, 239-290, 328-348; Wilson, III, 117-122.
  7. Garrison, ch. 16, 19; Johnston, *American Political History*, II, 82-100; McMaster, VII, ch. 81; Rhodes, I, 93-98; Schouler, *IV*, 543-546, V, 65-70, 91-99, 114-119; Von Holst, III, 285-328, 348-401; Wilson, III, 122-128.
  8. Garrison, ch. 17; McMaster, VII, ch. 83; Schouler, *V*, 100-114; Von Holst, III, 348-401.

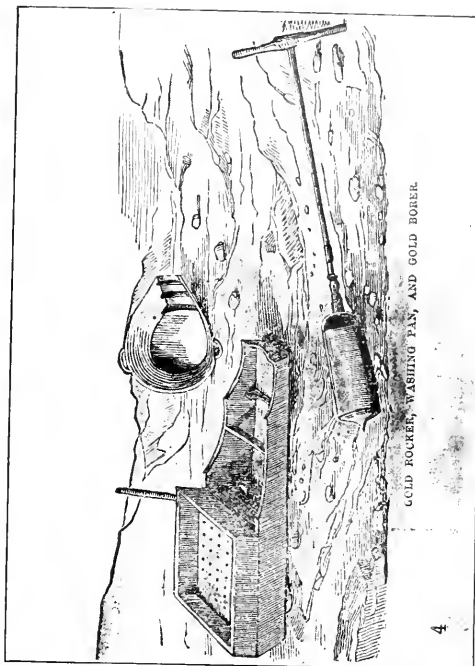
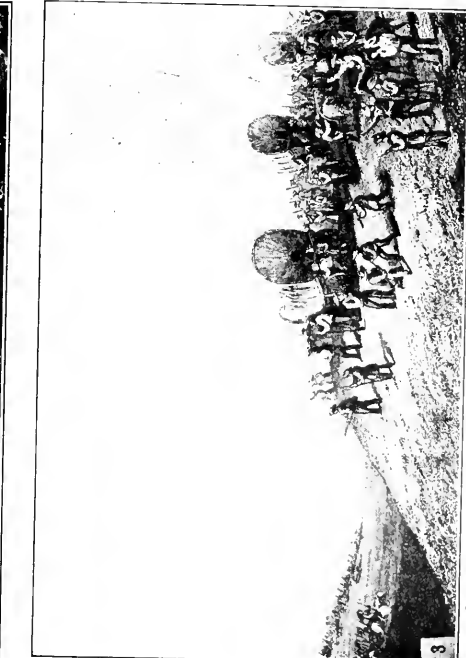
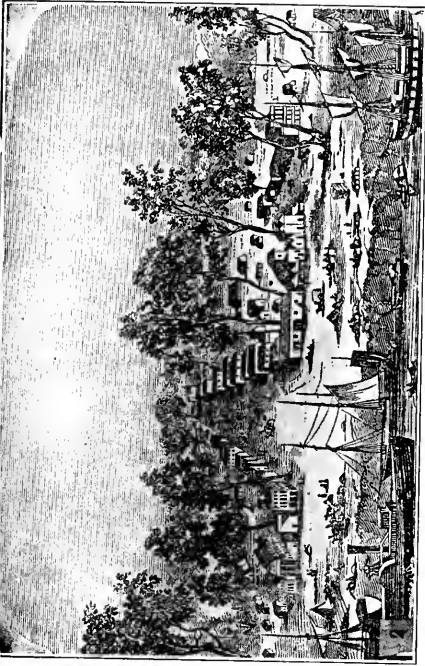
(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright 1901-1902 McKinty Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 29.

Show (a) territory obtained from Mexico; (b) Routes of Fremont and Kearney. See (a) Adams and Trent, 303; Ashley, 345; Hart, 362, 376; James and Sanford, 338; Labberton, 61; MacCoun, 1818; McLaughlin, 370; McMaster, 333 (good); Montgomery, Student's, 388; Muzzey, 312, 350; Scudder, 297; Shepherd, 198; Thomas, 292. (b) McMaster, 330; Montgomery, Leading Facts, 253; Muzzey, 343; Shepherd, 201.



- No. 1. A scene on the prairies where the herds of buffalo flourished. The view shows the rolling character of the ground; the great number of buffaloes in sight at one time, and the way in which the buffaloes scattered over the land while grazing. From a government publication.
- No. 2. A view of Sacramento City, California, about 1832, showing the city's development upon the site of Sutter's mill and fort, where gold was first discovered. From a contemporary print.
- No. 3. Another scene, almost as common as the buffaloes on the prairies, was that of bands of hostile Indians. The view shows the men preparing to defend the caravan of prairie schooners. From Gregg's Commerce of the Prairies (1810).
- No. 4. Implements used in gold mining. A boiler, used in searching for gold-bearing earth; a washing-pan, for use by one man, and a rocker or cradle, operated by three men, one putting in earth, one water and the third rocking the machine.

# REFERENCES.—Continued.

9. McMaster, VII, ch. 85; Schouler, V, 130-116; Sparks, Expansion, ch. 28; Von Holst, III, 102-156.
10. Garrison, ch. 20; Johnston, II, 130-126; Rhodes, I, ch. 2, and pp. 207, 241; Schouler, V, 147-214; T. C. Smith, Parties and Slavery, ch. 1-2; Von Holst, III, 156-562; Wilson, III, 134-111.
11. Garrison, ch. 5, II, 18; Johnston, II, 66-81; Rhodes, I, 199-205; Von Holst, III, 29-60, 139-197.
- Source References.—Caldwell and Persinger, 399-116; Hart, Source Book, 266-281; Hart, Contemporaries, III, ch. 29; IV, ch. 2-3; Johnston, American Orations, II, 123-218, 268-343; MacDonald, Source Book, 361-391; MacDonald, Documents, 335-390.
- Biography.—Lives of Clay, Calhoun, Webster, Seward, Benton, Taylor, Jefferson Davis.

# SOURCE-STUDY.

## THE COMPROMISE OF 1850.

The first group of extracts is from the Congressional Globe and is chosen to indicate that the features of the compromise were all to be found in early propositions before Clay introduced his resolutions. The second group contains Clay's resolutions.

[On December 27, 1849, Senator Foote, of Mississippi, offered the following resolution.]

*Resolved*, That it is the duty of Congress, at this session, to establish suitable territorial governments for California, for Deseret, and for New Mexico. . . .

[On Thursday, January 3, 1850,] Mr. Seward moved that the . . . resolution of the Senator from Mississippi [Mr. Foote] with regard to providing a territorial government in California, Deseret, and New Mexico [be printed]. . . .

Mr. Hale [of New Hampshire] then moved to amend by adding the following:—

Securing to the inhabitants of those territories all the privileges and liberties secured to the inhabitants of the Northwest Territory by the ordinance of July 13, 1787.

[On January 16, 1850, Senator Benton, of Missouri, submitted his bill for an agreement with Texas, which was in part as follows].

. . . [Be it enacted, etc.] That the following propositions shall be, and the same are hereby offered to the State of Texas, which, when agreed to by the said State, in an act passed by the General Assembly, shall be binding and obligatory upon the United States and upon the said State of Texas.

*First*. The State of Texas will reduce her boundary on the west to the one hundred and second degree of west longitude, from the meridian of Greenwich; and on the north to the main or Salt fork of the Red River, between the parallels of one hundred and one hundred and two degrees of west longitude. . . .

*Third*. The State of Texas cedes to the United States all her territory exterior to the limits to which she reduces herself by the first article of this agreement. . . .

*Fifth*. The United States, in consideration of said reduction of boundaries, cession of territory, and relinquishment of claims,\* will pay to the State of Texas the sum of fifteen millions of dollars. . . .

[On the same day, Senator Foote introduced] a bill to provide for the organization of the territorial governments of California, Deseret, and New Mexico, and to enable the people of Jacinto,† with the consent of the State of Texas to form a constitution and State government. . . .

[The same day, January 16, 1850, Senator Butler, of South Carolina, said] I ask leave to report, from the Judiciary Committee, the bill to provide for the more effectual execution of the third clause of the second section of the fourth article of the Constitution of the United States with certain amendments. . . . [This

bill requires] the federal agents to carry out this clause of the Constitution and the act of 1791, in favor of masters recovering their fugitive slaves. . . .—*Congressional Globe*, 31 Cong. 1 Sess., pp. 87, 99, 166, 171.

## CLAY'S RESOLUTIONS.

It being desirable, for the peace, concord, and harmony of the Union of these States, to settle and adjust amicably all existing questions of controversy between them arising out of the institution of slavery upon a fair, equitable and just basis, therefore,

1. *Resolved*, That California, with suitable boundaries, ought, upon her application to be admitted as one of the States of this Union, without the imposition by Congress of any restriction in respect to the exclusion or introduction of slavery within those boundaries.

2. *Resolved*, That as slavery does not exist by law, and is not likely to be introduced into any of the territory acquired by the United States from the republic of Mexico, it is inexpedient for Congress to provide by law either for its introduction into, or exclusion from, any part of the said territory; and that appropriate territorial governments ought to be established by Congress in all of the said territory, not assigned as the boundaries of the proposed State of California, without the adoption of any restriction or condition on the subject of slavery.

3. *Resolved*, That the western boundary of the State of Texas ought to be fixed on the Rio del Norte, commencing one marine league from its mouth, and running up that river to the southern line of New Mexico; thence with that line eastwardly, and so continuing in the same direction to the line as established between the United States and Spain, excluding any portion of New Mexico, whether lying on the east or west of that river.

4. *Resolved*, That it be proposed to the State of Texas, that the United States will provide for the payment of all that portion of the legitimate and bona fide public debt of that State contracted prior to its annexation to the United States, and for which the duties on foreign imports were pledged by the said State to its creditors, not exceeding the sum of ——— dollars, in consideration of the said duties so pledged having been no longer applicable to that object after the said annexation, but having thenceforward become payable to the United States; and upon the condition, also, that the said State of Texas shall, by some solemn and authentic act of her legislature or of a convention, relinquish to the United States any claim which it has to any part of New Mexico.

5. *Resolved*, That it is inexpedient to abolish slavery in the District of Columbia whilst that institution continues to exist in the State of Maryland, without the consent of that State, without the consent of the people of the District, and without just compensation to the owners of slaves within the District.

6. *But, resolved*, That it is expedient to prohibit, within the District, the slave trade in slaves brought into it from States or places beyond the limits of the District, either to be sold therein as merchandise or to be transported to other markets without the District of Columbia.

7. *Resolved*, That more effectual provision ought to be made by law, according to the requirement of the constitution, for the restitution and delivery of persons bound to service or labor in any State, who may escape into any other State or Territory in the Union. And,

8. *Resolved*, That Congress has no power to prohibit or obstruct the trade in slaves between the slaveholding States; but that the admission or exclusion of slaves brought from one into another of them, depends exclusively upon their own particular laws.—*Congressional Globe*, 31st Cong., 1st Sess., 246-247.

\* In section 4 of the bill.

† Deseret-Utah; Jacinto was a part of Texas.

# Topic U 30. Culmination of Struggle—1850-1860.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Election of 1852—Pierce. Belief in finality of compromise. Democrats stand firm on the compromise; Whigs lost in the North by accepting compromise: Free Soil party and Native American party draw strength from Whigs.
2. Difficulty in enforcing Compromise in North.
  - a) Belief in "higher law."
  - b) Personal liberty laws of northern states—to give protection to free negroes.
  - c) Underground Railroad, to assist runaway slaves.
  - d) Efforts to boycott cotton and other southern products.
3. Foreign Affairs.
  - a) Commercial treaties with the Orient:
    - 1) Cushing in China, 1844.
    - 2) Perry in Japan, 1854.
  - b) Efforts to extend United States possessions in Gulf of Mexico and there obtain more territory for slavery; filibustering in Cuba; the Ostend Manifesto, 1854.
4. Kansas-Nebraska Act—the Missouri Compromise broken.
  - a) Settlement of lands west of Missouri and Iowa; need of form of government.
  - b) Squatter sovereignty theory.
  - c) Douglas of Illinois proposed application of theory to Kansas and Nebraska.
  - d) A surprise to southern leaders; but accepted by them; and carried 1854; repeal of Missouri Compromise.
  - e) Terms of the act.
5. Results of Kansas-Nebraska Act.
  - a) Opened new battle-ground between slavery and freedom.
  - b) Greatly alarmed the north.
  - c) Led to re-alignment of political parties on a sectional basis.
    - 1) Whig party practically killed.
    - 2) Democrats divided into northern and southern sections.
    - 3) Republican party formed out of elements of northern Democrats, Whigs, Liberty party, and American party.
  - d) Led to Civil War in Kansas.
6. Campaign of 1856—election of Buchanan.
 

The Whigs split up; Republicans not yet fully organized; Democratic candidate Buchanan, from Pennsylvania, got enough votes in north, with entire south, to elect him. The first campaign on a sectional basis.
7. Civil War in Kansas, 1854-1860.
  - a) Struggle to send emigrants; emigrant aid societies of north; action of Missouri and southern men.
  - b) Struggle to control territorial government; Missouri men helped to elect pro-slavery legislature.
  - c) Free-soil settlers met in convention at Topeka and framed a constitution; adopted by people at an election at which only free-soil men voted; pro-slavery men denying validity of convention, 1856.
    - d) Free-soil men elected officers under Topeka constitution.
    - e) Pro-slavery men met in convention at Lecompton, framed constitution; adopted by people (only pro-slavery men voting), 1858.
    - f) Later Congress provided (English bill) for new popular vote on Lecompton constitution, by which the constitution was decisively rejected, 1858.
    - g) More anti-slavery constitutions:
      - 1) Leavenworth, 1858.
      - 2) Wyandotte, 1859.
    - h) Rioting and bloodshed in Kansas during this period; John Brown.
      - i) Kansas question in Congress: House favored free settlers, Senate favored slavery men.
8. Dred Scott Decision, 1857.
  - a) Facts of the case.
  - b) Features of the decision.
    - 1) Negroes not citizens of United States.
    - 2) Slaves could not sue in courts.
    - 3) Missouri Compromise unconstitutional.
  - c) Effects of decision: opened all territories to slavery.
  - d) Reception of decision: In North; in South; strengthened Republican party.
9. Lincoln-Douglas Debates, 1858.
  - a) Facts of the struggle.
  - b) Influence: Made Lincoln a possible candidate for Republican party; made Douglas unpopular in south.
10. John Brown's Raid, 1859. Purpose; failure; results.
11. Influence of Literature on Struggle.
  - a) Writings of New England poets and essayists.
  - b) Mrs. Stowe's *Uncle Tom's Cabin*.
  - c) Helper's *Impending Crisis*.
  - d) Influence of *New York Tribune* (H. Greeley).
12. Campaign of 1860.
  - a) Give candidates and platform of each party: Republicans; Northern Democrats; Southern Democrats; Constitutional Union party.
  - b) Effect of election of Lincoln.
13. Secession.
  - a) Action of South Carolina.
  - b) Followed by other cotton states.
  - c) Avowed reasons for secession.
  - d) Organization of Provisional Government of the Confederacy.
14. Buchanan and Compromise.
  - a) His message to Congress.
  - b) Failure to hold places for union or adopt a decisive policy.
  - c) Attempted compromises—the Crittenden proposals.
  - d) Star of the West fired upon.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 313-348; Ashley, 355-380; Channing, 437-478; Hart, 377-418; James & Sanford, 340-373; Johnston-McDonald, 331-360; McLaughlin, 381-416; McMaster, 343-363; Montgomery, 261-279; Muzzey, 379-429.

For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, Middle Period, ch. 18-22; Burgess, Civil War and Constitution, I, ch. 1, 3, 4; Dewey, Financial History, 256-270; Elson, U. S., 548-615, 624-646; Sparks, Expansion, ch. 29; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 10-13; Sparks, Men Who Made the Nation, ch. 12; Stanwood, History of Presidency, ch. 19-21; Tausig, Tariff History, 115-151; Wilson, Division and Reunion, 178-212.

For Topical Study.

1. Rhodes, U. S., I, 211-277; Schouler, V, 239-251; Von Holst, U. S., IV, 433-231.

2. Johnston, American Political History, II, 127-149; McDougall, Fugitive Slaves; Rhodes, I, 207-211; Schouler, V, 222-228, 291-296; Siebert, Underground Railroad; Von Holst, IV, 1-11, 83-132.

3. Rhodes, I, 199-205; II, ch. 6; Schouler, V, 214-222, 251-255, 296-301, 309-315; T. C. Smith, Parties and Slavery, ch. 6, 18; Von Holst, V, 1-50, 168-190, VI, 325-352.

4. Johnston, II, 111-168; Rhodes, I, 121-500; Schouler, V, 279-293; Smith, ch. 7; Von Holst, IV, 280-161; Wilson, American People, IV, 165-172.

5. Johnston, II, 178-279 (new political parties); Rhodes, II, 15-78; Schouler, V, 299-308; Smith, ch. 8-9; Von Holst, V, 151-133, 131-283, 376-435; Wilson, IV, 171-171.

6. Rhodes II, ch. 8; Schouler, V, 319-357; Smith, ch. 12; Von Holst, V, 331-375, 436-467.

7. Rhodes, II, 78-166, 237-240, 278-301; Schouler, V, 315-349, 357-363, 382-400; Smith, ch. 9, 11, 15; Villard, John Brown; Von Holst, V, 281-332; VI, 17-96, 166-252.

8. Johnston, II, 169-177; Rhodes, II, 219-277; Schouler, V, 371-382; Smith, ch. 11; Von Holst, VI, 1-16; Wilson, IV, 170-177.

9. Rhodes, II, 302-318; Schouler, V, 410-416; Smith, ch. 16; Von Holst, VI, 269-300.

10. Chadwick, Causes of Civil War, ch. 5; Rhodes, II, 381-414; Schouler, V, 437-448; Villard, John Brown; Von Holst, VII, 13-39.

11. Rhodes, I, 278-285, 303-305; II, 418-426; Smith, ch. 19; Von Holst, IV, 239-246, VII, 1-13.

12. Chadwick, ch. 6-8; Rhodes, II, 428-500; Schouler, V, 174-169; Von Holst, VII, 110-248; Wilson, IV, 186-189.

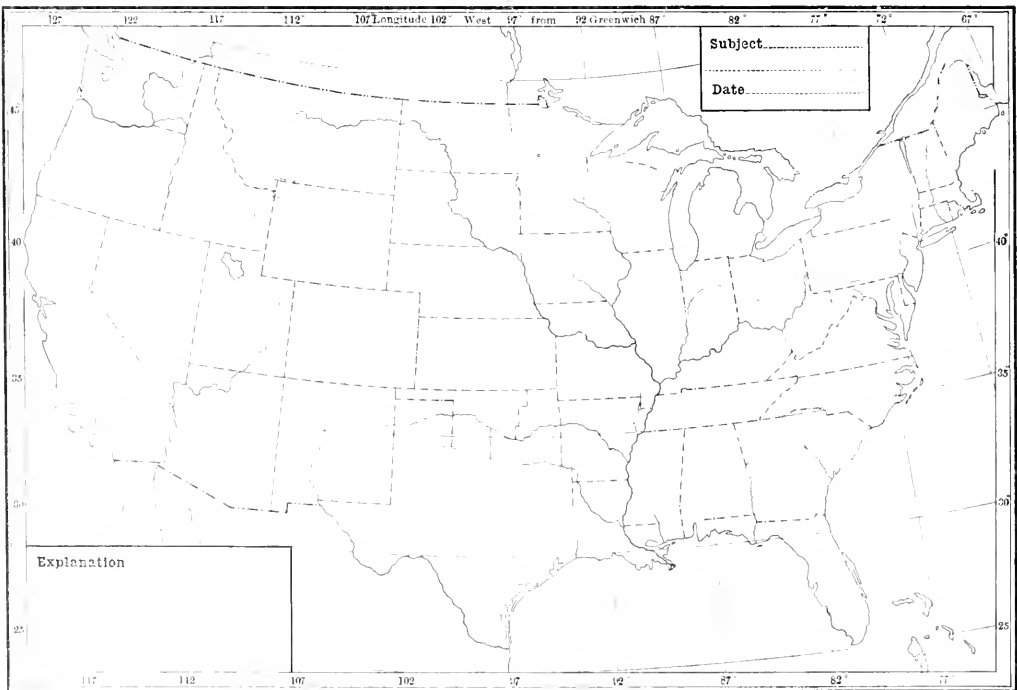
13. Chadwick, ch. 9; Johnston, II, 280-311; Powell, Nullification and Secession, ch. 7; Rhodes, III, ch. 13; Schouler, V, 169-193, 499-511; Von Holst, VII, 249-311.

14. Chadwick, ch. 10-17; Rhodes, III, ch. 14; Schouler, V, 193-199; Von Holst, VII, 312-459; Wilson, IV, 202-208.

Source References.—American History Leaflets, 2, 12, 17, 23; Caldwell and Persinger, 417-433; Hart, Source Book, 282-302; Hart, Contemporaries, IV, ch. 5; Hill, Liberty Documents, ch. 21; Johnston, American Orations, III, 3-333; MacDonald, Source Book, 395-424; MacDonald, Documents, 390-446; Old South Leaflets, 82-83; Preston, Documents, 304-313.

Biography.—Lives of Lincoln, Sumner, Seward, Chase, John Brown, Douglas, Cass, Jefferson Davis, A. H. Stephens, Robert Toombs.

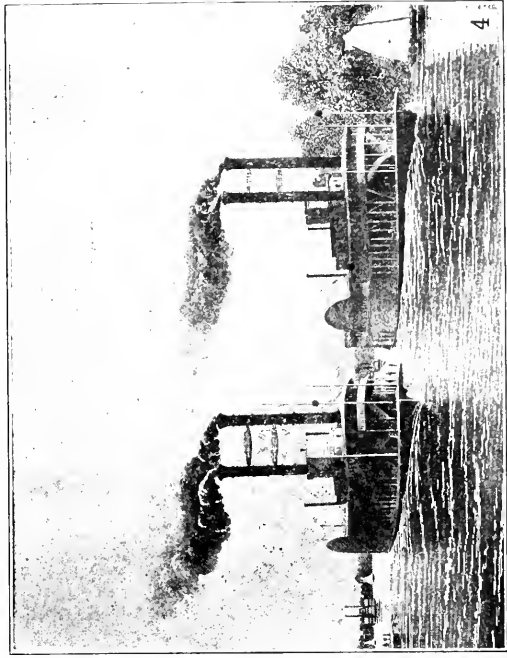
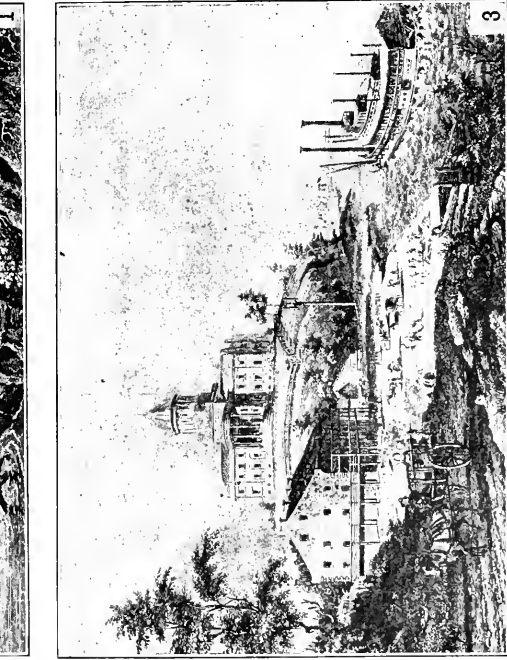
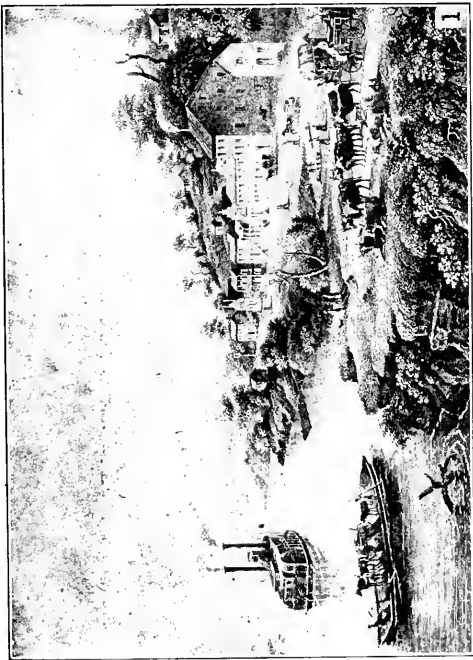
McKinley's Series of Geographical and Historical Outline Maps. No. 2, The United States (State Boundaries.).



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for U 30.

Show the area occupied for slavery and as free-soil, 1820-1860. See Adams and Trent, 308, 320; Ashley, 362; Channing, 467, 606; Epoch Map (1855); Epoch Maps (1775-1865, good); Fiske, 337 (1851); Hart, 390; McLaughlin, 390, 416; McMaster, 312, 357; Montgomery, Leading Facts, 270; Montgomery, Student's, 412, 423; Muzzey, 363; Shepherd, 206; Wilson, Division and Reunion, at end (1855); Wilson, at beginning (1775-1865).



# SCENES ON THE MISSISSIPPI AND MISSOURI RIVERS, 1843-1853.

- No. 1. A view of Kansas, showing the activities of the frontier. Note the southern influence in the architecture of the houses on the river bank; the steamboats; ferry propelled by poles, and the wagons.
- No. 2. New Orleans, in 1843, showing sea-going vessels.
- No. 3. Jefferson City, the capital of Missouri. Note the contrast of the capitol building with the large building in the foreground, the latter with its simple porches; steamboat and bell on shore to warn of its arrival or departure; driving-cart of the day.
- No. 4. Steamboat race on the Mississippi; almost a daily occurrence in these years. All the views from contemporary sketches.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

## EMIGRANT AID SOCIETIES.

One result of the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Act was the immediate contest between the pro-slavery and anti-slavery forces for the control of the territory of Kansas. The slavery men had the advantage of the proximity of the slave-state of Missouri, while the anti-slavery forces had only the newly settled state of Iowa to draw upon. Emigrant aid societies were immediately formed in the north to seek out emigrants and to aid them upon the journey and in settlement in Kansas. Edward Everett Hale's work was published, in 1854, in order to encourage this migration, and the author gives a typical constitution which might be used in forming more societies.

The Emigrant Aid Company of New York and Connecticut organized on the 18th of July, under a charter granted by the legislature of Connecticut at the session of the same summer. Its objects are of the same general character as those of the Boston company. Its affairs are in the hands of a board of twenty-seven trustees, who choose an executive committee of three for their immediate direction. The capital stock of this company is not to exceed five million dollars, to be raised in shares of five dollars each. Mr. Eli Thayer is president, Mr. R. N. Havens vice-president, and Mr. M. H. Grinnell treasurer of this company.

These two parent companies propose to send forward trains of emigrants to Kansas as rapidly as possible after the general arrangements for their cheap and safe conveyance have been made. They carry all who apply for tickets for the journey. It is not within the immediate power of two such companies to conduct a correspondence with every individual who wishes to emigrate, nor to arrange that companies of neighbors shall go together, without the intervention of local societies, which shall take in hand the details of such arrangements.

Local "leagues" or emigrant societies for the detailed care of the arrangements of parties of emigrants, have been formed, therefore, in several of the large towns. There are such societies, auxiliary to the "Aid Companies," in New York, in Albany, in Rochester, and probably in other towns. It is greatly to be desired that the number of such auxiliaries may be enlarged. Each of them should appoint and pay a master of emigration, who may find out all those who wish to move westward in his neighborhood; make such arrangements with the Emigrant Aid Company that, if they wish, they can go together; and, in general, conduct their negotiations with the parent company, without subjecting each man to the necessity of writing himself, and for himself receiving a reply.

Side by side with the associations now described, the Union Emigration Society was organized in the city of Washington, "by such members of Congress and citizens generally as were opposed to the repeal of the Missouri Compromise, and to the opening of Nebraska and Kansas to the introduction of slavery." This society is understood to have appointed agents in several states, for the purpose of calling public attention to its movements, and organizing auxiliary societies.

The operations of the two Emigrant Aid Companies, and of the "leagues" auxiliary to them, are so completely in their infancy, that it is impossible to make a statement of their plans much more definite than that contained

in the report of their first committee. To all applicants for passage they will be able to furnish passage tickets, of the first class, from Boston to Kansas, at an expense of twenty or twenty-five dollars. Passage with a simpler class of accommodations may probably be furnished for ten dollars. These rates are much lower than the regular rates of travel, and emigrants who take these tickets have the assurance of the company's guarantee that the tickets will be serviceable for their purpose, and that no further exactions for travel will be made on the way to Kansas. They will travel in parties of persons bound to the same home with themselves. They will arrive at a station of the company, where they will meet with friends, and receive such information and general assistance as it is in the power of the company to give them.—Hale, *Kansas and Nebraska*, pp. 230-232.

CONSTITUTION OF THE WORCESTER CO.  
KANSAS LEAGUE.

Article 1. Any person may become a member of this Society, by signing his name to this Constitution, and paying to the use of the Society the sum of one dollar, and shall continue to be a member so long as he shall pay such sum annually.

Article 2. The officers of the Society shall be a President, Vice President, seven Directors, Treasurer, and Secretary, who shall be Master of Emigration,—to be elected, in the first instance, immediately, and thereafter, on the second Monday in March, annually, at a meeting held in Worcester. The President, Vice President and Treasurer shall be, *ex officio*, members of the Board of Directors.

Article 3. The officers shall perform such duties as shall appertain to their respective situations, and such, also, as shall devolve upon them under the By-Laws of the Society.

Article 4. It shall be the duty of the Master of Emigration to receive and keep the names of all persons desiring to emigrate to Kansas from Worcester county; to agree upon the time and conveniences for their departure, and to confer with the Emigrant Aid Company, so as to make the best arrangements for their conveyance to Kansas, and their location there.

Article 5. The moneys of the Society shall be appropriated to promote such emigration into the above-named territory as shall be opposed to the introduction of slavery into the same; or, if slavery shall be introduced, as shall be in favor of repealing all laws tolerating the same; and also for such means of promoting free emigration as the Directors may select. Provided that nothing shall be done, in virtue hereof, in contravention of the Constitution, nor in conflict with the existing laws of the land.

Article 6. Suitable By-Laws shall be adopted, at the first meeting of the Society, and the same may be altered or amended at any annual meeting.

Article 7. It is the design of this Society to co-operate with the Emigrant Aid Company in the colonization of Kansas with freemen.

Article 8. The Directors shall have power to fill any vacancies in their Board, or in the list of officers, antecedent to the annual meeting of the Society.—Hale, *Kansas and Nebraska*, pp. 249-250.



# Topic U 31. Territorial Growth and Economic Advance to 1860.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Acquisition of territory. Show how and where obtained. Mark on the map the several additions.
2. Economic Advance to 1860.
  - a) Growth of population:
    - 1) Character and extent of immigration.
    - 2) Pushing back the frontier.
  - b) Growth of Agriculture.
    - 1) Introduction of improved plows, mowers and reapers.
    - 2) Diversified agriculture in the east; less so in the west and south.
  - c) Growth of American manufactures: character of products and processes; new fields of industry; absence of a protective tariff from 1842 to 1860.
  - d) Growth of American commerce: character of vessels used; beginning of change to steamships; countries traded with; entrance into China and Japan; articles of commerce; influence of discovery of gold.
  - e) Growth of city population: Causes; effects upon health, politics, industry, etc.
  - f) Currency and banking:
    - 1) Establishment of state banks and wildcat currency.
    - 2) Development by states of a more secure system of banking—a prelude to the national banking system. Currency up to war was in confused condition.
  - g) The tariff question: after 1842 mainly a revenue tariff; acts of 1846, 1857. Slightly higher by Morrill tariff of 1861.
  - h) Development of railroads and canals: character and extent of recent building; creation of the "trunk lines" east and west; absence of north and south lines.
    - i) Discovery of gold; influence upon the west; upon national prosperity.
    - j) The crisis of 1857.
3. Conditions of Slavery.
4. Comparison of Loyal and Seceding States.
  - a) In population—white and negro; attitude toward immigrants.
  - b) In wealth, manufactures, and other national resources for war.
  - c) In means of transportation for goods and troops.
  - d) In financial organization and strength.
  - e) In merchant marine and ability to control seas in time of war.
  - f) In military training and character of population.
  - g) In forms of popular education.

Upon all these points consult the interesting tables given by Helper in his book "The Impending Crisis of the South."

- h) In political theories; states' rights, nationalism, interpretation of the constitution.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 348-351, 357-362; Channing, 455-467; Hart, 419-432; James & Sanford, 377-380; McLaughlin, 383-384, 403-407; McMaster, 365-377; Montgomery, 262-265, 269-272, 278-279, 285; Muzzey, 367-371, 430-436.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, *Economic History*, 203-215, 238-264; Conant, *Industrial History*, 269-279 (economic causes of war); Elson, *U. S.*, 616-623.

For Topical Study.—

2. McMaster, *U. S.*, VII, ch. 73, 75, 76, 84; Rhodes, *U. S.*, III, ch. 12; Schouler, *V.*, 260-269; T. C. Smith, *Parties and Slavery*, ch. 5; Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, ch. 11-12.

3. Chadwick, *Causes of Civil War*, ch. 1-4; Rhodes, I, ch. 4; Von Holst, *U. S.*, IV, 189-202.

4. Helper, *Impending Crisis*; Rhodes, III, 397-414; Von Holst, III, 563-597.

Source References.—Callender, *Economic History*, ch. 14, Caldwell and Persinger, 133-151; Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. 4, 6-12.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### ECONOMICS OF SLAVERY.

Helper's *Impending Crisis of the South* appeared in 1857, and immediately attracted attention both in the North and in the South. It was a violent appeal to the non-slave-holding whites of the South, urging them for their own advantage to assist in overthrowing the institution of slavery. By comparative tables drawn from census statistics and other sources, Helper tried to show the great economic loss entailed by the slave system. The first extract below gives some of his summaries.

Many replies were made to Helper's book. The second extract is from one of these published in 1860. The author accuses Helper of juggling with statistics, but his own figures are hopelessly muddled.

The Mississippi declaration is a strong statement of the economic importance of slavery to the South, and of the influence of slavery in producing secession.

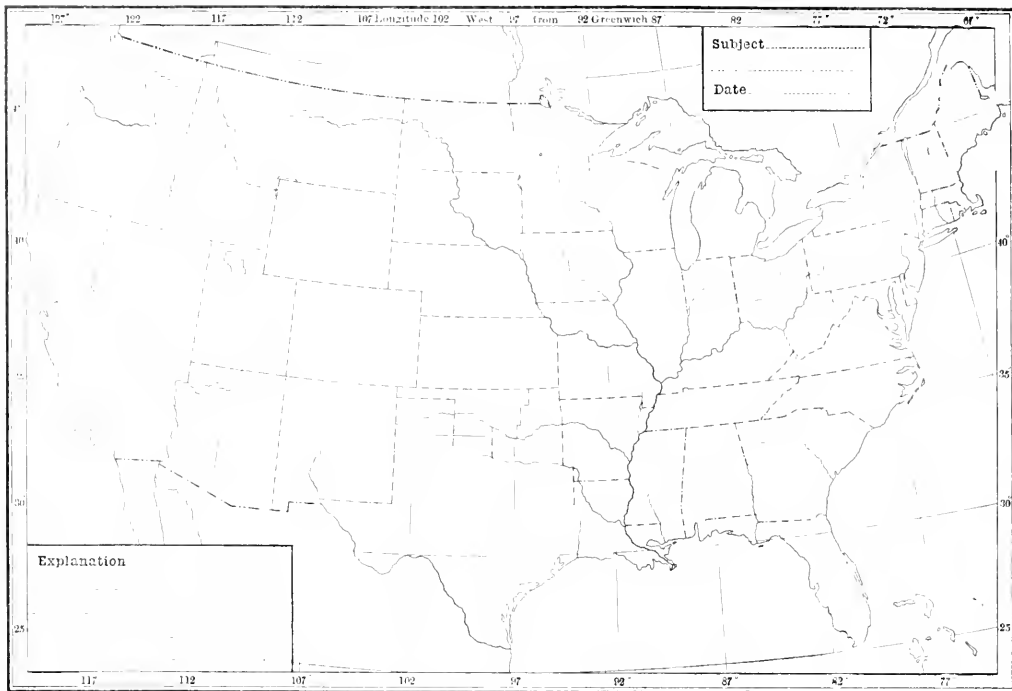
Balances all in favor of the North:

Difference in the value of bushel-measure products .....	\$41,782,636
Difference in the value of pound-measure products .....	59,199,108
Difference in the value of farms and domestic animals .....	1,084,318,059
Total .....	\$1,188,299,803

No figures of rhetoric can add emphasis or significance to these figures of arithmetic. They demonstrate conclusively the great moral triumph of Liberty over Slavery. They show unequivocally, in spite of all the blarney and boasting of slave-driving politicians, that the entire value of all the agricultural interests of the free States is very nearly twice as great as the entire value of all the agricultural interests of the slave States—the value of those interests in the former being twenty-five hundred million of dollars, that of those in the latter only fourteen hundred million, leaving a balance in favor of the free States of *one billion one hundred and eighty-eight million two hundred and ninety-nine thousand eight hundred and three dollars!* That is what we call a full, fair and complete vindication of Free Labor. Would we not be correct in calling it a total eclipse of the Black Orb? Can it be possible that the slaveryocracy will ever have the hardihood to open their mouths again on the subject of terra-culture in the South? Dare they ever think of cotton again? Ought they not, as a befitting confession of their crimes and misdemeanors, and as a reasonable expiation for the countless evils which they have inflicted on society, to clothe themselves in sackcloth, and, after a suitable season of contrition and severe penance, follow the example of one Judas Iscariot, and go and hang themselves? . . .

Enough is known, however, to satisfy us that the value of the milk, wine, ardent spirits, malt liquors, fluids, oils, and molasses, annually produced in the free States, is at least fifty millions of dollars greater than the value of the same articles annually produced and sold in the slave States. Of sweet milk alone, it is estimated that the monthly sales in three Northern cities, New York, Philadelphia and Boston, amount to a larger sum than the marketable value of all the rosin, tar, pitch, and turpentine, annually produced in the Southern States.

(Continued on Page 2.)



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 31.

Show the territorial growth of the United States to 1860. See Adams and Trent, 305; Ashley, 508; Channing, 233; Epoch Maps; Fiske, back cover; Hart, 567; Hart, Formation, at beginning; James and Sanford, 349; Johnston-MacDonald, 214; McLaughlin, 370, 572; Montgomery, Lending Facts, 334; Montgomery, Student's, 556; Muzzey, 548; Scudder, 232; Shepherd, 198; Thomas, 396.

### SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

. . . The person whose curiosity prompts him to take an account of the immense piles of Northern lumber now lying on the wharves and houseless lots in Baltimore, Richmond, and other slavcholding cities, will not, we imagine, form a very flattering opinion of the products of Southern forests. Let it be remembered that nearly all the clippers, steamers, and small craft, are built at the North; that large cargoes of Eastern lumber are exported to foreign countries; that nine-tenths of the wooden-ware used in the Southern States is manufactured in New England; that in outrageous disregard of the natural rights and claims of Southern mechanics, the markets of the South are forever filled with Northern furniture, vehicles, ax helves, walking-canes, yard-sticks, clothes-pins, and pen-holders; that the extraordinary number of factories, steam-engines, forges and machine-shops in the free States, require an extraordinary quantity of cord-wood; that a large majority of the magnificent edifices and other structures, both private and public, in which timber, in its various forms, is extensively used, are to be found in the free States—we say, let all these things be remembered, and the truth will at once flash across the mind that the forests of the North are a source of far greater income than those of the South. . . . In this respect to what is our poverty ascribable? To the same cause that has impoverished and dishonored us in all other respects—the thriftless and degrading institution of slavery.

Nature has been kind to us in all things. The strata and substrata of the South are profusely enriched with gold and silver, and precious stones, and from the natural orifices and aqueducts in Virginia and North Carolina, flow the purest healing waters in the world. But of what avail is all this latent wealth? Of what avail will it ever be, so long as slavery is permitted to play the dog in the manger?—Helper, *Impending Crisis of the South*, pp. 72-77 (1857).

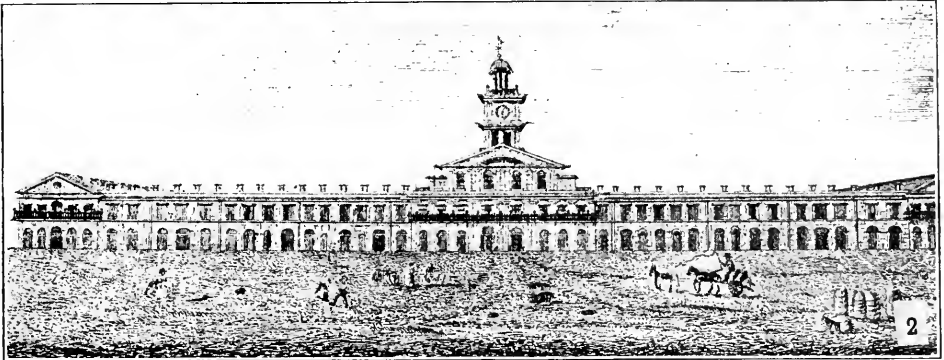
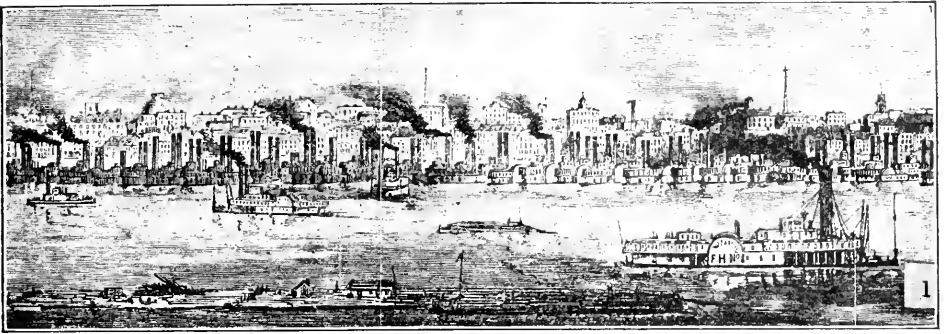
We will now consider some of the statistical fallacies of Helper's book. Not only does this incendiary work abound with incentives to treason, massacre, and bloody revolution, but the statistics are fallacious, and evidently prepared for the purpose of deceiving the ignorant and fanatical portion of the community.

. . . The Northern population is one and a half that of the Southern, and yet it does not produce one-fifth more. According to the foregoing figures the North ought to yield, in order to make its productions equal to the South, \$615,682,722, as any school-boy can calculate by the rule of simple proportion. . . .

The true state of the case, therefore, is:  
What they ought to produce . . . . . \$615,682,722  
What the free States do produce . . . . . 566,132,226

Against the free States and in favor of  
slave . . . . . \$39,452,596\*

\*So in the original; should be \$79,553,596.



## OVERLAND TO THE PACIFIC.



### The San Antonio and San Diego Mail-Line.

This Line, which has been in successful operation since July, 1857, is ticketing PASSENGERS through to San Diego and San Francisco, and also to all intermediate stations. Passengers and Express matter forwarded in NEW COACHES, drawn by six mules, over the entire length of our line, excepting the Colorado Desert of our hundred miles, which we cross on mule-back. Passengers do not sleep in their tickets to ride in Coaches, excepting the one hundred miles above stated.

Passengers ticketed through, from NEW-ORLEANS, to the following points, via SAN ANTONIO:

To Port Clark, .....	Fare, 65¢	To Fort Bliss, .....	Fare, \$1.00.
" Hudson, .....	" 60.	" La Mesilla, .....	" 105.
" Port Lancaster, .....	" 70.	" Fort Fillmore, .....	" 105.
" Davis, .....	" 80.	" Tucson, .....	" 135.
" Quitman, .....	" 100.	" Fort Yuma, .....	" 102.
" Barchinilla, .....	" 100.	" San Diego, .....	" 100.
" San Elizario, .....	" 100.	" Los Angeles, .....	" 190.
" El Paso, .....	" 100.	" San Francisco, .....	" 200.

The Coaches of our Line leave semi-monthly from each end, on the 5th and 21st of each month, at 8 o'clock A. M.

An armed escort travels through the Indian country with each mail train, for the protection of the mails and passengers.

Passengers are provided with provisions during the trip, except where the Coach stops at Public Houses along the Line, at which each Passenger will pay for his own meal.

Each Passenger is allowed thirty pounds of personal baggage, exclusive of Linens and arms.

Passengers coming to San Antonio can take the Line of mail-steamer from New Orleans five times a week in 101 miles. From the latter place there is a daily line of four horse coaches direct to the place.

On the Pacific side, the California Steam Navigation Company are running a fast clipper steamer, semi-monthly, to and from San Francisco and San Diego.

Extra Baggage, when carried, is 50 cents per pound to El Paso, and \$1 per pound to San Diego. Passengers can obtain all necessary supplies in San Antonio.

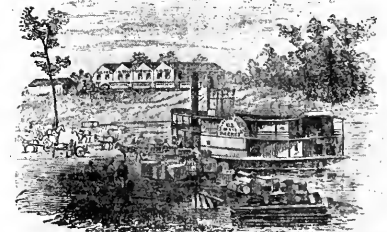
For further information, and for the purchase of tickets, apply at the Office of C. H. WATSON (Camp Street), New Orleans, or at the Company's Office, in San Antonio.

G. H. GIDDINGS, Proprietors.  
R. E. DOYLE, Proprietors.

3



**UNION PRESS AND WAREHOUSE,**  
By T. W. WHITMAN & Co.,  
Receiving, Forwarding, and Commission Merchant, and Cotton Factor,  
HOUSTON, TEXAS.



A. L. ALLEN, ALLEN & FULTON, W. FULTON,  
(Successors to Allen, Fitch & Co.),  
**COTTON FACTORS AND GENERAL COMMISSION MERCHANTS,**  
Main and Commerce Streets, and at the Terminus of the H. & T. C.  
R. R., HOUSTON, TEXAS.

4 Will store and forward Cotton and Merchandise, sell on commission, or advance on the same for shipment. Orders for plantation supplies promptly responded to when accompanied with Cash or good notes.

## SCENES IN THE SLAVE STATES.

No. 1. View of the river-front of St. Louis, Mo., showing the great steamboat traffic which centered in that city.

No. 2. The Orleans Cotton Press in New Orleans, illustrates the vastness of the cotton trade. The building was 632 by 308 feet, cost \$753,558, could store 25,000 bales of cotton, and could press 150,000 bales a year (1838).

No. 3. Mode of travel into the southwest. Note in the advertisement the equipment of the stage-line, the route followed, the fare charged, and the 100-mile mule trip across the Colorado desert.

No. 4. A view in the interior of a cotton State, showing the methods of marketing the crop.

# SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

Again, if we take the proportion of population to the square mile, the figures will be still more in favor of the South. According to . . . Helper's Compendium (at page 71), the population of the South is only 11.29 the square mile, whereas the population of the North is 21.91. By the rule of proportion, the result on this basis ought to be:

Pop. Sq. M.	Pop. Sq. M.	Answer.
11.29	: 21.91	:: \$162,150,182 :: \$898,169,181
Now let us subtract what the North actually produces from what it ought to produce on this basis, as follows:		
What it ought to produce	.....	\$898,169,182
What it actually produced	.....	566,132,226

Against the free States .....\$332,336,956

It will be thus seen, according to Helper's own figures, that there is a balance of \$332,336,956 against the free States, and in favor of the slave, instead of \$103,981,744 to the credit of the Northern States, as the dishonest writer pretends. If we add these two amounts together the result will show that he lies for abolition to the trifling sum of \$436,318,700. . . .

Such is a specimen of his statistics, on which as little reliance is to be placed as on his other facts and arguments against the South. The book is a tissue of falsehoods worthy of the bad cause for which it is written. . . .

The ingenuity of man never devised a more effectual or plausible mode of deceiving and misleading the human understanding, than a shrewd arrangement of figures. By this device, Helper has, by an assumed fairness in forming statistical tables, been able to render his book plausible to many persons. . . .

We are aware that prejudice has much to do with warping a man's judgment, and blinding his understanding; but we cannot reconcile it with a true spirit of patriotism, or high-tone sense of honor, when the emanations of that prejudice are attempted to be palmed off upon the public as historical facts. We will not allow the bias of our prejudice to claim (notwithstanding the facts would warrant us in doing so) that slave labor is more productive than white, but we claim that it is better adapted to the corn, cotton, sugar and rice fields than white labor, for the reason that the system of management suits better, and their peculiar nature is better suited to the climate where those products are most abundantly grown. . . .—Wolfe, *Helper's Impending Crisis Dissected* (1860), pp. 38-42.

## MISSISSIPPI ON THE CAUSES OF SECESSION, JANUARY 26, 1861.

A declaration of the immediate causes which induce and justify the secession of the State of Mississippi from the Federal Union.

In the momentous step which our State has taken of dissolving its connection with the government of which we so long formed a part, it is just that we should declare the prominent reasons which have induced our course.

Our position is thoroughly identified with the institution of slavery—the greatest material interest of the world. Its labor supplies the product which constitutes by far the largest and most important portions of the commerce of the earth. These products are peculiar to the climate verging on the tropical regions, and by an imperious law of nature none but the black race can bear exposure to the tropical sun. These products have become necessities of the world, and a blow at slavery is a blow at commerce and civilization. That blow has

been long aimed at the institution, and was at the point of reaching its consummation. There was no choice left us but submission to the mandates of abolition or a dissolution of the Union, whose principles had been subverted to work out our ruin.

That we do not overstate the dangers to our institutions a reference to a few unquestionable facts will sufficiently prove.

The hostility to this institution commenced before the adoption of the Constitution, and was manifested in the well-known Ordinance of 1787 in regard to the Northwestern Territory.

The feeling increased until in 1819-20 it deprived the South of more than half the vast territory acquired from France.

The same hostility dismembered Texas and seized upon all the territory acquired from Mexico.

It has grown until it denies the right of property in slaves, and refuses protection to that right on the high seas, in the Territories and wherever the government of the United States has jurisdiction.

It refuses the admission of new slave States into the Union, and seeks to extinguish it by confining it within its present limits, denying the power of expansion.

It tramples the original equality of the South under foot.

It has nullified the Fugitive Slave Law in almost every free State in the Union, and has utterly broken the compact which our fathers pledged their faith to maintain.

It advocates negro equality, socially and politically, and promotes insurrection and incendiarism in our midst.

It has enlisted the press, its pulpit and its schools against us until the whole popular mind of the North is excited and inflamed with prejudice.

It has made combinations and formed associations to carry out its schemes of emancipation in the States and wherever else slavery exists.

It seeks not to elevate or to support the slave, but to destroy his present condition without providing a better.

It has invaded a State, and invested with the honors of martyrdom the wretch whose purpose was to apply flames to our dwellings and the weapons of destruction to our lives.

It has broken every compact into which it has entered for our security.

It has given indubitable evidence of its design to ruin our agriculture, to prostrate our industrial pursuits and to destroy our social system.

It knows no relenting or hesitation in its purposes: it stops not in its march of aggression, and leaves us no room to hope for cessation or for pause.

It has recently obtained control of the Government by the prosecution of its unhallowed schemes, and destroyed the last expectation of living together in friendship and brotherhood.

Utter subjugation awaits us in the Union, if we should consent longer to remain in it. It is not a matter of choice, but of necessity. We must either submit to degradation and to loss of property worth four billions of money or we must secede from the Union framed by our fathers, to secure this as well as every other species of property. For far less cause than this our fathers separated from the Crown of England.

Our decision is made. We follow in their footsteps. We embrace the alternative of separation, and for the reasons here stated, we resolve to maintain our rights with the full consciousness of the justice of our course and the undoubting belief of our ability to maintain it.—Quoted in Ames, *State Documents on Federal Relations*, No. VI, pp. 78-80.

# Topic U 32. The Civil War—Military Campaigns.

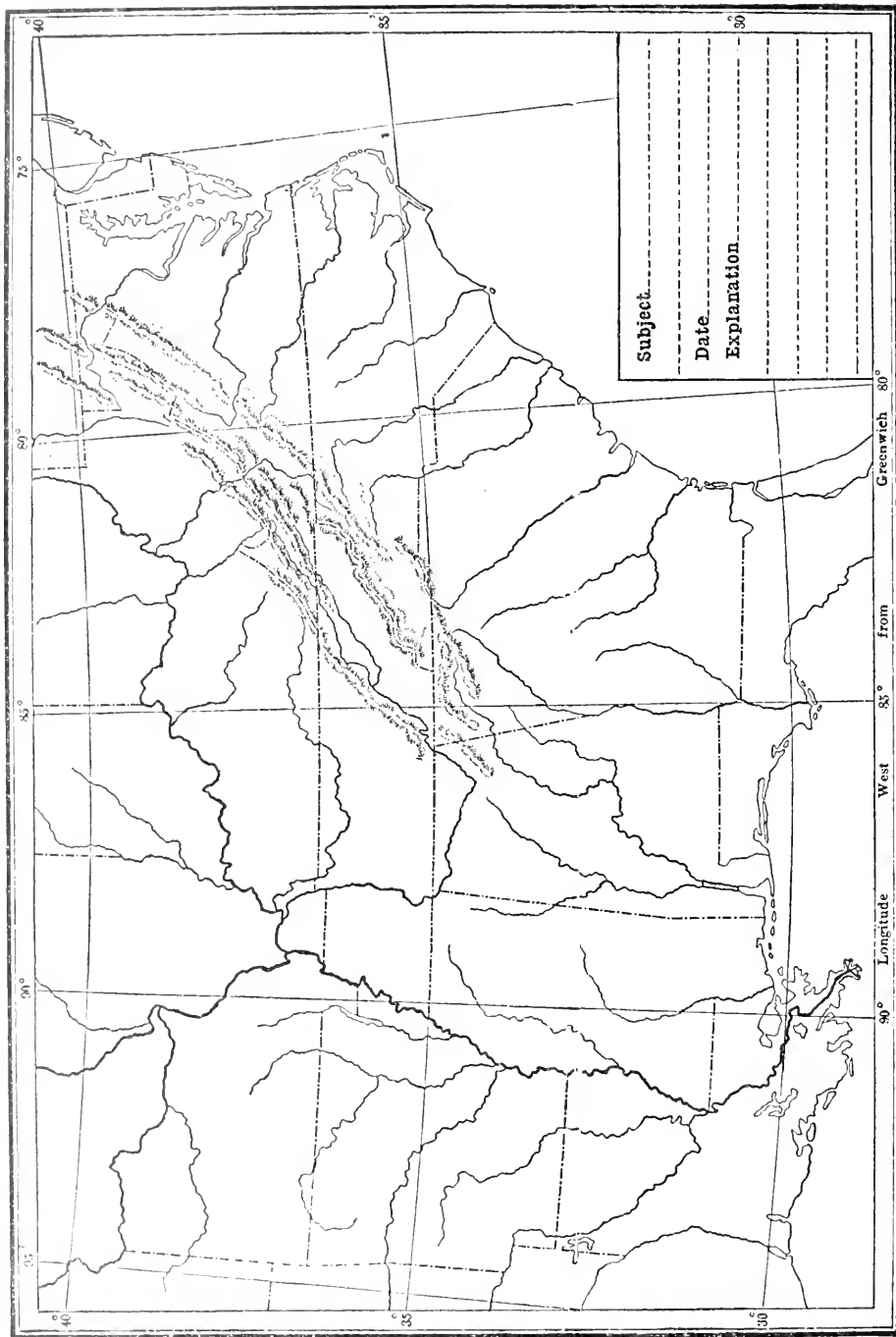
## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Geography of the scene of the war. Extent and character of the southern coast and ports; the Mississippi and other river valleys; railroads of the south; importance of location of capital at Richmond.
2. Plans for the war.
  - a) Southern—in the main on defensive; seize and hold forts, navy-yards, etc., in southern states; get control of border slave states; force a peace upon national government; seize Washington.
  - b) Northern—in the main on the offensive; blockade coast and cut off south from Europe; control border states; control the Mississippi; capture Richmond; surround the confederacy and close in upon army and government.
3. Outline for study of the war: divides into four periods of one year each, beginning with April, 1861, and closing April, 1865.
4. First Year of War, April, 1861—April, 1862.
  - a) Attack upon and surrender of Fort Sumter, April 12-14, 1861.
  - b) Lincoln's call for troops; increase in regular army and navy.
  - c) Early Union successes in Missouri and West Virginia.
  - d) Confederate advance on Washington; Battle of Bull Run, July 21. Results: north and south.
  - e) Nothing further accomplished in the east during this year.
  - f) In spring of 1862:
    - 1) Advance of Union forces in Arkansas and Missouri.
    - 2) Advance of Union forces down the Tennessee, Cumberland and Mississippi Rivers; and up toward New Orleans.
  - g) Battle of Merrimac and Monitor, March 9, 1862. Note new features of Monitor: iron-clad, use of propeller instead of paddlewheels, movable guns in protected turret—the germ of modern battleship. Results of victory: blockade secure; Northern commerce secure.
  - h) Struggle at Shiloh and Corinth for control of Memphis and Charleston Railroad.
    - i) Net result of first year of war.
2. Second Year of War, April, 1862—April, 1863.
  - a) In the west:
    - 1) Capture of New Orleans.
    - 2) Bragg's raid into Kentucky; followed by Buell, who defeated Bragg at Perryville.
    - 3) Grant's army, depleted to aid Buell, attacked by Confederates at Iuka and Corinth, Sept. 19, Oct. 4.
    - 4) Advance of Union forces to southeastern Tennessee—Battle of Murfreesboro, Dec. 31-Jan. 2, 1863.
    - 5) Siege of Vicksburg begun.
  - b) In the East:
    - 1) The Peninsula Campaign of McClellan: Object; plan of attack; advance toward Richmond; check in Seven Days' Battles, June 26-July 1. Jackson's raid into Shenandoah Valley; causes of the failure of campaign.
    - 2) Lee's advance into north: Second Battle of Bull Run; advance into Maryland, and defeat at Antietam.
    - 3) Lee retires behind the Rappahannock.
    - 4) Battle of Fredericksburg.
3. Third Year of War, April, 1863—April, 1864.
  - a) In the West:
    - 1) Capture of Vicksburg; results.
    - 2) Advance from Murfreesboro to Chattanooga; Lookout Mountain; Missionary Ridge; results: Union forces penetrate center of Confederacy and control railroads at Chattanooga.
  - b) In the East:
    - 1) Hooker's advance against Lee; defeated at Chancellorsville.
    - 2) Lee's second invasion of north; purpose.
    - 3) Battle of Gettysburg; results.
    - 4) Position of armies after battle.
4. Fourth Year of War, April, 1864—April, 1865.
  - a) Sherman's advance from Chattanooga to Atlanta and to the sea.
  - b) Grant in command in east.
  - c) The Hammering Campaign: Advance on Richmond; battles of the Wilderness, Spotsylvania and Cold Harbor.
  - d) Grant compelled to shift to south side of James River.
  - e) Siege of Petersburg and Richmond.
  - f) Capture of Richmond, April 3, 1865.
  - g) Retreat and surrender of Lee, April 9, 1865.
  - h) Advance of Sherman northward; surrender of Johnston, Apr. 25, 1865.
5. The War on the Seas.
  - a) The blockade: significance to North, to South, effect on Europe; blockade running.
  - b) The Trent affair.
  - c) Merrimac and Monitor—significance.
  - d) Confederate cruisers fitted out in England: the Alabama, the Shenandoah, etc.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 365-445; Ashley, 399-430; Chan-  
 ning, 481-532; Hart, 433-490; James & Sanford, 368-439; Mc-  
 Laughlin, 417-468; McMaster, 378-424; Montgomery, 280-327;  
 Muzzey, 430-475.
- For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, *Civil War and Constitu-  
 tion*, I, 170-178, 206-225, 243-320, II, ch. 12-13, 17, 19, 21, 23-27,  
 29-32; Dodge, *Bird's-eye View of the Civil War*; Elson, *U. S.*,  
 647-785; Sparks, *U. S.*, II, ch. 11; Wilson, *Division and Re-  
 union*, 213-238.
- For Topical Study.—
1. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, ch. 1-2; Rhodes, *U. S.*, III, 394-457 and ch. 16.
  2. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, ch. 1-3.
  4. *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 449-471; Hosmer, *Ap-  
 peal to Arms*, ch. 4-6; Schouler, *U. S.*, VI, 26-49, 68-85, 89-110,  
 130-152; Wilson, *American People*, IV, 210-220.
  5. *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 472-483; Hosmer, *Ap-  
 peal to Arms*, ch. 7-13, 15-16; Rhodes, *U. S.*, I, 5-14, 95-156, 173-  
 198; Schouler, VI, 169-214, 232-261; Wilson, IV, 220-229.
  6. *Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 483-513; Hosmer, *Ap-  
 peal to Arms*, ch. 17-19; Hosmer, *Outcome of Civil War*, ch.  
 2, 3, 5; Rhodes, IV, 256-266, 268-298, 299-319, 393-408; Schouler,  
 VI, 341-400, 436-460; Wilson, IV, 240-248.

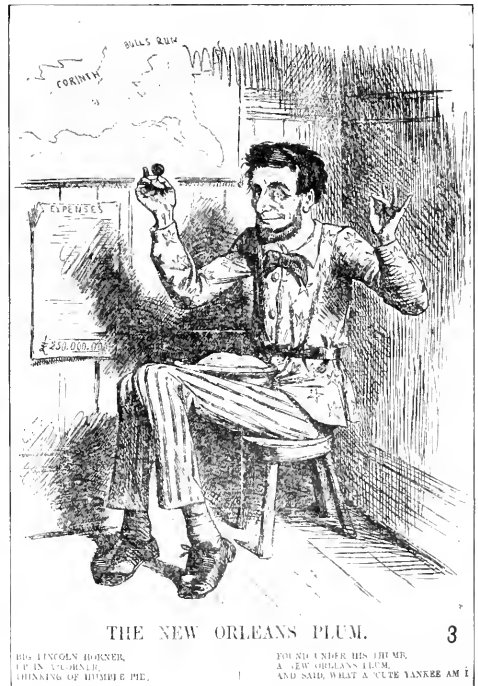
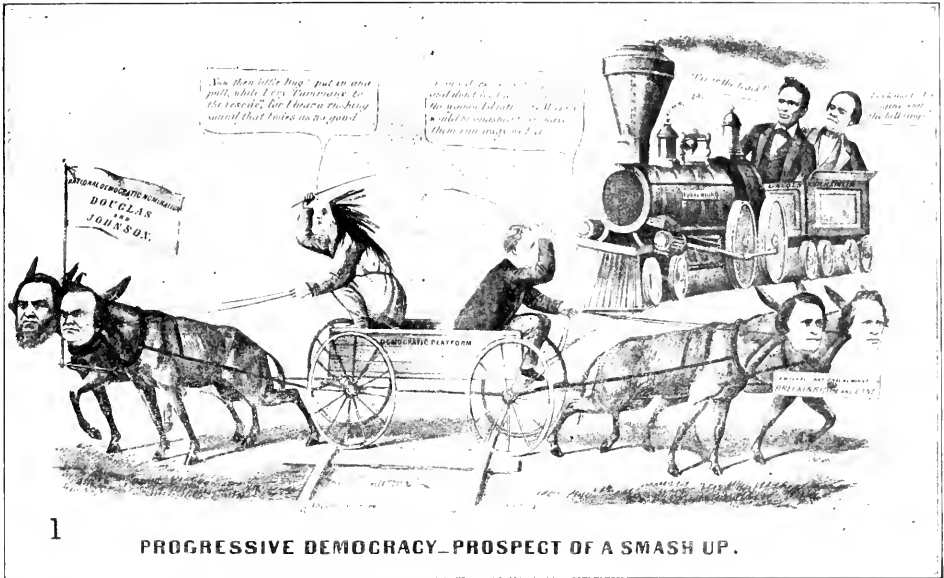
(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 32.

Show the progress of the Union Armies and the area of the Confederacy in each year of the war. See Ashley, 428; McLaughlin, 153; McMaster, 400; Muzzey, 438.



No. 1. Campaign cartoon of 1860, representing the precarious position of the Democratic party with its split between Douglas and Breckinridge. From the original in the Historical Society of Pennsylvania.

No. 2. The London *Punch's* view of the Civil War in America,

No. 3. The same paper's cartoon upon the capture of New Orleans by the Union forces.

## REFERENCES.—Continued.

7. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 514-518; Hosmer, Outcome of Civil War, ch. 5-7, 11-11, 17; Rhodes, IV, 433-456, 488-506, 523-527, V, 1-41, 85-130; Schouler, VI, 478-518, 540-562, 581-609; Wilson, IV, 253-259.

8. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 549-568; Hosmer, Outcome of Civil War, ch. 10; Rhodes, IV, 6, 80-93, 365-384, 519, 524; Schouler, VI, 578-581; Wilson, IV, 237-240.

Source References.—Hart, Source Book, 303-335; Hart, Contemporaries, IV, ch. 15-16, 18-20, 22; MacDonald, Statutes, 1-4, 12-17, 20-24, 54-56.

Biography.—Lives of Grant, Sherman, Sheridan, Lee, Jackson.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

Extracts referring to the progress of the war, from Lincoln's writings and addresses:

From Lincoln's First Message, July 4, 1861.

... At the beginning of the present Presidential term, four months ago, the functions of the Federal Government were found to be generally suspended within the several States of South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Florida, excepting only those of the Post Office Department.

Within these States, all the forts, arsenals, dock-yards, custom-houses, and the like, including the movable and stationary property in and about them, had been seized, and were held in open hostility to this Government, excepting only Forts Pickens, Taylor, and Jefferson, on and near the Florida coast, and Fort Sumter, in Charleston harbor, South Carolina. The forts thus seized had been put in improved condition; new ones had been built, and armed forces had been organized, and were organizing, all avowedly with the same hostile purpose.

The forts remaining in the possession of the Federal Government in and near these States were either besieged or menaced by warlike preparations, and especially Fort Sumter was nearly surrounded by well-protected hostile batteries, with guns equal in quality to the best of its own, and outnumbering the latter as perhaps ten to one. A disproportionate share of the Federal muskets and rifles had somehow found their way into these States and had been seized to be used against the Government. Accumulations of the public revenue, lying within them, had been seized for the same object. The navy was scattered in distant seas, leaving but a very small part of it within the immediate reach of the Government. Officers of the Federal army and navy had resigned in great numbers; and of those resigning a large proportion had taken up arms against the Government. Simultaneously, and in connection with all this, the purpose to secede from the Federal Union was openly avowed. . . . McPherson, *Political History of the Rebellion*, 123.

From Lincoln's First Annual Message, Dec. 3, 1861.

The last ray of hope for preserving the union peacefully expired at the assault upon Fort Sumter; and a general review of what has occurred since may not be unprofitable. What was painfully uncertain then, is much better defined and more distinct now; and the progress of events is plainly in the right direction. The insurgents confidently claimed a strong support from north of Mason and Dixon's line, and the friends of the Union were not free from apprehension on the point. This, however, was soon settled definitely and on the right side. South of the line, noble little Delaware led off right from the first. Maryland was made to *seem* against the Union. Our soldiers were assaulted, bridges were burned, and railroads torn up within her limits, and

we were many days, at one time, without the ability to bring a single regiment over her soil to the capital. Now her bridges and railroads are repaired and opened to the Government, she already gives seven regiments to the cause of the Union, and none to the enemy; and her people, at a regular election, have sustained the Union, by a larger majority; and a larger aggregate vote than they ever before gave to any candidate or any question. Kentucky, too, for some time in doubt, is now decidedly, and, I think, unchangeably, ranged on the side of the Union. Missouri is comparatively quiet, and I believe cannot again be overrun by the insurrectionists. These three States of Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri, neither of which would promise a single soldier at first, have now an aggregate of not less than forty thousand in the field for the Union; . . . After a somewhat bloody struggle of months, winter closes on the Union people of Western Virginia, leaving them masters of their own country. . . . [There is] no armed insurrectionist north of the Potomac, or east of the Chesapeake.

Also we have obtained a footing at each of the isolated points, on the southern coast, of Hatteras, Port Royal, Tybee Island, near Savannah, and Ship Island; and we likewise have some general accounts of popular movements, in behalf of the Union, in North Carolina, and Tennessee. . . .—McPherson, 134.

From Lincoln's letter to the Illinois Convention of Union men, Aug. 26, 1863.

The signs look better. The Father of Waters again goes unvexed to the sea. Thanks to the great Northwest for it; nor yet wholly to them. Three hundred miles up they met New England, Empire, Keystone, and Jersey, hewing their way right and left. The sunny South, too, in more colors than one, also lent a helping hand. On the spot, their part of the history was jotted down in black and white. The job was a great national one, and let none be slighted who bore an honorable part in it. And while those who have cleared the great river may well be proud, even that is not all. It is hard to say that anything has been more bravely and well done than at Antietam, Murfreesboro, Gettysburg, and on many fields of less note. Nor must Uncle Sam's web feet be forgotten. At all the watery margins they have been present, not only on the deep sea, the broad bay, and the rapid river, but also up the narrow, muddy bayou, and wherever the ground was a little damp they have been and made their tracks. . . . Peace does not appear so distant as it did. I hope it will come soon and come to stay; and so come as to be worth the keeping in all future time. It will then have been proved that among freemen there can be no successful appeal from the ballot to the bullet, and that they who take such appeal are sure to lose their case and pay the cost. . . .—McPherson, 335-336.

From Lincoln's Address on Reconstruction, April 11, 1865.

... The evacuation of Petersburg and Richmond, and the surrender of the principal insurgent armies, give hope of a righteous and speedy peace, whose joyous expression cannot be restrained. . . . Nor must those whose harder part give us the cause of rejoicing be overlooked. Their honors must not be parceled out with others. . . . To General Grant, his skilful officers and brave men, all belongs. The gallant navy stood ready, but was not in reach to take active part.



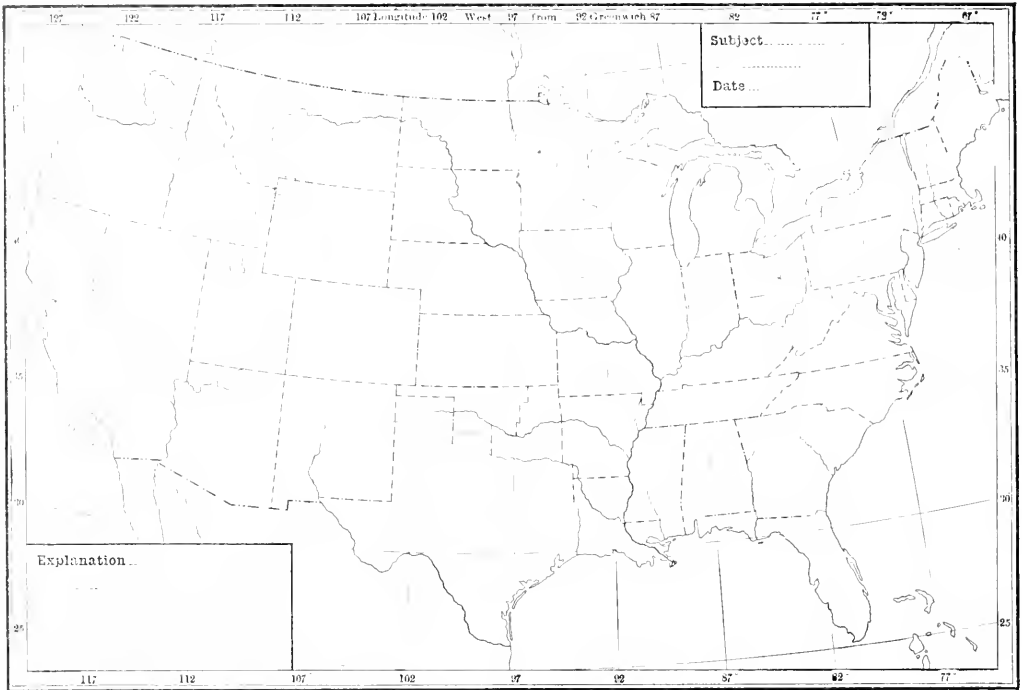
# Topic U 33. The Civil War—Political and Economic Events.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Lincoln and the South: First inaugural address.
2. Lincoln and the North:
  - a) Members of the cabinet.
  - b) Martial law:
    - 1) Suspension of writ of habeas corpus.
    - 2) Arrest of southern sympathizers (copperheads).
  - c) Growing confidence in Lincoln.
3. Financial Measures.
  - a) Government revenue secured from:
    - 1) High tariff and high internal taxes.
    - 2) Loans in form of bonds and treasury notes;
    - 3) Issue of paper money—greenbacks; made legal tender.
  - b) National banking system; founded to create a demand for United States bonds; 1863-1866.
  - c) Amount and character of national debt at close of war.
4. Lincoln's attitude toward slavery.
  - a) Expressions before election.
  - b) Willingness in 1861 to permit continuance of slavery in south.
  - c) Early refusal to combine the war for the Union with a war to abolish slavery.
  - d) Growing realization that slavery was the cause of secession.
  - e) Slavery forbidden in District of Columbia and territories.
  - f) Preliminary Emancipation Proclamation, Sept. 22, 1862.
  - g) Final Proclamation, Jan. 1, 1863.
  - h) What the Emancipation Proclamation accomplished; what it left undone; was its use under war powers justifiable?
5. Lincoln's Attitude toward Reconstruction.
  - a) Lincoln's plan for the return of seceding states.
  - b) Carried out in Tennessee.
  - c) Not completed in Louisiana.
  - d) Beginning of difference between President and Congress upon the subject.
6. Miscellaneous Events in the North.
  - a) Admission of Kansas, 1861.
  - b) Homestead Act, 1862.
  - c) Slavery forbidden in territories and District of Columbia.
  - d) West Virginia admitted in 1863.
  - e) Draft riots in New York.
7. Election of 1864.
  - a) Candidates: Lincoln, McClellan.
  - b) Re-election of Lincoln.
  - c) Voting in the army.
8. Conditions and Government of the Confederacy.
  - a) Character of Constitution of Confederate States.
  - b) Principal statesmen: Davis, Stephens, Toombs.
  - c) Finances: foreign and domestic loans; great amount of paper money issued.
  - d) Failure of foreign trade; impossibility of marketing cotton.
  - e) Foreign Affairs:
    - 1) Recognition of belligerent rights by European states.
    - 2) Failure to obtain recognition of independence.
    - 3) Sentiment in England favoring the South. Confederate cruisers fitted out in England.
    - f) Economic condition in South.
9. Conditions in the North.
10. The Cost of the War.
  - a) In human lives:
    - Size of armies at close of war; total number killed and wounded.
  - b) In money:
    - National debt of United States. Confederate debt never paid.
  - c) In future burdens; interest on debt; pensions for soldiers.
  - d) In a higher level of taxation and of expenditures.
11. Assassination of Lincoln.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 359-360, 369-371, 391-397, 402-406, 419-421, 432-435, 441-445; Ashley, 386-398, 411-413; Channing, 182-196, 513-516; Hart, 133-142, 455-460, 459-473; James & Sanford, 381, 386-392, 399-402; Johnston-MacDonald, 363-436; McLaughlin, 125-426, 428-430, 440-444, 449-452, 460-464; McMaster, 391-396, 419-424; Montgomery, 280-327; Muzzey, 452-453, 460-462, 467-475.
- For Collateral Reading. Burgess, *Civil War and Constitution*, I, ch. 5, and pp. 226-242, II, ch. 16, 18, 20, 33, pp. 214-233; Burgess, *Reconstruction and Constitution*, pp. 8-31; Conant, *Industrial History*, 279-289; Dewey, *Financial History*, 271-330; Elson, U. S., 659-668, 704-706, 712-716, 725-732, 761-763, 773-789; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 14; Stanwood, *History of Presidency*, ch. 22; Taussig, *Tariff History*, 155-170; Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, 213-252.
1. Chadwick, *Causes of Civil War*, ch. 17-19; Rhodes, U. S., III, 316-320; Schouler, U. S., VI, 1-26.
  2. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 568-572; Hosmer, *Outcome of Civil War*, ch. 1; Rhodes, III, 559-578, IV, 236-241, 227-229, V, 189-235; Schouler, VI, 152-157; Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, ch. 13.
  3. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 581-597; Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, ch. 14; Rhodes, III, 630-637, IV, 60-76, 157-171, 212-219, 350-360, 473-475; Schouler, VI, 214-232; Wilson, *American People*, IV, 229-233.
  4. Cambridge Modern History, VII, 597-602; Hosmer, *Outcome of Civil War*, ch. 8, 13; Rhodes, V, 52-68, 132-137; Schouler, VI, 528-535.
  5. Hosmer, *Appeal to Arms*, ch. 20; Hosmer, *Outcome of Civil War*, ch. 1; Johnston, *American Political History*, II, 365-426; Rhodes, III, 417-429, 502-513, IV, 223-255, 321-337; 108-433, V, ch. 27; Schouler, VI, III-129, 261-289, 290-310, 400-435, 460-478, 616-636; Wilson, IV, 233-237, 251-253.
  6. Hosmer, *Outcome of Civil War*, ch. 9; Rhodes, IV, 456-539; Schouler, VI, 519-526.
  7. Cambridge Modern History, VII, ch. 19; Hosmer, *Outcome of Civil War*, ch. 4, 16; Johnston, II, 312-364; Rhodes, V, ch. 28; Schouler, VI, 50-67, 166-169, 290-310, 355-510, 568-578; Wilson, IV, 249-251, 265-312, 313-343 (*Confederate States Constitution*).
  8. Hosmer, *Outcome of Civil War*, ch. 4, 15.
  9. Schouler, VI, 611-616.
- Source References.—*American History Leaflets*, 18, 26; Caldwell and Persinger, 151-165; Hart, *Source Book*, 303-335; Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. 13-14, 17, 21; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. 22; Johnston, *American Orations*, IV, 3-128; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 121-133 (*Confederate States Constitution*), 433-187; MacDonald, *Documents*, 116-155 (*Confederate Constitution*); MacDonald, *Statutes*, 5-12, 11, 17-19, 24-31, 56-122; McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*; Old South Leaflets, II, 107, 158, 189; Preston, *Documents*, 313-317.
- Biography.—Lives of Lincoln, Seward, Chase, Sumner, Davis, A. H. Stephens.



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 33.

Show early and late seceding States and greatest extent of the Confederacy. See Adams and Trent, 353; Ashley, 376; Epoch Maps; Fiske, 408; Hart, 434; James and Sanford, 378; Johnston-MacDonald, 354; MacCoun, 1861; McMaster, 384; Montgomery, Leading Facts, 286; Montgomery, Student's, 456; Mazzei, 426; Shepherd, 208; Thomas, 310; Wilson, at end.

### SOURCE-STUDY.

#### EMANCIPATION OF THE SLAVES.

One of the most interesting subjects for study in connection with the Civil War and with the character of Lincoln, is the President's attitude toward slavery after the war had begun. At first, trying to dissociate secession from slavery, he was later forced to treat them as identical. The following quotations show his change of attitude:

HEADQUARTERS OF THE WESTERN DEPARTMENT,

St. Louis, August 31, 1861.

... The property, real and personal, of all persons, in the State of Missouri, who shall take up arms against the United States, or who shall be directly proven to have taken an active part with their enemies in the field, is declared to be confiscated to the public use, and their slaves, if any they have, are hereby declared free men. . . .

J. C. FREMONT,

Major General Commanding.

McPherson, *Political History of the Rebellion*, 246.

WASHINGTON, September 14, 1861.

SIR: Yours of the 8th, in answer to mine of the 2nd instant, is just received. Assuming that you, upon the ground could better judge of the necessities of your posi-

tion than I could at this distance, on seeing your proclamation of August 30th, I perceived no general objection to it. The particular clause, however, in relation to the confiscation of property and the liberation of slaves, appeared to me to be objectionable in its non-conformity to the act of Congress passed the 6th day of last August upon the same subjects; and hence I wrote you expressing my wish that that clause should be modified accordingly. Your answer, just received, expresses the preference, on your part, that I should make an open order for the modification, which I very cheerfully do. It is therefore ordered that the said clause of the said proclamation be so modified, held, and construed as to conform to and not to transcend the provisions on the same subject contained in the act of Congress entitled "An act to confiscate property used for insurrectionary purposes," approved August 6, 1861, and that said act be published at length with this order.

Your obedient servant,

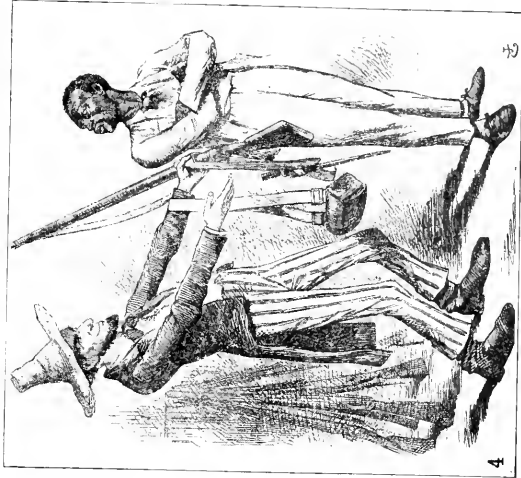
A. LINCOLN.

Maj. Gen. John C. Fremont.

McPherson, 246.

[The act referred to provided for the freeing of those slaves whose labor or other services were utilized against the authority of the United States.]

(Continued on Page 4)



No. 1. "The Dream of a Secessionist," a northern cartoon published in February, 1861. While signing the act of secession, the picture of Washington and Valley Forge comes up before the secessionist.

No. 2. A northern view of English neutrality. While Liberty struggles with a serpent entitled, "Treason," John Bull urges his dogs [the ministers] to "Bite her! Take hold of her! Down with the scum of the earth!"

No. 3. One of the best cartoons called forth by the Emancipation Proclamation. The man of color, cutting his old associates, addresses them: "Light! Get out. I ain't no ob you no more. *Use a Man, I do!*"

No. 4. An English view of emancipation. "One Good Turn Deserves Another." Old Abe: "Why I du declare it's my dear old Sambo! Course you'll fight for us, Sambo. Lend us a hand, old hoss, du!"

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

EXECUTIVE MANSION,

WASHINGTON, Friday, Aug. 22, 1862.

HON. HORACE GREELEY:

DEAR SIR: . . . As to the policy I "seem to be pursuing," as you say, I have not meant to leave any one in doubt. I would save the Union. I would save it in the shortest way under the Constitution.

The sooner the national authority can be restored, the nearer the Union will be—the Union as it was.

If there be those who would not save the Union unless they could at the same time save slavery, I do not agree with them.

If there be those who would not save the Union unless they could at the same time destroy slavery, I do not agree with them.

*My permanent object is to save the Union and not either to save or destroy slavery.*

If I could save the Union without freeing any slave, I would do it—and if I could save it by freeing all the slaves, I would do it—and if I could save it by freeing some and leaving others alone, I would also do that.

What I do about slavery and the colored race, I do because I believe it helps to save the Union, and what I forbear, I forbear because I do not believe it would help to save the Union.

I shall do less whenever I shall believe what I am doing hurts the cause, and shall do more whenever I believe doing more will help the cause. . . .

Yours,

A. LINCOLN.

—McPherson, 334.

[September 13, 1862, Lincoln gave an audience to a deputation from all the religious denominations of Chicago, presenting a memorial for the immediate issue of an emancipation proclamation. In his reply the President spoke in part as follows:—] . . . Now, then, tell me, if you please, what possible result of good would follow the issuing of such a proclamation as you desire? Understand, I raise no objections against it on legal or constitutional grounds, for, as Commander-in-Chief of the Army and Navy, in time of war I suppose I have a right to take any measure which may best subdue the enemy, nor do I urge objections of a moral nature, in view of possible consequences of insurrection and massacre at the South. I view this matter as a practical war measure, to be decided on according to the advantages or disadvantages it may offer to the suppression of the rebellion.—McPherson, 231-232.

[September 22, 1862, Lincoln issued a preliminary proclamation stating that on Jan. 1, 1863, all persons held as slaves within any state or designated part of a state, the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States, shall be then, thenceforward, and forever free, and that the executive would, on that date, designate the states and parts of states if any in which the people shall then be in rebellion.]

### PROCLAMATION OF EMANCIPATION, JANUARY 1, 1863.

Now, therefore, I, Abraham Lincoln, President of the United States, by virtue of the power in me vested as Commander-in-Chief of the army and navy of the United States in time of actual armed rebellion against the authority and government of the United States, and as a fit and necessary war measure for suppressing said rebellion, do, on this first day of January, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, and in accordance with my purpose so to do, publicly proclaimed for the full period of one hundred days from the

day first above mentioned [Sept. 22, 1862], order and designate, as the states and parts of states wherein the people thereof respectively are this day in rebellion against the United States, the following, to wit:

Arkansas, Texas, Louisiana (except the parishes of St. Bernard, Plaquemine, Jefferson, St. John, St. Charles, St. James, Ascension, Assumption, Terre Borne, Lafourche, St. Marie, St. Martin, and Orleans, including the city of New Orleans), Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, South Carolina, North Carolina, and Virginia (except the forty-eight counties designated as West Virginia, and also the counties of Berkeley, Accomac, Northampton, Elizabeth City, York, Princess Anne, and Norfolk, including the cities of Norfolk and Portsmouth), and which excepted parts are for the present left precisely as if this proclamation were not issued.

And, by virtue of the power and for the purpose aforesaid, I do order and declare that all persons held as slaves within said designated states and parts of states are and henceforth shall be free; and that the Executive Government of the United States, including the military and naval authorities thereof, will recognize and maintain the freedom of said persons.

And I hereby enjoin upon the people so declared to be free, to abstain from all violence, unless in necessary self-defense; and I commend to them that in all cases, when allowed, they labor faithfully for reasonable wages.

And I further declare and make known that such persons of suitable condition will be received into the armed service of the United States, to garrison forts, positions, stations, and other places, and to man vessels of all sorts in said service.

And upon this act, sincerely believed to be an act of justice, warranted by the Constitution, upon military necessity, I invoke the considerate judgment of mankind and the gracious favor of Almighty God.

In testimony whereof, I have herewith set my name, and caused the seal of the United States to be affixed. Done at the city of Washington, this first day of January, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, and of the Independence of the United States the eighty-seventh.

[L.S.]

ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

By the President:

William H. Seward, Secretary of State.

—McPherson, 228-229.

### LETTER OF OWEN LOVEJOY TO WM. LLOYD GARRISON.

WASHINGTON, February 22, 1864.

Recurring to the President there are a great many reports concerning him which seem to be reliable and authentic, which, after all, are not so. It was currently reported among the anti-slavery men of Illinois that the emancipation proclamation was extorted from him by the outward pressure, and particularly by the delegation from the Christian Convention that met at Chicago. Now, the fact is this, as I had it from his own lips: He had written the proclamation in the summer, as early as June, I think—but will not be certain as to the precise time—and called his Cabinet together, and informed them he had written it, and meant to make it, but wanted to read it to them for any criticism or remarks as to the features or details. After having done so, Mr. Seward suggested whether it would not be well for him to withhold its publication until after we had gained some substantial advantage in the field, as at that time we had met with many reverses, and it might be considered a cry of despair. He told me he thought the suggestion a wise one, and so held on the proclamation until after the battle of Antietam. . . .—McPherson, 233.

# Topic U 34. Reconstruction of the South, 1865-1877.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. The Problems of Reconstruction.
  - a) Position of seceding states after war.
  - b) On what conditions should they be admitted to Union?
  - c) By whom should conditions be named?
  - d) What should be the political and civil privileges of freedmen?
  - e) Who should have charge of enforcing these rights?
  - f) What punishment should be inflicted upon southern whites, particularly the leaders?
2. Theories of Reconstruction.
  - a) Lincoln and Johnson theory; State entitled to all rights as soon as state government is controlled by loyal citizens.
  - b) State-suicide theory—a state withdrawing from union committed political suicide and is non-existent.
  - c) Conquered-territory theory—after war the confederate states became conquered territory of the Union.
3. Presidential Reconstruction.
  - a) Lincoln's policy.
  - b) Johnson's policy: states should be recognized as soon as a state convention or legislature had:
    - 1) Repealed ordinance of secession.
    - 2) Ratified 13th amendment.
    - 3) Repudiated war debt.
  - c) Johnson's policy adopted in South. The states agreed to his terms and proceeded to reorganize; in December, 1865, sent senators and representatives to Washington.
  - d) States thus reorganized provided by vagrancy and apprenticeship laws for keeping negroes at work for their old masters.
4. Quarrel between Johnson and Congress.
  - a) Causes: Johnson's plan of reconstruction; his speeches; his vetoes.
  - b) Congress passed its measures over his vetoes:
    - 1) Freedmen's Bureau Act.
    - 2) Civil Rights Act.
    - 3) Tenure of Office Act.
5. Congressional Reconstruction.
  - a) System of "thorough"; "black Republicans"; led by Thaddeus Stevens, Charles Sumner, and Henry Wilson.
  - b) Policy: negroes to be enfranchised; confederates disfranchised; 14th (and later 15th) amendment to be ratified by votes of southern states.
  - c) Refusal to admit Congressmen from states reconstructed by Johnson.
  - d) Great Reconstruction Act, March, 1867: provisions.
  - e) Fourteenth Amendment; analysis of provisions.
6. Impeachment of Johnson.
  - a) Cause:
    - 1) Personal quarrel with President.
    - 2) Fear of Johnson's interference with Congressional reconstruction.
    - 3) Johnson's violation of tenure of office act.
  - b) Trial.
  - c) Result: failure to convict (one vote lacking).
7. Election of Grant, 1868.
8. Completion of Congressional Reconstruction.
  - a) New southern constitutions.
  - b) Freedmen admitted to suffrage.
  - c) Adoption of Fourteenth Amendment with votes of southern states.
  - d) Proposal and adoption of Fifteenth Amendment.
  - e) Restoration of southern states to the Union.
9. Carpet-bagger and Negro Rule.
  - a) Definition of carpet-bagger.
  - b) Negroes ignorant and easily led by scheming northerners (carpet-baggers) or southerners (scalawags).
  - c) Extravagance; heavy debts.
10. Ku Klux Klan.
  - a) Purpose to intimidate negroes and drive out carpet-baggers; restore white rulers.
  - b) Extent of organization; methods.
  - c) Led to Force Acts.
  - d) Great disorder in south.
11. White Control in South.
  - a) Regained, 1872-1878, by Ku Klux methods; by withdrawal of troops from south; by feeling in north that south should be left to settle race question.
  - b) Later formal disfranchisement of negroes by constitutional provisions.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 446-457, 472; Ashley, 431-442; Channing, 536-545; Hart, 491-498, 503-505; James & Sanford, 415-436; Johnston-MacDonald, 444-448, 455-458; McLaughlin, 469-476, 489, 500; McMaster, 425-432, 439-442; Montgomery, 328-333, 345; Muzzey, 477-489.
- For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, *Reconstruction and Constitution*, 31-280; Elson, U. S., 786-812; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 15; Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, 251-277.
- For Topical Study.—*Cambridge Modern History*, VII, 622-642; Johnston, *American Political History*, II, 127-307.
1. Dunning, *Reconstruction*, ch. 1-2; Wilson, *American People*, V, 1-8.
  2. Dunning, ch. 3; Rhodes, U. S., V, 516-563; Wilson, V, 1-26.
  3. Dunning, ch. 4-5; Rhodes, V, 563-625; Wilson, V, 27-34.
  4. Dunning, ch. 5-7; Rhodes, VI, ch. 31, 32; Wilson, V, 31-38, 44-53.
  5. Dunning, pp. 97-108; Rhodes, VI, ch. 33; Wilson, V, 53-55.
  6. Dunning, ch. 8; Rhodes, VI, ch. 34.
  7. F. B. Andrews, *United States in Our Own Time*, ch. 1-2; Dunning, ch. 11, 13-14, 16; Rhodes, VI, 168-193, 241-217, 284-334; Wilson, V, 57-59.
  8. Andrews, ch. 5-6; Dunning, ch. 13-14.
  9. Andrews, ch. 6; Wilson, V, 59-64.
  10. Andrews, ch. 6; Dunning, ch. 17-18; Rhodes, VII, ch. 11, 12; Wilson, V, 72-78, 98-102, 115-120.
- Source References.—Caldwell and Persinger, 465-484; Fleming, *Documentary History of Reconstruction*; Hart, *Source Book*, 336-354; Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. 23-25; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. 23; Johnston, *American Orations*, IV, 273-328; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 470-472, 488-578, 540-551, 553-564, 568-569; MacDonald, *Statutes*, 85-88, 122-171, 179-215, 216-235, 249-268, 290-293; McPherson, *History of Reconstruction*.
- Biography.—Lives of Andrew Johnson, Thaddeus Stevens, Charles Sumner, U. S. Grant.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

The extracts given below include some of the principal documents relating to the reconstruction of the seceding states up to the great reconstruction act of March 2, 1867.

RESOLUTION ON THE NATURE AND OBJECT OF THE WAR,  
JULY 22, 1861.

*Resolved*, . . . That the present deplorable civil war has been forced upon the country by the disunionists of the southern States, now in revolt against the constitutional government, and in arms around the capital; that in this national emergency, Congress, banishing all feelings of mere passion or resentment, will recollect only its duty to the whole country; that this war is not waged on their part in any spirit of oppression, or for any purpose of conquest or subjugation, or purpose of overthrowing or interfering with the rights or established institutions of those States, but to defend and maintain the supremacy of the Constitution, and to preserve the Union with all the dignity, equality, and rights of the several States unimpaired; and that as soon as these objects are accomplished the war ought to cease.—McPherson, *Political History of the Rebellion*, 286.

PROCLAMATION OF AMNESTY, DECEMBER 8, 1863.

. . . Whereas, it is now desired by some persons heretofore engaged in said rebellion to resume their allegiance to the United States, and to reinaugurate loyal state governments within and for their respective states:

Therefore, I, Abraham Lincoln, President of the United States, do proclaim, declare, and make known to all persons who have, directly or by implication, participated in the existing rebellion, except as hereinafter excepted, that a full pardon is hereby granted to them and each of them, with restoration of all rights of property, except as to slaves, and in property cases where rights of third parties shall have intervened, and upon the condition that every such person shall take and subscribe an oath, and thenceforward keep and maintain said oath inviolate; and which oath shall be registered for permanent preservation, and shall be of the tenor and effect following, to wit:

"I, ———, do solemnly swear, in presence of Almighty God, that I will henceforth faithfully support, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States and the Union of the States thereunder; and that I will, in like manner, abide by and faithfully support all acts of Congress passed during the existing rebellion with reference to slaves, so long and so far as not repealed, modified, or held void by Congress, or by decision of the Supreme Court; and that I will, in like manner, abide by and faithfully support all proclamations of the President made during the existing rebellion having reference to slaves, so long and so far as not modified or declared void by decision of the Supreme Court. So help me God."

. . . And I do further proclaim, declare, and make known that whenever, in any of the States of Arkansas, Texas, Louisiana, Mississippi, Tennessee, Alabama, Georgia, Florida, South Carolina, and North Carolina, a number of persons, not less than one tenth in number of the votes cast in such State at the presidential election of the year A. D. 1860, each having taken the oath aforesaid, and not having since violated it, and being a qualified voter by the election law of the State existing immediately before the so-called act of secession, and excluding all others, shall re-establish a State government which shall be republican, and in nowise contravening said oath, such shall be recognized as the true government of the State, . . .

And I do further proclaim, declare, and make known that any provision which may be adopted by such State government in relation to the freed people of such State, which shall recognize and declare their permanent freedom, provide for their education, and which may yet be consistent as a temporary arrangement with their present condition as a laboring, landless, and homeless class, will not be objected to by the National Executive.

And it is suggested as not improper that, in constructing a loyal State government in any State, the name of the State, the boundary, the subdivisions, the constitution, and the general code of laws, as before the rebellion, be maintained, . . .

To avoid misunderstanding, it may be proper to say that this proclamation, so far as it relates to State governments, has no reference to States wherein loyal State governments have all the while been maintained. And, for the same reason, it may be proper to further say, that whether members sent to congress from any State shall be admitted to seats constitutionally rests exclusively with the respective Houses, and not to any extent with the Executive. . . .—Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, VI, 213-215.

LINCOLN'S LAST SPEECH, APRIL 11, 1865.

. . . In the annual message of December, 1863, and accompanying proclamation, I presented a plan of reconstruction (as the phrase goes) which I promised, if adopted by any State, should be acceptable to, and sustained by the Executive Government of the nation. I distinctly stated that this was not the only plan which might possibly be acceptable; and I also distinctly protested that the Executive claimed no right to say when or whether such members should be admitted to seats in Congress from such States. . . .

I have been shown a letter on this subject, supposed to be an able one, in which the writer expresses regret that my mind has not seemed to be definitely fixed on the question whether the seceded States, so-called, are in the Union or out of it. . . . As appears to me, that question has not been, nor yet is, a practically material one, and that any discussion of it, while it thus remains practically immaterial, could have no effect other than the mischievous one of dividing our friends. As yet, whatever it may hereafter become, that question is bad, as a basis of a controversy, and good for nothing at all—a merely pernicious abstraction. We all agree that the seceded States, so-called, are out of their proper practical relation with the Union, and that the sole object of the Government, civil and military, in regard to those States, is to again get them into that proper practical relation? I believe it is not only possible, but in fact easier to do this without deciding, or ever considering, whether these States have ever been out of the Union, than with it. . . .—McPherson, *Political History of the Rebellion*, Appendix, 609.

PROCLAMATION DECLARING THE INSURRECTION AT AN  
END, APRIL 2, 1866.

And whereas there now exists no organized armed resistance of misguided citizens or others to the authority of the United States in the States of Georgia, South Carolina, Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Alabama, Louisiana, Arkansas, Mississippi, and Florida, and the laws can be sustained and enforced therein by the proper civil authority, State or Federal, and the pro-



# SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

ple of said States are well and loyally disposed, and have conformed or will conform in their legislation to the condition of affairs growing out of the amendment to the Constitution of the United States, prohibiting slavery within the limits and jurisdiction of the United States; and

Whereas, in view of the before-recited premises, it is the manifest determination of the American people that no State, of its own will, has the right or the power to go out of, or separate itself from, or be separated from the American Union, and that therefore each State ought to remain and constitute an integral part of the United States; and

Whereas the people of the several before-mentioned States have, in the manner aforesaid, given satisfactory evidence that they acquiesce in this sovereign and important resolution of national unity; and . . .

Whereas the Constitution of the United States provides for constituent communities only as States, and not as Territories, dependencies, provinces, or protectorates; and

Whereas such constituent States must necessarily be, and by the Constitution and laws of the United States are made equals, and placed upon a like footing as to political rights, immunities, dignity, and power with the several States with which they are united; and . . .

Whereas the policy of the government of the United States, from the beginning of the insurrection to its overthrow and final suppression, has been in conformity with the principles herein set forth and enumerated;

Now, therefore, I, ANDREW JOHNSON, President of the United States, do hereby proclaim and declare that the insurrection which heretofore existed in the States of Georgia, South Carolina, Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Alabama, Louisiana, Arkansas, Mississippi, and Florida is at an end, and is henceforth to be so regarded. . . .—Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, VI, 429-432.

## FIRST RECONSTRUCTION ACT, MARCH 2, 1867.

Whereas no legal State governments or adequate protection for life or property now exists in the rebel States of Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Mississippi, Alabama, Louisiana, Florida, Texas, and Arkansas; and whereas it is necessary that peace and good order should be enforced in said States until loyal and republican State governments can be legally established: Therefore,

*Be it enacted*, . . . That said rebel States shall be divided into military districts and made subject to the military authority of the United States as hereinafter prescribed, and for that purpose Virginia shall constitute the first district; North Carolina and South Carolina the second district; Georgia, Alabama, and Florida the third district; Mississippi and Arkansas the fourth district; and Louisiana and Texas the fifth district.

SEC. 2. *And be it further enacted*, That it shall be the duty of the President to assign to the command of each of said districts an officer of the army, not below the rank of brigadier-general, and to detail a sufficient mili-

tary force to enable such officer to perform his duties and enforce his authority within the district to which he is assigned.

SEC. 3. *And be it further enacted*, That it shall be the duty of each officer assigned as aforesaid, to protect all persons in their rights of person and property, to suppress insurrection, disorder, and violence, and to punish, or cause to be punished, all disturbers of the public peace and criminals; and to this end he may allow local civil tribunals to take jurisdiction of and to try offenders, or when in his judgment it may be necessary for the trial of offenders, he shall have power to organize military commissions or tribunals for that purpose, and all interference under color of State authority with the exercise of military authority under this act, shall be null and void.

SEC. 4. . . . *Provided*, That no sentence of death under the provisions of this act shall be carried into effect without the approval of the President.

SEC. 5. *And be it further enacted*, That when the people of any one of said rebel States shall have formed a constitution of government in conformity with the Constitution of the United States in all respects, framed by a convention of delegates elected by the male citizens of said State, twenty-one years old and upward, of whatever race, color, or previous condition, who have been resident in said State for one year previous to the day of such election, except such as may be disfranchised for participation in the rebellion or for felony at common law, and when such constitution shall provide that the elective franchise shall be enjoyed by all such persons as have the qualifications herein stated for electors of delegates, and when such constitution shall be ratified by a majority of the persons voting on the question of ratification who are qualified as electors for delegates, and when such constitution shall have been submitted to Congress for examination and approval, and Congress shall have approved the same, and when said State, by a vote of its legislature elected under said constitution, shall have adopted the amendment to the Constitution of the United States, proposed by the Thirty-ninth Congress, and known as article fourteen, and when said article shall have become part of the Constitution of the United States said State shall be declared entitled to representation in Congress, and senators and representatives shall be admitted therefrom on their taking the oath prescribed by law, and then and thereafter the preceding sections of this act shall be inoperative in said State: *Provided*, That no person excluded from the privilege of holding office by said proposed amendment to the Constitution of the United States, shall be eligible to election as a member of the convention to frame a constitution for any of said rebel States, nor shall any such person vote for members of such convention.

SEC. 6. *And be it further enacted*, That, until the people of said rebel States shall be by law admitted to representation in the Congress of the United States, any civil governments which may exist therein shall be deemed provisional only, and in all respects subject to the paramount authority of the United States at any time to abolish, modify, control, or supersede the same; . . . —*Statutes at Large of U. S.*, XIV, 428-429.



# Topic U 35. National Reorganization, 1865-1880.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

### ADMINISTRATIONS OF JOHNSON, GRANT, AND HAYES.

1. Foreign Affairs.
  - a) French troops withdrawn from Mexico, 1866.
  - b) Purchase of Alaska, 1867.
  - c) Relations with England:
    - 1) Right of expatriation granted 1870.
    - 2) Treaty of Washington, 1871; arbitration of differences respecting northwest boundary, the fisheries, and the Alabama claims.
    - 3) Geneva award: \$15,500,000 to United States.
  - d) Relations with West Indies.
    - 1) Cuba and Virginius affair.
    - 2) Attempt to purchase Danish West Indies.
    - 3) Attempt to annex San Domingo.
2. Financial Reconstruction.
  - a) National debt in 1866: amount and character; rapid payment of floating indebtedness.
  - b) Greenback question: Review of subject; finally upheld by supreme court; demand that greenbacks be retired after war; about one-third retired, remainder still in circulation (1912); rise of Greenback Party (1874-1880).
  - c) Provision for war taxes:
    - 1) Protective tariff retained.
    - 2) Internal taxes largely abolished.
  - d) Currency Questions:
    - 1) Greenbacks—see above.
    - 2) Metallic currency in 1860.
    - 3) Act of 1873, demonetizing silver dollar, "the crime of 1873."
    - 4) Demand for re-instatement of silver dollar.
    - 5) Bland-Allison Act, 1878. Provisions.
  - e) Resumption of specie payments, January 1, 1879.
3. Economic and Industrial Reorganization.
  - a) General character of period:
    - 1) War and high tariff a stimulus to industry in north.
    - 2) Rapid settlement of west under influence of homestead law, new railroads, and heavy immigration.
    - 3) Silver mining in Nevada and Colorado (1859-1877).
    - 4) Coal oil in Pennsylvania.
    - 5) Great development of mining and manufacturing industries: iron and steel.
    - 6) Organization of capitalistic corporations.
    - 7) Organization of labor unions.
  - b) Great railroad expansion: first Pacific railroad; Jay Cooke; Credit Mobilier.
  - c) The Granger Movement, 1870-1874; purpose, to improve condition of farmers, and restrict monopoly of the railroads.
  - d) The Labor Movement: early trades unions in the United States; attempts to extend organizations; labor questions in politics (after 1872); Knights of Labor; conflicts of labor and capital; strikes, especially that of 1877; movement for eight-hour law, and against Chinese labor and foreign contract labor.
4. The Crisis of 1873.
 

Causes; extent of business depression; results.

5. Political Reorganization.
  - a) Political parties: dissatisfaction in Republican party; renewed strength of Democrats; rise of many new parties: labor, greenback, prohibition, etc.
  - b) Political scandals: Corruption in Federal departments; Credit Mobilier; Salary Grab; Whiskey Scandal; Star Route cases.
  - c) Civil Service Reform; unsuccessful efforts of Grant.
  - d) Presidential campaigns: 1868, 1872, 1876.
6. Election of 1876.
  - a) Democrats in control in South; dissatisfaction in North with Republicans.
  - b) Contested election; duplicate returns from Oregon, Louisiana, Florida, and South Carolina.
  - c) Electoral Commission.
  - d) Counting the votes—all contested votes given to Hayes.
7. Indian Affairs—Custer Massacre.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 458-480; Ashley, 442-461; Channing, 533-536, 546-550; Hart, 498-503, 505-509, 511-519; James & Sanford, 437-450, 451-459; Johnston-MacDonald, 448-453, 458-469; McLaughlin, 479-481, 485-505; McMaster, 433-451; Montgomery, 331-348; Muzzey, 489-520.

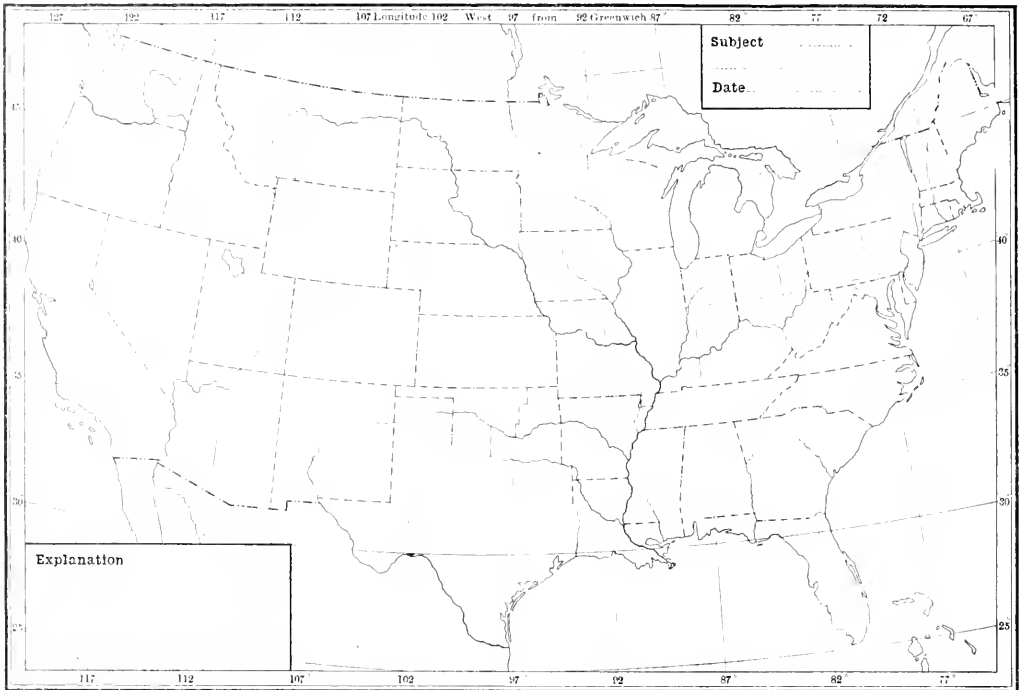
For Collateral Reading.—Burgess, Reconstruction and the Constitution, 280-327; Coman, Industrial History, 289-312; Dewey, Financial History, 331-401; Elson, U. S., 843-854; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 16, 17; Stanwood, History of Presidency, ch. 23-26; Taussig, Tariff History, 171-193; Wilson, Division and Reunion, 273-287.

For Topical Study.—

1. E. B. Andrews, United States in Our Own Time, 46-56, 87-95; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 636-638; Dunning, Reconstruction, ch. 10; Foster, Century of American Diplomacy; Hart, Foundations of American Foreign Policy; Rhodes, U. S., VI, 205-215, ch. 38, VII, 29-36; Wilson, American People, V, 38-44, 66-72.
2. Andrews, 249-279; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 631, 643; Rhodes, VI, 215-234, 241-243, VII, 53-73; Stanwood, Tariff Controversies, II, ch. 14; Wilson, V, 64-66.
3. Andrews, I-II, 95-105, 281-305; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 647; Dunning, ch. 9, 13-14; Rhodes, VI, 217-283, VII, 37-42; Sparks, Expansion, ch. 30 (Pacific R. R.); Sparks, National Development, ch. 1-5; Wright, Industrial Evolution, ch. 12-19.
4. Andrews, 250-265; Rhodes, VII, 42-73; Wilson, V, 92-95.
5. Andrews, 57-83, 101-109; Cambridge Modern History, VII, 644-651; Dunning, ch. 12, 15; Johnston, American Political History, II, 555-588; Rhodes, VI, ch. 39, VII, 1-28, 182-206; Sparks, National Development, ch. 6-10; Wilson, V, 78-92.
6. Andrews, ch. 8; Dunning, ch. 19-21; Rhodes, VII, 206-226, ch. 14; Wilson, V, 104-111.
7. Andrews, ch. 7; Wilson, V, 102-101.

Source References.—Hart, Source Book, 352-372; Hart, Contemporaries, IV, ch. 26 and pp. 513-518, 529-533, 542-561; Johnston, American Orations, IV, 238-272, 329-423; MacDonald, Source Book, 473-482, 511-514, 539-540, 551-553, 565-575; MacDonald, Statutes, 174-179, 203-204, 215-216, 235-249, 268-290, 294-316.

Biography.—Lives of Jay Cooke, J. G. Blaine, Garfield, Tilden.



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 35.

Show on the map the location of the principal transcontinental railroads, and the parts of the West which received the greatest portions of the immigration, 1865-1880.

### SOURCE-STUDY.

The policy adopted by the United States government in its distribution of public lands has been of far-reaching consequence in the up-building of the nation. That policy was marked by a democratic spirit of liberality and impartiality unknown in other countries. Copied in some of its elements from the land systems of the colonies, particularly New England, it was developed into a great national means for advancing popular well-being; and its features have since been incorporated into the land systems of other new countries, like Canada and Australia. No American citizen can afford to be ignorant of the principal acts relating to this distribution.

#### PRE-EMPTION ACT, SEPTEMBER 4, 1850.

SEC. 10. *And be it further enacted*, That from and after the passage of this act, every person being the head of a family, or widow, or single man, over the age of twenty-one years, and being a citizen of the United States, or having filed his declaration of intention to become a citizen, as required by the naturalization laws, who since the first day of June, A. D. eighteen hundred and forty, has made or shall hereafter make a settlement in person on the public lands to which the Indian title had been at the time of such settlement extinguished, and which has been, or shall have been surveyed prior thereto, and who shall inhabit and improve the same, and who has or shall erect a dwelling thereon, shall be, and is hereby, authorized to enter with the register of the land office for the district in which such land may lie,

by legal subdivisions, any number of acres not exceeding one hundred and sixty, or a quarter section of land, to include the residence of such claimant, upon paying to the United States the minimum price of such land . . .

SEC. 11. *And be it further enacted*, That when two or more persons shall have settled on the same quarter section of land, the right of pre-emption shall be in him or her who made the first settlement, provided such persons shall conform to the other provisions of this act.

— *U. S. Statutes at Large*, Vol. V, 455-456.

#### THE HOMESTEAD ACT, MAY 20, 1862.

Chap. LXXV.—An Act to secure Homesteads to actual Settlers on the Public Domain.

[*Be it enacted*, etc.,] that any person who is the head of a family, or who has arrived at the age of twenty-one years, and is a citizen of the United States, or who shall have filed his declaration of intention to become such, as required by the naturalization laws of the United States, and who has never borne arms against the United States Government or given aid and comfort to its enemies, shall, from and after the first [day of] January, eighteen hundred and sixty-three, be entitled to enter one quarter section\* or a less quantity of unappropriated public lands, upon which said persons may have filed a pre-emption claim, or which may, at the time the appli-

\*160 acres.

# NO FOR THE YELLOW STONE



# GOLD MINES OF IDAHO!

A NEW AND VERY LIGHT DRAUGHT STEAMER WILL LEAVE

## SAINT LOUIS FOR BIGHORN CITY!

THE JUNCTION OF BIGHORN AND YELLOW STONE RIVERS.

## SATURDAY, APRIL 20, AT 12 O'CLOCK M.

Patrons taking this route save 400 miles river transportation and over 100 miles land transportation. Bighorn City built by a good wagon road from Virginia City 200 and from Bannack City 205 miles.

I WILL ALSO SEND TWO LIGHT DRAUGHT SIDE-WHEEL STEAMERS

## TO FORT BENTON

Our leaving at the same time, and the second about fifteen days later. I am prepared to contract freight and passage either to Bighorn City or Fort Benton.  
Inquire to W. B. GUYTON, ST. LOUIS and A. W. HILL, Virginia City, or to W. WARDWILL, Bannack City.

For Freight or Passage apply to **JOHN G. COPELIN,**

(arr. JOHN J. ROY & CO., St. Louis.)

1

No. 1. This poster, issued in the days of the Idaho gold fever (1863), shows the manner of reaching the gold diggings. Note that the route advertised saved persons taking it 100 miles of river transportation and 100 miles of land journey. From F. L. Paxson's "Last American Frontier," p. 114, by permission of The MacMillan Co., publishers.

No. 2. This interesting appeal forms the dedicatory page of a pamphlet entitled "Minnesota, the Empire State of the New North-West," published in 1878, by the Board of Immigration for the State. It well expresses the sentiments of the new west.

Copyright, 1912 McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

**TO LABORING MEN,**  
WHO EARN A LIVELIHOOD BY HONEST TOIL;

**TO LANDLESS MEN,**  
WHO ASPIRE TO THAT DIGNITY AND INDEPENDENCE WHICH  
COMES FROM POSSESSION IN GOD'S FREE EARTH;

**TO ALL MEN,**

OF MODERATE MEANS, AND MEN OF WEALTH, WHO WILL ACCEPT  
HOMES IN A BEAUTIFUL AND PROSPEROUS COUNTRY, THIS  
PAMPHLET, WITH ITS INFORMATION AND COUNSEL,  
IS RESPECTFULLY OFFERED BY DIRECTION  
OF THE GOVERNOR AND BOARD OF  
IMMIGRATION OF THE STATE  
OF MINNESOTA.

**THE BENEFITS OF IMMIGRATION ARE RECIPROCAL.**  
If it is well to EXCHANGE THE TYRANNIES AND THANKLESS TOIL  
OF THE OLD WORLD, FOR THE FREEDOM AND INDEPENDENCE OF  
THE NEW, AND TO GIVE THE OVERCROWDED AVOCATIONS  
OF THE EAST A CHANCE TO VENT THEMSELVES UPON  
THE LIMITLESS AND FERTILE PRAIRIES OF THE  
NEW NORTH WEST, it is ALSO WELL FOR  
THE HAND OF LABOR TO BRING FORTH  
THE RICH TREASURES HID IN  
THE BOSOM OF THE  
NEW EARTH.

**THE WEALTH OF MINNESOTA CONSISTS NOT IN HER FERTILE PRAIRIES AND  
MIGHTY FORESTS, HER BROAD RIVERS AND THOUSAND LAKES, BUT  
IN THOSE PRODUCTS WHICH FILL THE BARN WITH  
PLENTY, AND QUICKEN THE ENERGIES OF  
TRADE AND COMMERCE.**

2

No. 2. This poster, issued in the days of the Idaho gold fever (1863), shows the manner of reaching the gold diggings. Note that the route advertised saved persons taking it 100 miles of river transportation and 100 miles of land journey. From F. L. Paxson's "Last American Frontier," p. 114, by permission of The MacMillan Co., publishers.

No. 2. This interesting appeal forms the dedicatory page of a pamphlet entitled "Minnesota, the Empire State of the New North-West," published in 1878, by the Board of Immigration for the State. It well expresses the sentiments of the new west.

Copyright, 1912 McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

**SOURCE STUDY.—Continued.**

cation is made, be subject to pre-emption at one dollar and twenty-five cents, or less, per acre; or eighty acres or less of such unappropriated lands, at two dollars and fifty cents per acre, to be located in a body, in conformity to the legal subdivisions of the public lands, and after the same shall have been surveyed: *Provided*, That any person owning and residing on land may, under the provisions of this act, enter other land lying contiguous to his or her said land, which shall not, with the land so already owned and occupied, exceed in the aggregate one hundred and sixty acres.

SEC. 2. *And be it further enacted*, That the person applying for the benefit of this act shall, upon application to the register of the land office in which he or she is about to make such entry, make affidavit before the said register or receiver that he or she is the head of a family, or is twenty-one years or more of age, or shall have performed service in the army or navy of the United States, and that he has never borne arms against the Government of the United States or given aid and comfort to its enemies, and that such application is made for his or her exclusive use and benefit, and that said entry is made for the purpose of actual settlement and cultivation, and not either directly or indirectly for the use or benefit of any other person or persons whomsoever; and upon filing the said affidavit with the register or receiver, and on payment of ten dollars, he or she shall thereupon be permitted to enter the quantity of land specified: *Provided, however*, That no certificate shall be given or patent issued therefor until the expiration of five years from the date of such entry; and if, at the expiration of such time, or at any time within two years thereafter, the person making such entry; or, if he be dead, his widow; or in case of her death, his heirs or devisee; or in case of a widow making such entry, her heirs or devisee in case of her death; shall prove by two credible witnesses that he, she, or they have resided upon or cultivated the same for the term of five years immediately succeeding the time of filing the affidavit aforesaid, and shall make affidavit that no part of said land has been alienated, and that he has born true allegiance to the Government of the United States; then, in such case, he, she, or they, if at that time a citizen of the United States, shall be entitled to a patent, as in other cases provided for by law: *And provided, further*, That in case of the death of both father and mother, leaving an infant child, or children, under twenty-one years of age, the right and fee shall enure to the benefit of said infant child or children; and the executor, administrator, or guardian may, at any time within two years after the death of the surviving parent, and in accordance with the laws of the State in which such children for the time being have their domicile, sell said land for the benefit of said infants, but for no other purpose; and the purchaser shall acquire the absolute title by the purchase, and be entitled to a patent from the United States, on payment of the office fees and sum of money herein specified.

SEC. 4. *And be it further enacted*, That no lands acquired under the provisions of this act shall in any event become liable to the satisfaction of any debt or debts contracted prior to the issuing of the patent therefor. . . .

SEC. 6. *And be it further enacted*, That no individual shall be permitted to acquire title to more than one quarter section under the provisions of this act; . . . *Provided, further*, That no person who has served, or may hereafter serve, for a period of not less than fourteen

days in the army or navy of the United States, either regular or volunteer, under the laws thereof, during the existence of an actual war, domestic or foreign, shall be deprived of the benefits of this act on account of not having attained the age of twenty-one years. . . .—*U. S. Statutes at Large*, Vol. XII, pp. 392-393.

**THE TIMBER ACT, AS AMENDED MARCH 13, 1874.**

[Be it enacted] That any person who is the head of a family or who has arrived at the age of twenty-one years, and is a citizen of the United States, or, who shall have filed his declaration of intention to become such as required by the naturalization [laws] of the United States, who shall plant, protect, and keep in a healthy, growing condition for eight years, forty acres of timber, the trees thereon not being more than twelve feet apart each way, on any quarter-section of any of the public lands of the United States, or twenty acres on any legal subdivision of eighty acres, or ten acres on any legal subdivision of forty acres, or one-fourth part of any fractional subdivision of land less than forty acres, shall be entitled to a patent for the whole of said quarter-section, or of such legal subdivision of eighty or forty acres, or fractional subdivision of less than forty acres, as the case may be, at the expiration of the said eight years, on making proof of such fact by not less than two credible witnesses. . . .—*Statutes of the U. S.*, 1st sess., 43 cong., p. 21.

An Act to aid in the Construction of a Railroad and Telegraph Line from the Missouri River to the Pacific Ocean. . . .

SEC. 2. *And be it further enacted*, That the right of way through the public lands be, and the same is hereby, granted to said company for the construction of said railroad and telegraph line; and the right, power, and authority is hereby given to said company to take from the public lands adjacent to the line of said road, earth, stone, timber, and other materials for the construction thereof; said right of way is granted to said railroad to the extent of two hundred feet in width on each side of said railroad where it may pass over the public lands. . . . The United States shall extinguish as rapidly as may be the Indian titles to all lands falling under the operation of this act and required for the said right of way and grants hereinafter made.

SEC. 3. *And be it further enacted*, That there shall be, and is hereby, granted to the said company, for the purpose of aiding in the construction of said railroad and telegraph line, and to secure the safe and speedy transportation of the mails, troops, munitions of war, and public stores thereon, every alternate section of public land, designated by odd numbers, to the amount of five alternate sections per mile on each side of said railroad, on the line thereof, and within the limits of ten miles on each side of said road, not sold, reserved, or otherwise disposed of by the United States, and to which a pre-emption or homestead claim may not have attached, at the time the line of said road is definitely fixed: *Provided*, That all mineral lands shall be excepted from the operation of this act; but where the same shall contain timber, the timber thereon is hereby granted to said company. And all such lands, so granted by this section, which shall not be sold or disposed of by said company within three years after the entire road shall have been completed, shall be subject to settlement and pre-emption, like other lands, at a price not exceeding one dollar and twenty-five cents per acre, to be paid to said company. . . .—*U. S. Statutes at Large*, XII, 491-492 (act of July 1, 1862).

# Topic U 36. National Prosperity, 1880-1892.

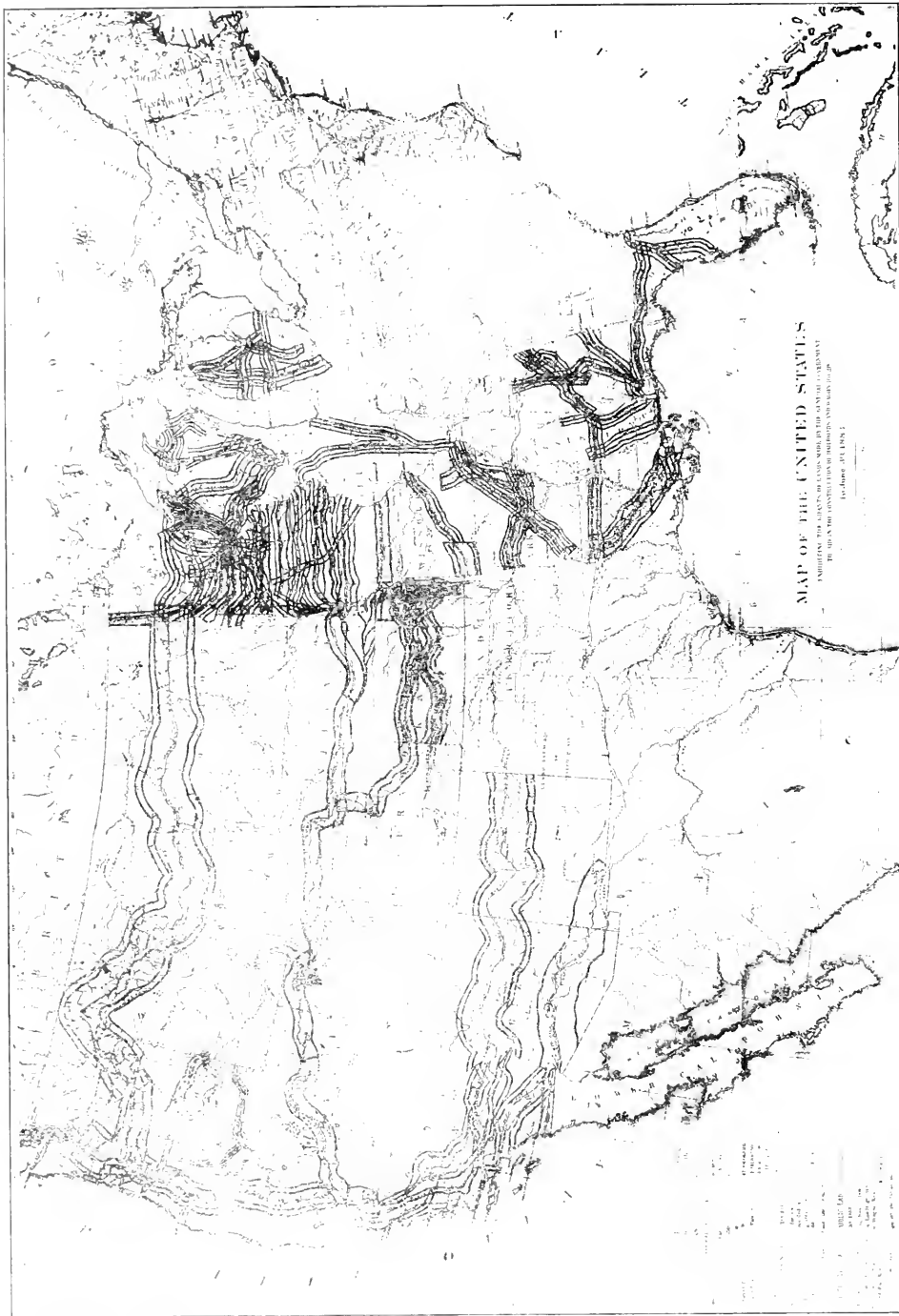
## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF GARFIELD AND ARTHUR, CLEVELAND (1ST), AND HARRISON.

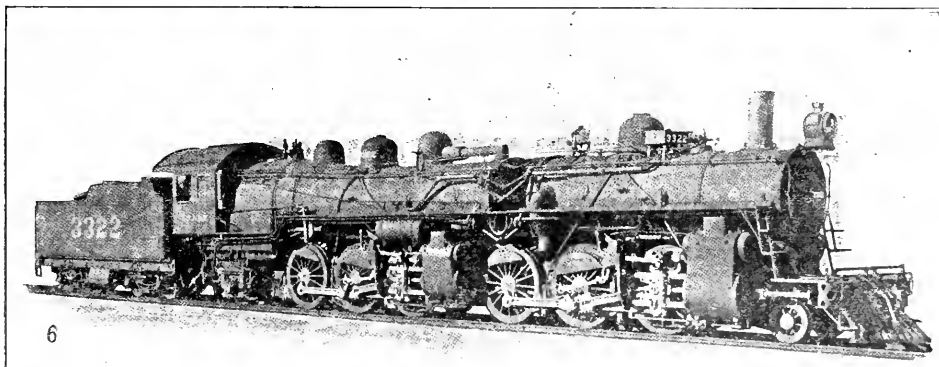
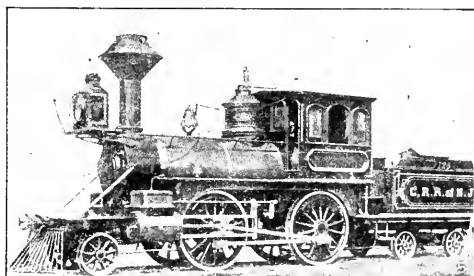
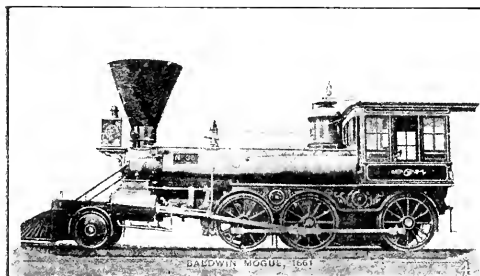
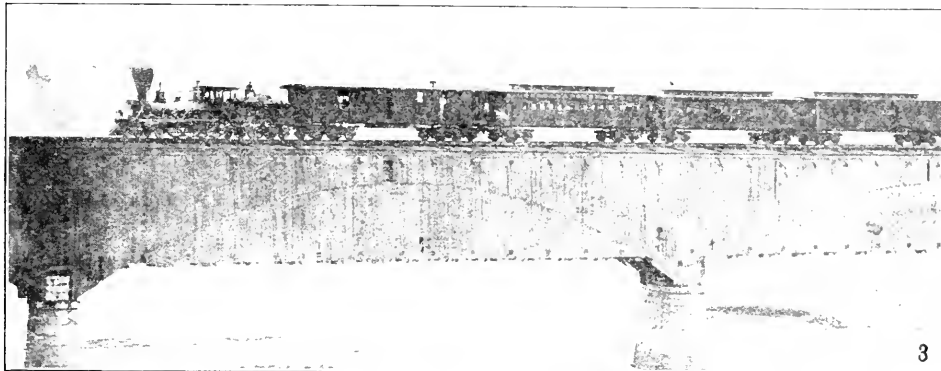
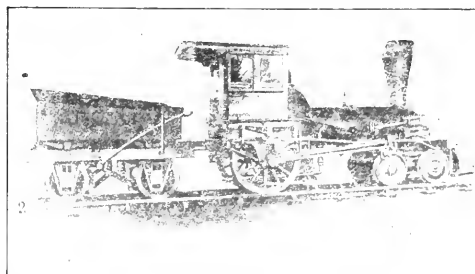
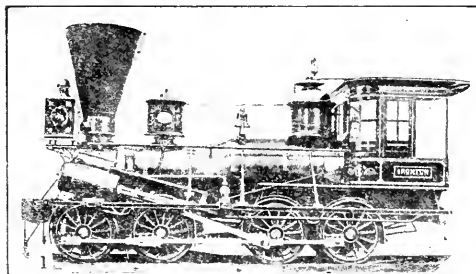
1. General Character of Period: time of unexampled prosperity.
2. Industrial Expansion.
  - a) Development of natural resources; agriculture, mining, petroleum and natural gas, manufactured goods.
  - b) Expansion of foreign trade.
  - c) Growth of corporations; attempt to monopolize products and control prices; led to:
  - d) Sherman anti-trust act of 1890; purposes; provisions; results; not so beneficial as was expected.
3. Growth of Railroads.
  - a) Period of greatest railroad building in the history of the country.
  - b) New western lines; competing lines in the east; railroad rate wars; pooling agreements.
  - c) Popular agitation against railroads; state regulation; the Granger movement; leading to:
4. Interstate Commerce Act, 1887.
  - a) Constitutional powers of Congress over commerce.
  - b) Early exercise of power over interstate commerce.
  - c) Demand for national regulation of railroads.
  - d) Interstate commerce Act:
    - 1) Prohibited unjust practices of railroads.
    - 2) Provided for Interstate Commerce Commission.
  - e) Powers and weaknesses of the Commission.
  - f) Powers augmented by acts of 1906, 1910.
5. Development of the West.
  - a) Encouraged by new railroads and by immigration on a large scale.
  - b) Passing of the Indian frontier; Indian reservations opened to settlers.
  - c) Western industries: northern wheat belt; new mining methods; the destruction of the buffalo, and the occupation of the prairies by herds of cattle and sheep; introduction of orchards on Pacific Coast; irrigation systems; importance of refrigerator cars to the cattle raiser and fruit-producer.
  - d) Admission of new states: North and South Dakota, Montana, Washington (1889); Idaho, Wyoming (1890).
  - e) Mormon question in Utah.
6. Labor Questions.
  - a) Growth of labor organizations; American Federation of Labor.
  - b) Exclusion of Chinese laborers:
    - 1) Treaties with China.
    - 2) Influx of Chinese laborers into Pacific Coast.
    - 3) Movement to exclude them; reasons for.
    - 4) Treaty difficulties finally obviated by special treaty.
  - c) Opposition to foreign contract labor; passage of act of 1885.
  - d) United States Bureau of Labor, 1884.
  - e) Labor disputes; attempts to settle by arbitration laws; movement for eight-hour day.
7. National Finance.
  - a) Rapid payment of national debt.
  - b) Treasury faces a huge surplus.
  - c) Proposals to get rid of surplus by:
    - 1) Increased expenditures;
    - 2) Reduction of internal taxes.
    - 3) Change in the tariff.
8. The Tariff.
  - a) Revenue could be reduced either by increasing tariff or by decreasing it.
  - b) Tariff practically unchanged since the war.
  - c) Act of 1884; slight reduction; protectionist measure.
  - d) Cleveland's message on tariff, 1885; called forth Mills' bill, which failed to pass Senate.
  - e) McKinley tariff of 1890; reduced revenue by increasing tariff; had provisions for a free list, and for reciprocity with other countries.
  - f) Prominence of tariff controversy in this period.
9. General Legislation; Political Events.
  - a) Presidential Succession Law, 1886; succession of cabinet members.
  - b) Electoral Count Law, 1887; regulated the counting of the electoral vote for president.
  - c) Civil Service Reform; failure of Grant's efforts; Act of 1883 considerable advance.
  - d) Sherman Silver Purchase Act of 1890.
  - e) Political campaigns of 1884, 1888, 1892.
10. Foreign Affairs.
  - a) Chinese Exclusion treaty.
  - b) Northeastern fisheries dispute.
  - c) Behring Sea Seal fisheries.
  - d) Joint occupation of Samoa with Germany and Great Britain.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 485-504; Ashley, 462-478, 481, 485-488; Channing, 550-558; Hart, 518-543; James & Sanford, 460-476; Johnston-MacDonald, 469-480; McLaughlin, 505-520; McMaster, 452-470; Montgomery, 348-362; Muzey, 520-532.
- For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, *Economic History*, 286-355, 373-399; Coman, *Industrial History*, 313-318, 361-369; Dewey, *Financial History*, 402-433; Elson, U. S., 854-877; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 34; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 17; Stanwood, *History of Presidency*, ch. 27-29; Taussig, *Tariff History*, 230-283; Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, 289-327.
- For Topical Study.—Cambridge Modern History, VII, 653-661.
1. Dewey, *National Problems*, ch. 1; Wilson, *American People*, V, 120-124.
  2. Sparks, *National Development*, ch. 2; Wilson, V, 124-132.
  3. Hadley, *Railroad Transportation*, 4-7; Johnson, *American Railroad Transportation*; Johnson, *Elements of Transportation*, ch. 3; Sparks, ch. 4.
  4. Andrews, *United States in Our Own Time*, 486-487; Dewey, ch. 6.
  5. Andrews, 585-593; Sparks, ch. 15; Wilson, V, 198-208.
  6. Dewey, ch. 3; Sparks, ch. 5, 14; Wilson, V, 140-142; Wright, *Industrial Evolution*, ch. 18-25.
  7. Wilson, V, 142-149.
  8. Andrews, ch. 17, 19; Dewey, ch. 1, 11; Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, ch. 15-16; Wilson, V, 163-172, 187-194.
  9. Andrews, ch. 12-22; Dewey, ch. 2 (civil service).
  10. Andrews, ch. 11, 16; Dewey, ch. 7, 13.
- Source References.—*American History Leaflets*, 6; Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. 27-29; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 575-595; MacDonald, *Statutes*, 317-411.
- Biography.—Lives of Blaine, Cleveland, B. Harrison.



This map shows the land grants made by the national government to railroads and wagon roads. All the area within the parallel lines (whether double lines or single) was granted for these purposes. The total area granted up to June, 1883, was over 155,000,000 acres, of which over 53,000,000 acres had actually been patented. From Donaldson's "Public Domain."



Development of the locomotive, 1840-1910.

No. 1. Baldwin locomotive about 1850.

No. 2. Passenger locomotive on Chicago and North-Western Railway in 1848.

No. 3. View of the mixed equipment and bridge construction about 1860-1870.

No. 4. Baldwin locomotive of 1861.

No. 5. Central Railroad of New Jersey locomotive, about 1871.

No. 6. Mallet articulated locomotive of 1911.

Nos. 1, 4, 5 and 6 are reproduced by courtesy of the Baldwin Locomotive Works, Philadelphia.

Reproduced by permission of S. D. Waldron, General Passenger Agent of the Maine Central Railroad Co.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

## POLITICAL PLATFORMS OF CAMPAIGN OF 1884.

It has not been deemed possible in the limits of space allowed for source material in this series to present at length any of the arguments on the tariff controversy. For details of these arguments, the student is referred to Taussig, *Tariff History of the United States*, to Stanwood, *American Tariff Controversies*, and to Johnston, *American Orations*. The extracts given below present the views of the several parties upon the tariff, as well as upon some other current problems.

[The Anti-Monopoly Party declares] . . . 5. That it is the duty of the government to immediately exercise its constitutional prerogative to regulate commerce among the States. The great instruments by which this commerce is carried on are transportation, money, and the transmission of intelligence. They are now mercilessly controlled by giant monopolies, to the impoverishment of labor, the crushing out of healthful competition, and the destruction of business security. We hold it, therefore, to be the imperative and immediate duty of Congress to pass all needful laws for the control and regulation of these great agents of commerce, in accordance with the oft-repeated decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States.

6. That these monopolies, which have exacted from enterprise such heavy tribute, have also inflicted countless wrongs upon the toiling millions of the United States; and no system of reform should commend itself to the support of the people which does not protect the man who earns his bread by the sweat of his face. Bureaus of labor-statistics must be established, both State and national; arbitration take the place of brute force in the settlement of disputes between the employer and employed; the national eight-hour law be honestly enforced; the importation of foreign labor under contract be made illegal; and whatever practical reforms may be necessary for the protection of united labor must be granted to the end that unto the toiler shall be given that proportion of the profits of the thing or value created which his labor bears to the cost of production. . . . — Stanwood, *History of Presidential Elections*, p. 379.

[The National (Greenback) Party declared]

1. That we hold the late decision of the Supreme Court on the legal tender question to be a full vindication of the theory which our party has always advocated on the right and authority of Congress over the issue of legal tender notes, and we hereby pledge ourselves to uphold said decision, and to defend the Constitution against alterations or amendments intended to deprive the people of any rights or privileges conferred by that instrument. We demand the issue of such money in sufficient quantities to supply the actual demand of trade and commerce, in accordance with the increase of population and the development of our industries. We demand the substitution of greenbacks for national bank notes, and the prompt payment of the public debt. We want that money which saved our country in time of war and which has given it prosperity and happiness in peace. We condemn the retirement of the fractional currency and the small denomination of greenbacks and demand their restoration. We demand the issue of the hoards of money now locked up in the United States Treasury, by applying them to the payment of the public debt now due. . . . — *Ibid.*, p. 382. [The Supreme Court decision referred to is that in the case of *Juillard vs. Greenman*.]

[The Republican Party declared] . . . 4. It is the first duty of a good government to protect the rights and promote the interests of its own people. The largest diversity of industry is most productive of general

prosperity and of the comfort and independence of the people. We therefore demand that the imposition of duties on foreign imports shall be made, not for revenue only, but that, in raising the requisite revenues for the government, such duties shall be so levied as to afford security to our diversified industries, and protection to the rights and wages of the laborers, to the end that active and intelligent labor, as well as capital, may have its just reward, and the laboring man his full share in the national prosperity.

5. Against the so-called economical system of the Democratic party, which would degrade our labor to the foreign standard, we enter our most earnest protest. The Democratic party has failed completely to relieve the people of the burden of unnecessary taxation by a wise reduction of the surplus.

6. The Republican party pledges itself to correct the irregularities of the tariff and to reduce the surplus, not by the vicious and indiscriminate process of horizontal reduction, but by such methods as will relieve the taxpayer without injuring the laborer or the great productive interests of the country.

7. We recognize the importance of sheep husbandry in the United States, the serious depression which it is now experiencing, and the danger threatening its future prosperity; and we therefore respect the demands of the representatives of this important agricultural interest for a readjustment of duties upon foreign wool, in order that such industry shall have full and adequate protection. . . . — *Ibid.*, pp. 387-388.

. . . [The Democratic Party] pledges itself to purify the administration from corruption, to restore economy, to revive respect for law, and to reduce taxation to the lowest limit consistent with due regard to the preservation of the faith of the nation to its creditors and pensioners. Knowing full well, however, that legislation affecting the occupations of the people should be cautious and conservative in method, not in advance of public opinion, but responsive to its demands, the Democratic party is pledged to revise the tariff in a spirit of fairness to all interests. But, in making reduction in taxes, it is not proposed to injure any domestic industries, but rather to promote their healthy growth. From the foundation of this government, taxes collected at the custom houses have been the chief source of Federal revenue. Such they must continue to be. Moreover, many industries have come to rely upon legislation for successful continuation, so that any change of law must be at every step regardful of the labor and capital thus involved. The process of reform must be subject in the execution to this plain dictate of justice; all taxation shall be limited to the requirements of economical government. The necessary reduction in taxation can and must be effected without depriving American labor of the ability to compete successfully with foreign labor, and without imposing lower rates of duty than will be ample to cover any increased cost of production which may exist in consequence of the higher rate of wages prevailing in this country. Sufficient revenue to pay all the expenses of the Federal government, economically administered, including pensions, interest and principal of the public debt, can be got under our present system of taxation from custom-house taxes on fewer imported articles, bearing heaviest on articles of luxury, and bearing lightest on articles of necessity. We therefore denounce the abuses of the existing tariff; and, subject to the preceding limitations, we demand that Federal taxation shall be exclusively for public purposes, and shall not exceed the needs of the government economically administered. . . . — *Ibid.*, p. 395.



# Topic U 37. Panic and Recovery, 1892-1898.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Economic Conditions, 1890-1893. Prosperity and speculation; uncertainty about tariff; uneasiness in the west; rise of populism.
2. The Crisis of 1893.
  - a) Causes: Speculation, tariff agitation, fear of currency change to silver basis, bad crops, etc.
  - b) Characteristics of: Long duration and slow recovery; many unemployed; general fall of prices; reduction of wages.
  - c) Results: financial ruin to many; labor difficulties, as Pullman strike and Coxey's Army; repeal of purchase clause of Sherman Act; sale of bonds to keep currency on a gold basis; growth of populism and demand for free coinage of silver; antagonism between the debtor and the creditor, east and west.
3. The Chicago World's Fair, 1893. Greatest international exposition up to that time.
4. The Wilson Tariff, 1894.
  - a) Opposition to extremely high rates of McKinley Act of 1890.
  - b) Wilson Act: a considerable reduction in rates.
5. Income Tax, 1894-95.
 

Passed to make up the expected deficit under Wilson Act. In 1895 income tax declared unconstitutional because it was a direct tax and was not apportioned as constitution directed.
5. Foreign Affairs.
  - a) England and Venezuela. Cleveland's message, 1895; excitement in England and United States; Monroe Doctrine invoked; question submitted to arbitration.
  - b) Hawaii: attempts of Americans in islands to secure annexation to United States, 1893-1895; President Harrison favored; Cleveland opposed; latter restored native queen.
7. The Currency Question.
  - a) Significance of question in American history; belief that government by its power over currency could create national prosperity.
  - b) Review of greenback party.
  - c) Free Silver: What is meant by free coinage; what is meant by 16 to 1; review of silver legislation, demonetization in 1873, Bland Allison Act of 1878, Sherman Act of 1890, repeal of purchase clause, 1893.
  - d) Basis for silver movement, 1895-1900: belief that low prices injured many people, and that an issue of more money would raise prices.
8. Campaign of 1896. "Campaign of Education."
  - a) Democratic party influenced by W. J. Bryan adopts free silver, gold Democrats split off and nominate J. M. Palmer.
  - b) Republican party opposed free silver.
  - c) Populist party nominated Bryan, the Democratic candidate.
  - d) Character of campaign; danger of a new sectionalism: east against west.
  - e) Result of election: McKinley elected.
9. Return of prosperity, 1897-99. Return of business confidence; increase in production of gold; good crops.
10. Dingley Tariff Act, 1897. Raised duties on many goods; permitted reciprocity with other countries.
11. Negro Disfranchisement in the South.
12. The Country in 1897. Entering upon wider industrial and commercial activity than ever before. Unconsciously ready for wider responsibilities of the next epoch.

## REFERENCES.

- Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 501-513; Ashley, 478-495; Channing, 550-558; Hart, 527-550; James & Sanford, 477-496; Johnston-MacDonald, 480-499; McLaughlin, 520-529; McMaster, 470-476; Montgomery, 363-371; Muzzey, 552-573.
- For Collateral Reading.—Conan, *Industrial History*, 318-321, 335-341; Dewey, *Financial History*, 431-462; Elson, U. S., 878-889; Sparks, U. S., II, ch. 17-18; Stanwood, *History of Presidency*, ch. 30-31; Tausig, *Tariff History*, 284-360; Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, 289-327.
- For Topical Study.—
1. Dewey, *National Problems*, ch. 11-12; Wilson, *American People*, V, 206-216; Wright, *Industrial Evolution*, ch. 24-26.
  2. Andrews, *United States in Our Own Time*, 691-693; Wilson, V, 214-240.
  3. Andrews, ch. 21.
  4. Andrews, 693-697; Dewey, ch. 17; Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, ch. 17.
  5. Andrews, 696-697.
  6. Andrews, 700-708; Dewey, ch. 19; Wilson, V, 240-248.
  7. Andrews, ch. 26; Dewey, ch. 5, 14, 16.
  8. Andrews, ch. 26; Dewey, ch. 20; Wilson, V, 252-263.
  9. Wilson, V, 264-269.
  10. Stanwood, *Tariff Controversies*, II, ch. 18.
  11. Andrews, ch. 25.
- Source References.—Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, 526-528, 536-541; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 595-596; MacDonald, *Statutes*, 411-422.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### CLEVELAND'S VENEZUELA MESSAGE.

This message should be studied not only for the matter of which it treats and the importance of the crisis which it faced, but also for that remarkable lucidity of exposition of which President Cleveland was a master.

EXECUTIVE MANSION,  
December 17, 1895.

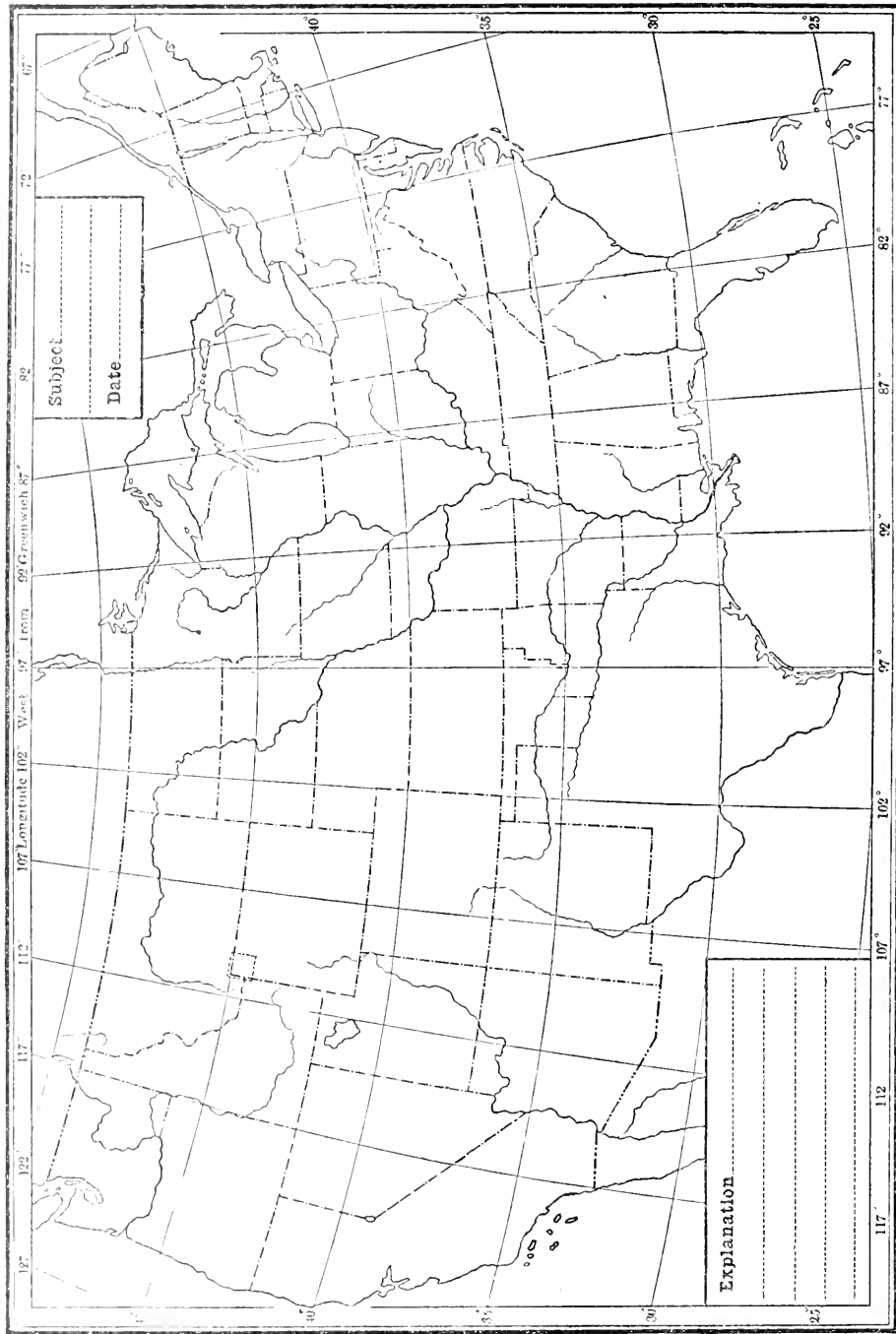
To the Congress:

In my annual message addressed to the Congress on the third instant, I called attention to the pending boundary controversy between Great Britain and the Republic of Venezuela, and recited the substance of a representation made by this Government to Her Britannic Majesty's Government, suggesting reasons why such dispute should be submitted to arbitration for settlement and inquiring whether it would be so submitted.

The answer of the British Government, which was then awaited, has since been received, and, together with the despatch to which it is a reply, is hereto appended.

Such reply is embodied in two communications addressed by the British prime minister to Sir Julian Pauncefote, the British ambassador at this capital. It will be seen that one of these communications is devoted exclusively to observations upon the Monroe doctrine, and claims that in the present instance, a new and strange extension and development of this doctrine is insisted on by the United States; that the reasons justifying an appeal to the doctrine enunciated by President Monroe, are generally inapplicable "to the state of things in which we live at the present day," and especially inapplicable to a controversy involving the boundary line between Great Britain and Venezuela.

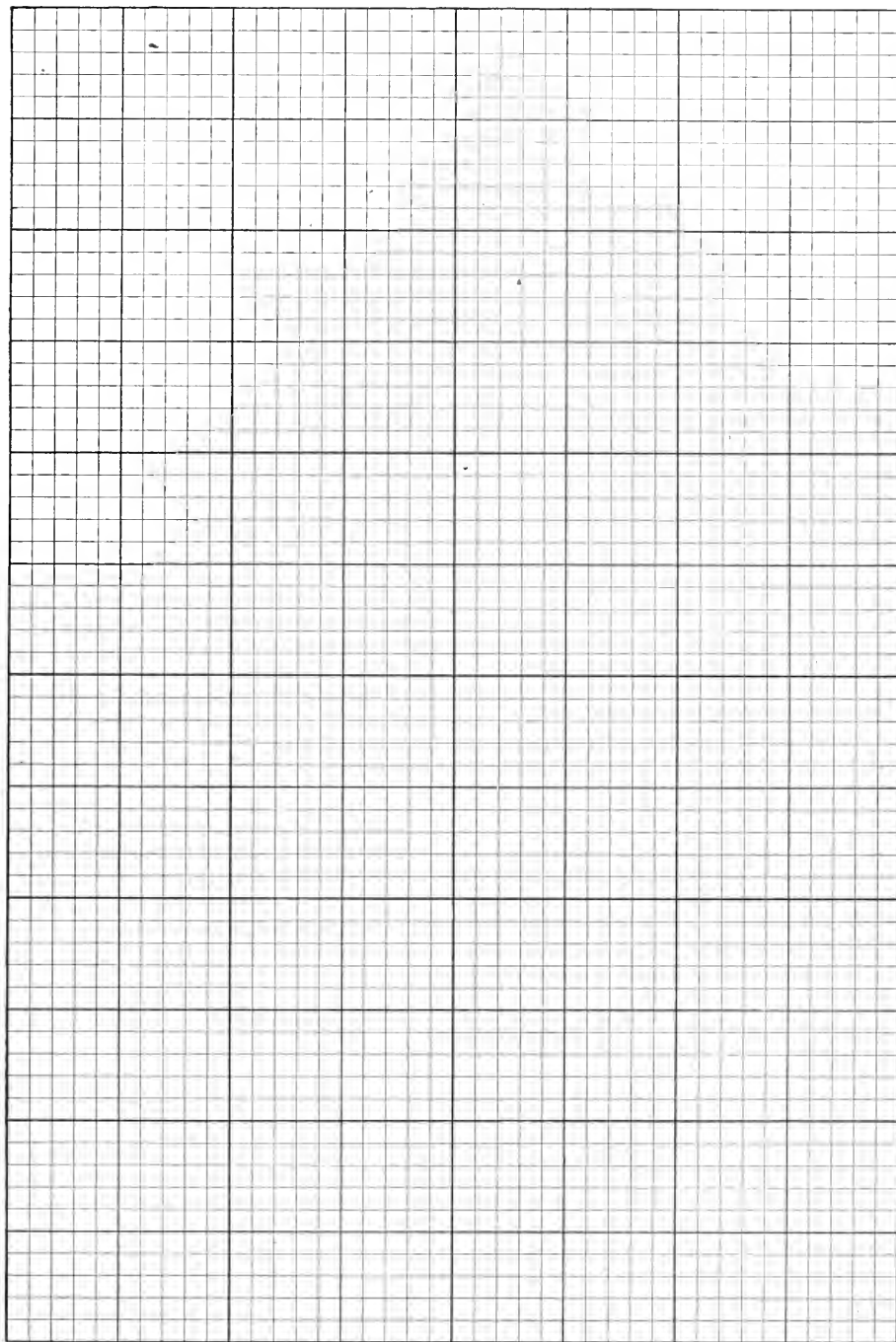
(Continued on Page 4.)



Copyright, 1900, The McKinley Publishing Co., Philadelphia, Pa.

## Map Work for Topic U 37.

Show on map the votes of the States in the election of 1896. For these figures, see *World Almanac*, or *Stanwood, History of the Presidency*.



Show graphically the decline in the value of silver, and the fall of general prices, 1870-1893. See Laughlin, *Bimetallism in the United States*, Dewey, *Financial History of United States*, etc.

## SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

Without attempting extended argument in reply to these positions, it may not be amiss to suggest that the doctrine upon which we stand is strong and sound, because its enforcement is important to our peace and safety as a nation, and is essential to the integrity of our free institutions and the tranquil maintenance of our distinctive form of government. It was intended to apply to every stage of our national life and cannot become obsolete while our Republic endures. If the balance of power is justly a cause for jealous anxiety among the governments of the Old World, and a subject for our absolute non-interference, none the less is an observance of the Monroe doctrine of vital concern to our people and their Government.

Assuming, therefore, that we may properly insist upon this doctrine without regard to "the state of things in which we live," or any changed conditions here or elsewhere, it is not apparent why its application should not be invoked in the present controversy.

If a European power, by an extension of its boundaries, takes possession of the territory of one of our neighboring Republics against its will and in derogation of its rights, it is difficult to see why to that extent such European power does not thereby attempt to extend its system of government to that portion of this continent which is thus taken. This is the precise action which President Monroe declared to be "dangerous to our peace and safety," and it can make no difference whether the European system is extended by an advance of frontier or otherwise.

It is also suggested in the British reply that we should not seek to apply the Monroe doctrine to the pending dispute, because it does not embody any principle of international law which "is founded on the general consent of nations," and that "no statesman, however eminent, and no nation, however powerful, are competent to insert into the code of international law a novel principle which was never recognized before, and which has not since been accepted by the government of any other country."

Practically the principle for which we contend has peculiar, if not exclusive relation to the United States. It may not have been admitted in so many words to the code of international law, but since in international councils every nation is entitled to the rights belonging to it, if the enforcement of the Monroe doctrine is something we may justly claim it has its place in the code of international law as certainly and as securely as if it were specifically mentioned; and when the United States is a suitor before the high tribunal that administers international law, the question to be determined is whether or not we present claims which the justice of that code of law can find to be right and valid.

The Monroe doctrine finds its recognition in those principles of international law which are based upon the theory that every nation shall have its rights protected and its just claims enforced.

Of course, this Government is entirely confident that under the sanction of this doctrine we have clear rights and undoubted claims. Nor, is this ignored in the British reply. The prime minister, while not admitting that the Monroe doctrine is applicable to present conditions, states: In declaring that the United States would resist any such enterprise if it was contemplated, President Monroe adopted a policy which received the entire sympathy of the English Government of that date.

He further declares: Though the language of President Monroe is directed to the attainment of objects which most Englishmen would agree to be salutary, it is impossible to admit that they have been inscribed by any adequate authority in the code of international law.

Again, he says: They [Her Majesty's Government] fully concur with the view which President Monroe apparently entertained, that any disturbance of the existing territorial distribution in that hemisphere by any fresh acquisitions on the part of any European State would be a highly inexpedient change.

In the belief that the doctrine for which we contend was clear and definite, that it was founded upon substantial considerations and involved our safety and welfare, that it was fully applicable to our present conditions and to the state of the world's progress, and that it was directly related to the pending controversy, and without any conviction as to the final merits of the dispute, but anxious to learn in a satisfactory and conclusive manner whether Great Britain sought under a claim of boundary to extend her possessions on this continent without right, or whether she merely sought possession of territory fairly included within her lines of ownership, this Government proposed to the Government of Great Britain a resort to arbitration as the proper means of settling the question, to the end that a vexatious boundary dispute between the two contestants might be determined and our exact standing and relation in respect to the controversy might be made clear.

It will be seen from the correspondence herewith submitted, that this proposition has been declined by the British Government upon grounds which, in the circumstances, seem to me to be far from satisfactory. It is deeply disappointing that such an appeal, actuated by the most friendly feelings toward both nations directly concerned, addressed to the sense of justice and to the magnanimity of one of the great powers of the world, and touching its relations to one comparatively weak and small, should have produced no better results.

The course to be pursued by this Government, in view of the present condition, does not appear to admit of serious doubt. Having labored faithfully for many years to induce Great Britain to submit this dispute to impartial arbitration, and having been now finally apprised of her refusal to do so, nothing remains but to accept the situation, to recognize its plain requirements and deal with it accordingly. Great Britain's present proposition has never thus far been regarded as admissible by Venezuela, though any adjustment of the boundary which that country may deem for her advantage and may enter into of her own free will cannot, of course, be objected to by the United States.

Assuming, however, that the attitude of Venezuela will remain unchanged, the dispute has reached such a stage as to make it now incumbent upon the United States to take measures to determine with sufficient certainty for its justification what is the true divisional line between the Republic of Venezuela and British Guiana. The inquiry to that end should of course be conducted carefully and judiciously, and due weight should be given to all available evidence, records and facts in support of the claims of both parties.

In order that such an examination should be prosecuted in a thorough and satisfactory manner, I suggest that the Congress make an adequate appropriation for the expenses of a commission, it to be appointed by the Executive, who shall make the necessary investigation and report upon the matter with the least possible delay. When such report is made and accepted, it will, in my opinion, be the duty of the United States to resist by every means in its power, as a willful aggression upon its rights and interests, the appropriation by Great Britain of any lands or the exercise of governmental jurisdiction over any territory which, after investigation, we have determined of right belongs to Venezuela.

In making these recommendations, I am fully alive to the responsibility incurred and keenly realize all the consequences that may follow. I am, nevertheless, firm in my conviction that while it is grievous to contemplate the two great English-speaking peoples of the world as being otherwise than friendly competitors in the onward march of civilization and strenuous and worthy rivals in all the arts of peace, there is no calamity which a great nation can invite which equals that which follows a supine submission to wrong and injustice, and the consequent loss of national self-respect and honor, beneath which are shielded and defended a people's safety and greatness.

GROVER CLEVELAND.

—Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, IX, 635.

## Topic U 38. Spanish-American War and Imperialism, 1898-1902.

### OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Causes of the Spanish-American War.
  - a) The Cuban insurrection, 1895, and Spanish attempts to subdue.
  - b) Injuries to American property and commerce.
  - c) Atrocities committed by Spain in Cuba.
  - d) Influence of Cuban sympathizers in United States, and of sensational newspapers.
  - e) Destruction of Maine, February 15, 1898.
2. Attitude of United States. Obtain justice for Cubans; restore peace; later effort to obtain autonomy for Cuba; McKinley's delay in order to obtain a peaceable settlement.
3. Recognition of Cuban Independence, Apr. 20, 1898; followed by Declaration of War against Spain, April 25, 1898.
4. The War.
  - a) Dewey's expedition to Philippines:
    - 1) Battle of Manila Bay, May 6.
    - 2) Manila taken, August 13.
  - b) Destruction of Spanish fleet in Santiago, Cuba, July 3.
  - c) Invasion of Cuba and Porto Rico.
5. Treaty of Peace.
  - a) Preliminary protocol, August 12, 1898.
  - b) McKinley's attitude toward the Philippines.
  - c) Final treaty, signed at Paris, Nov., 1898; terms:
    - 1) Independence of Cuba.
    - 2) Cession of Porto Rico, Philippines, and an island in the Ladrões (Guam) to United States.
    - 3) Payment of \$20,000,000 to Spain.
6. Results of the War.
  - a) Reversal of traditional policy and entrance of United States into world politics.
  - b) Interest of United States in problems of the Pacific and of Asia.
  - c) Annexation of other Pacific Islands: Hawaii, 1898; Tutuila (Samoa), 1899.
  - d) Necessitated permanent enlargement of army and navy, and larger appropriations for those purposes.
  - e) Introduced new problems of territorial government: management of diverse races and partly civilized people; control of the tropics.
  - f) Party divisions at home: expansionists, and anti-expansionists.
  - g) Important medical discoveries: Mosquito and yellow-fever; hookworm disease.
7. Government of New Possessions.
  - a) Hawaii: organized with a territorial government similar to the earlier continental territories.
  - b) Guam and Tutuila: in charge of naval or military officer.
  - c) Cuba: island pacified; health regulations established; constitutional convention called; constitution adopted; withdrawal of United States troops and establishment of independent government, 1902.
  - d) Porto Rico: early military government; revision of legal code; establishment of civil government under act of April 12, 1900; provisions of act.
  - e) The Philippines: character of population; revolt of natives, February, 1899, under Aguinaldo; First Philippine Commission to in-

vestigate the needs of the islands; suppression of revolt by capture of Aguinaldo, March, 1901; establishment of civil government, 1902; later acts, see Topic 39.

#### 8. Election of 1900.

- a) Parties and issues.
  - b) Election of McKinley and Roosevelt.
9. Assassination of McKinley: September, 1901; succession of Roosevelt.

### REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 511-536; Ashley, 497-512; Channing, 557-580; Hart, 551-564; James & Sanford, 497-510; Johnston-MacDonald, 503-529; McLaughlin, 328-544; McMaster, 476-486; Montgomery, 371-392; Muzzey, 575-591.

For Collateral Reading.—Dewey, *Financial History*, 463-477; Elson, U. S., 889-906; Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, 328-342.

For Topical Study.—See under several topics, Brookings and Ringwalt, *Briefs for Debate*.

1. Andrews, *United States in Our Own Time*, 799-805; Latané, *America as a World-Power*, ch. 1; McKinley, *Island Possessions*, ch. 1; Sparks, *Expansion*, ch. 35-36; Wilson, *American People*, V, 218-252.

2. Latané, ch. 1; McKinley, ch. 4.

3. Latané, ch. 1; McKinley, ch. 1.

4. Alger, *Spanish-American War*; Andrews, 805-820; Cambridge Modern History, VII, ch. 22; Latané, ch. 2-3; Lodge, *War with Spain*; McKinley, ch. 2; Roosevelt, *Rough Riders*; Wilson, V, 264-292.

5. Andrews, 820-822; Latané, ch. 4; McKinley, 53-59, 96 (full text of treaty).

6. Wilson, V, 292-300.

7. Andrews, 822-862; Latané, ch. 5, 8-10; McKinley, ch. 3, 5, 7, 9, 10; Willoughby, *Territories and Dependencies of United States*.

8. Latané, ch. 7.

Source References.—Hart, *Source Book*, 373-392; Hart, *Contemporaries*, IV, ch. 30-34; Hill, *Liberty Documents*, ch. 21; MacDonald, *Source Book*, 597-608; MacDonald, *Statutes*, 422-436.

### SOURCE-STUDY.

#### McKINLEY'S MESSAGES ON THE WAR.

The story of the Spanish-American War can be easily gained from the special messages of President McKinley and from his second annual message. Below are given extracts from these documents.

EXECUTIVE MANSION, April 11, 1898.

To the Congress of the United States:

... The grounds for such intervention [in Cuba] may be briefly summarized as follows:

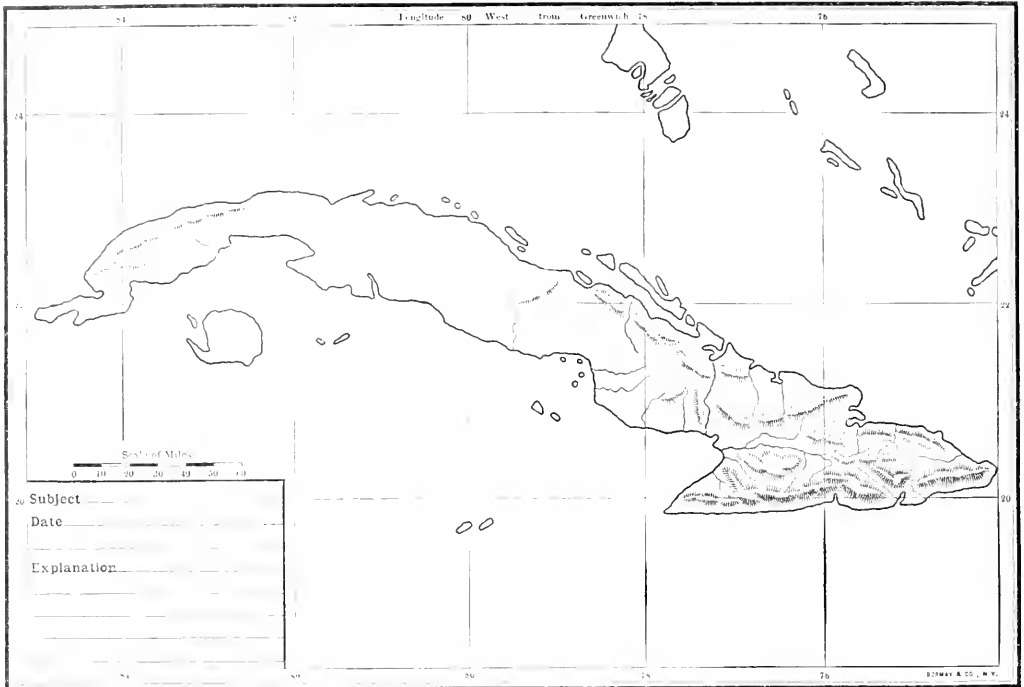
First. In the cause of humanity and to put an end to the barbarities, bloodshed, starvation, and horrible miseries now existing there, and which the parties to the conflict are either unable or unwilling to stop or mitigate. It is no answer to say this is all in another country, belonging to another nation, and is therefore none of our business. It is specially our duty, for it is right at our door.

Second. We owe it to our citizens in Cuba to afford them that protection and indemnity for life and property which no government there can or will afford, and to that end to terminate the conditions that deprive them of legal protection.

Third. The right to intervene may be justified by the very serious injury to the commerce, trade, and business of our people and by the wanton destruction of property and devastation of the island.

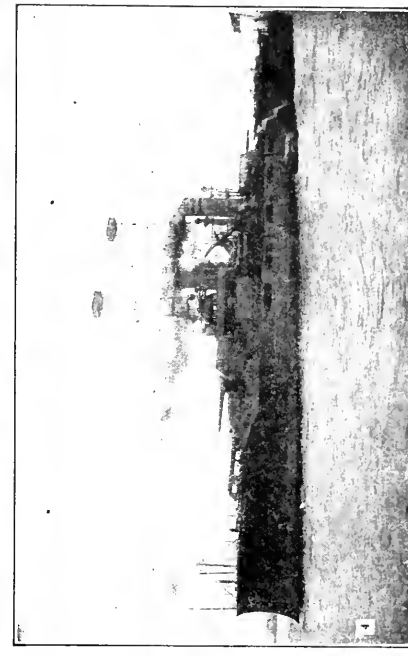
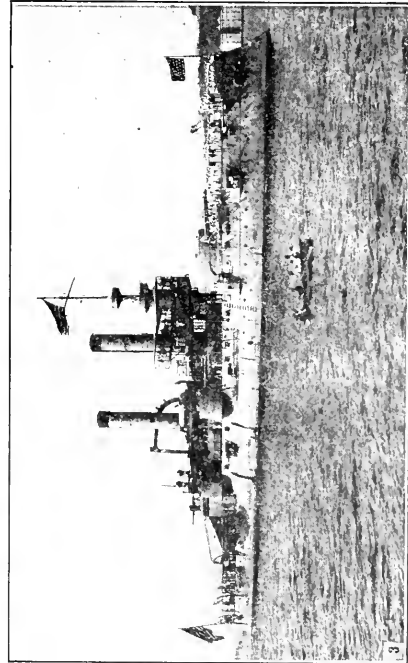
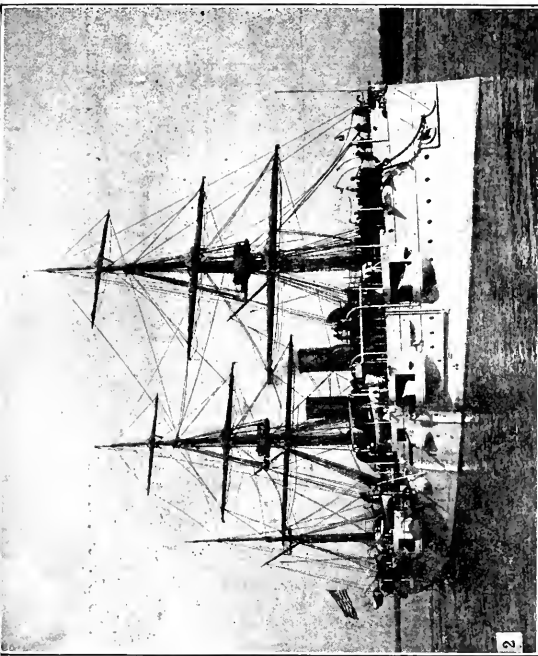
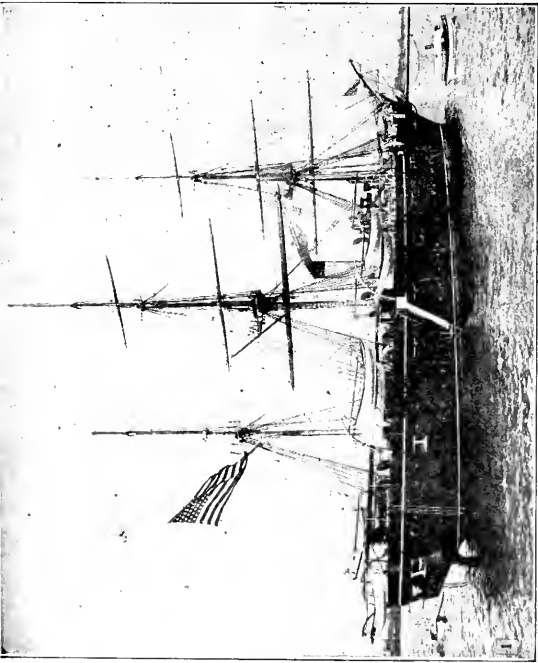
Fourth, and which is of the utmost importance. The present condition of affairs in Cuba is a constant menace to our peace and entails upon this Government an enormous

(Continued on Page 4)



## Map Work for Topic U 38.

Show the location of principal battles in Spanish-American War. Mark the names of principal islands in the Philippines.



# DEVELOPMENT OF THE UNITED STATES NAVY.

- No. 1. Farragut's flag-ship "Hartford." Note the rigging and the character and location of the guns.
- No. 2. The cruiser "Newark," before her masts were cut down. One of the first vessels of the "new navy."
- No. 3. The battleship "Oregon." Copyright, 1898, by William H. Rau.
- No. 4. The battleship "Delaware." Copyright, 1910, by William H. Rau.

# SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

mous expense. With such a conflict waged for years in an island so near us and with which our people have such trade and business relations; when the lives and liberty of our citizens are in constant danger and their property destroyed and themselves ruined; when our trading vessels are liable to seizure and are seized at our very door by war ships of a foreign nation; the expeditions of filibustering that we are powerless to prevent altogether, and the irritating questions and entanglements thus arising—all these and others that I need not mention, with the resulting strained relations, are a constant menace to our peace and compel us to keep on a semi-war footing with a nation with which we are at peace.

These elements of danger and disorder already pointed out have been strikingly illustrated by a tragic event which has deeply and justly moved the American people. I have already transmitted to Congress the report of the naval court of inquiry on the destruction of the battle ship *Maine* in the harbor of Havana during the night of the 15th of February. . . .

The only hope of relief and repose from a condition which can no longer be endured is the enforced pacification of Cuba. In the name of humanity, in the name of civilization, in behalf of endangered American interest which give us the right and the duty to speak and to act, the war in Cuba must stop.

In view of these facts and of these considerations I ask the Congress to authorize and empower the President to take measures to secure a full and final termination of hostilities between the Government of Spain and the people of Cuba, and to secure in the island the establishment of a stable government, capable of maintaining order and observing its international obligations, insuring peace and tranquility and the security of its citizens as well as our own, and to use the military and naval forces of the United States as may be necessary for these purposes. . . .

[Congress adopted resolutions on Apr. 20, 1898, in consonance with the President's recommendations. On the President's communicating the demands of the resolution to the Spanish Minister, the latter asked for his passports and withdrew.]

EXECUTIVE MANSION, WASHINGTON, April 25, 1898.

To the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America:

. . . The position of Spain being thus made known and the demands of the United States being denied, with a complete rupture of intercourse, by the act of Spain, I have been constrained, in exercise of the power and authority conferred upon me by the joint resolution aforesaid, to proclaim under date of April 22, 1898, a blockade of certain ports of the north coast of Cuba, lying between Cardenas and Bahia Honda, and of the port of Cienfuegos, on the south coast of Cuba, and further in exercise of my constitutional powers and using the authority conferred upon me by the act of Congress approved April 22, 1898, to issue my proclamation dated April 23, 1898, calling forth volunteers in order to carry into effect the said resolution of April 20, 1898. . . .

In view of the measures so taken, and with a view to the adoption of such other measures as may be necessary to enable me to carry out the expressed will of the Congress of the United States in the premises, I now recommend to your honorable body the adoption of a joint resolution declaring that a state of war exists between the United States of America and the Kingdom of Spain. . . .

[From the special message of May 9, 1898.]

On the 24th of April I directed the Secretary of the Navy to telegraph orders to Commodore George Dewey, of the United States Navy, commanding the Asiatic Squadron, then lying in the port of Hongkong, to proceed forthwith to the Philippine Islands, then to commence operations and engage the assembled Spanish fleet.

Promptly obeying that order, the United States squadron, consisting of the flagship *Olympia*, *Baltimore*, *Raleigh*, *Boston*, *Concord*, and *Petrel*, with the revenue cutter *McCulloch* as an auxiliary dispatch boat, entered the harbor of Manila at daybreak on the 1st of May and immediately engaged the entire Spanish fleet of eleven ships, which were under the protection of the fire of the land forts. After a stubborn fight, in which the enemy suffered great loss, these vessels were destroyed or completely disabled and the water battery at Cavite silenced. Of our brave officers and men not one was lost and only eight injured, and those slightly. All of our ships escaped any serious damage. . . .

[From the second annual message, Dec. 5, 1898.]

. . . By June 7 the cutting of the last Cuban cable isolated the island. Thereafter the invasion was vigorously prosecuted. On June 10, under a heavy protecting fire, a landing of 600 marines from the *Oregon*, *Marblehead*, and *Yankee* was effected in Guantanamo Bay, where it had been determined to establish a naval station.

This important and essential port was taken from the enemy, after severe fighting, by the marines, who were the first organized force of the United States to land in Cuba.

The position so won was held despite desperate attempts to dislodge our forces. By June 16 additional forces were landed and strongly intrenched. On June 22, the advance of the invading army under Major-General Shafter landed at Daiquiri, about 15 miles east of Santiago. This was accomplished under great difficulties, but with marvelous despatch. On June 23 the movement against Santiago was begun. On the 24th the first serious engagement took place, in which the First and Tenth Cavalry and the First United States Volunteer Cavalry, General Young's brigade of General Wheeler's division, participated, losing heavily. By nightfall, however, ground within 5 miles of Santiago was won. The advantage was steadily increased. On July 1 a severe battle took place, our forces gaining the outworks of Santiago; on the 2d El Caney and San Juan were taken after a desperate charge, and the investment of the city was completed. The Navy co-operated by shelling the town and the coast-forts.

On the day following this brilliant achievement of our land forces, the 3d of July, occurred the decisive naval combat of the war. The Spanish fleet, attempting to leave the harbor, was met by the American squadron under command of Commodore Sampson. In less than three hours all the Spanish ships were destroyed, the two torpedo boats being sunk and the *Maria Theresa*, *Almirante Oquendo*, *Tizcaya*, and *Cristóbal Colón* driven ashore. The Spanish admiral and over 1300 men were taken prisoners. While the enemy's loss of life was deplorably large, some 600 perishing, on our side but one man was killed on the *Brooklyn*, and one man seriously wounded. Although our ships were repeatedly struck, not one was seriously injured. . . .

The capitulation of Santiago followed. . . . —Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, X, 147-148, 150, 154-172.



# Topic U 39. Recent Economic and Political Questions, 1902-1912.

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

1. Economic Tendencies.
  - a) Growth in population; character of immigration.
  - b) Revival of prosperity, 1897-1902.
  - c) Organization of capital; tendency toward concentration; huge corporate holdings.
  - d) Many monopolies developed under franchises or by virtue of great capital.
  - e) Organization of labor; spread of unionism among new classes of workers.
  - f) Increased cost of living.
2. Political Tendencies.
  - a) Rule of political bosses; attempts to check.
  - b) The new democracy; the Wisconsin movement.
  - c) Attempt through politics to secure economic reforms.
3. The Trust Question.
  - a) Definition of trust.
  - b) Great aggregations of capital formed in 1901-1902.
  - c) The Steel Trust; railway mergers; Sugar Trust; Standard Oil Company; Beef Trust; insurance companies.
  - d) Relation of corporations to politics.
  - e) Influence of popular magazines; muck-raking.
  - f) Sherman anti-trust law of 1890.
  - g) Efforts to enforce Sherman Act, 1902-1912. Dissolution of railway mergers and of industrial combinations.
4. Conservation of Natural Resources.
  - a) Roosevelt's interest in; conference of 1908.
  - b) Forest reservations.
  - c) Irrigation appropriations.
  - d) Care in selling or leasing mineral lands.
5. Pure Food Legislation. Demand for national inspection of foods subject to interstate commerce; Act of 1907.
6. Transportation Problems.
  - a) Improvements in speed and comfort by land and sea; improvements in railway roadbed and equipment.
  - b) Railroad and steamship mergers.
  - c) Rebates and other preferences.
  - d) Elkins rebate act of 1902.
  - e) Trial of Standard Oil Company for rebating, 1907-1909.
  - f) State laws regulating railroad rates; railroad and public service commissions; two-cent fare.
  - g) Efforts to revive river and coastwise traffic; new Erie Canal; others proposed.
7. Labor Disputes. Strikes of coal miners, 1902, 1906.
8. Panama Canal.
  - a) Preceding history; Clayton-Bulwer treaty; French canal company.
  - b) American company in Nicaragua.
  - c) Hay-Pauncefote Treaty, November, 1901.
  - d) Independence of Panama, 1903.
  - e) Cession of Canal Zone to United States: \$10,000,000 to Panama; \$40,000,000 to French Company.
  - f) Engineering problems; sanitary problems.
  - g) Completion of the work.
9. Foreign Affairs.
  - a) Relations to China; Boxer Rebellion, 1901; indemnity not accepted by United States; Secretary Hay stands for the territorial in-

tegrity of China, and the "open door" for trade of all countries.

- b) American efforts to secure peace between Japan and Russia, 1905.
  - c) Alaskan Boundary settled by arbitration, 1903.
  - d) Canadian Reciprocity Treaty fails, 1911.
  - e) San Domingo: United States compelled to resort to control of custom houses in order to pay foreign debts of San Domingo, 1905.
  - f) Peace Movement. The Hague conferences, 1899, 1909; arbitration treaties.
10. Renewal of Tariff Question.
  11. Banking and Currency Reforms.
  12. Presidential Elections, 1904, 1908.
  13. Political Movements.
    - a) Conferences of Governors, 1908, 1910, etc.
    - b) Rise of Insurgents or Progressives in Republican Party; opposed to high tariff, arbitrary rule in house of representatives, political bosses, and machine politics.
    - c) Many political reform measures leading to broader popular control of government: referendum and initiative; recall of officials, particularly of judges or of their decisions; direct primaries; publicity of campaign contributions; commission form of municipal government.
    - d) Controversy between Taft and Roosevelt, 1912.
    - e) Election of 1912.

## REFERENCES.

Textbooks.—Adams & Trent, 536-557; Ashley, 512-557; Channing, 580-585; Hart, 565-586; James & Sanford, 507-526; McLaughlin, 541-556; McMaster, 486-491; Montgomery, 392-400; Muzzey, 591-626.

For Collateral Reading.—Bogart, Economic History, 400-469; Conan, Industrial History, 321-334 (commerce and shipping), 317-354 (railroads), 354-361 (trusts), 361-369 (labor), 375-413 (conservation); Elson, U. S., 906-911; Taussig, Tariff History, 361-408; Wilson, Division and Reunion, 312-357.

For Topical Study.—See Brookings and Ringwalt, Briefs or Debate.

1. Latané, America as a World Power, ch. 18.
  2. Brookings and Ringwalt, Nos. 47-57.
  6. Johnson, Elements of Transportation, ch. 15-18.
  7. Brookings and Ringwalt, Nos. 57-65.
  8. Johnson, Elements of Transportation, ch. 27; Johnson, Four Centuries of the Panama Canal; Latané, ch. 12; Sparks, National Development, ch. 13.
  9. Latané, ch. 6, 11, 14-16.
  10. Latané, ch. 13.
  11. Brookings and Ringwalt, Nos. 6-19.
- Source References.—American History Leaflets, 34; C. L. Jones, Readings on Parties and Elections.

## SOURCE-STUDY.

### CONSERVATION OF NATIONAL RESOURCES.

The first decade of the twentieth century was remarkable for a growing national consciousness of the value of the country's natural resources, and for the expression of this consciousness in the acts of voluntary societies, of state legislatures, of Congress and of the national executive. The Conference of Governors (1908) was one step toward a more secure popular control of the existing natural resources.

The Constitution of the United States thus grew in large part out of the necessity for united action in the wise use of one of our natural resources. The wise use of all of our natural resources, which are our national resources as well, is the great material question of today. I have asked you to come together now because the enormous consumption of these resources, and the threat of imminent exhaustion of some of them, due to reckless



Routes of proposed interoceanic railways and canals.

### SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

and wasteful use, once more calls for common effort, common action.

We want to take action that will prevent the advent of a woodless age, and defer as long as possible the advent of an ironless age. . . .

The steadily increasing drain on these natural resources has promoted to an extraordinary degree the complexity of our industrial and social life. Moreover, this unexampled development has had a determining effect upon the character and opinions of our people. The demand for efficiency in the great task has given us vigor, effectiveness, decision, and power, and a capacity for achievement which in its own lines has never yet been matched. So great and so rapid has been our material growth that there has been a tendency to lag behind in spiritual and moral growth; but that is not the subject upon which I speak to you today.

Disregarding for the moment the question of moral purpose, it is safe to say that the prosperity of our people depends directly on the energy and intelligence with which our natural resources are used. It is equally clear that these resources are the final basis of national power and perpetuity. Finally, it is ominously evident that these resources are in the course of rapid exhaustion.

This Nation began with the belief that its landed possessions were illimitable and capable of supporting all the people who might care to make our country their

home; but already the limit of unsettled land is in sight, and indeed but little land fitted for agriculture now remains unoccupied save what can be reclaimed by irrigation and drainage—a subject with which this Conference is partly to deal. We began with an unapproached heritage of forests; more than half of the timber is gone. We began with coal fields more extensive than those of any other nation and with iron ores regarded as inexhaustible, and many experts now declare that the end of both iron and coal is in sight.

. . . The enormous stores of mineral oil and gas are largely gone; and those Governors who have in their States cities built up by natural gas, where the natural gas has since been exhausted, can tell us something of what that means. Our natural waterways are not gone, but they have been so injured by neglect, and by the division of responsibility and utter lack of system in dealing with them, that there is less navigation on them now than there was fifty years ago. Finally, we began with soils of unexampled fertility, and we have so impoverished them by injudicious use and by failing to check erosion that their crop-producing power is diminishing instead of increasing. In a word, we have thoughtlessly, and to a large degree unnecessarily, diminished the resources upon which not only our prosperity but the prosperity of our children and our children's children must always depend. . . .

(Continued on Page 1)

# THE ATLANTIC AND PACIFIC JUNCTION COMPANY.

1

(NAVIGATION THROUGH THE ISTHMUS OF DARIEN  
WITHOUT LOCKS.)

(Provisionally Registered.)

To be Incorporated by Royal Charter or Act of Parliament, limiting  
the liability of the Shareholders.

Capital, Fifteen Million Pounds Sterling, in 150,000  
Shares of £100 each.

DEPOSIT 10% PER SHARE, WITHOUT FURTHER LIABILITY  
Being the Amount limited by the Act 7th & 8th Vic., cap. 110.

## Provisional Directors.

Chairman.—THE RIGHT HONOURABLE LORD WHARFCLIFFE

Deputy-Chairman.—JOHN PENBERTON KEYWOOD, Esq.

J. S. BROWNIGG, Esq., Governor of the Australian Agricultural  
Company.

CHARLES BROWNELL, Esq., Liverpool.

THOMAS R. CRAMPTON, Esq., 2, Kensington Square.

EDWARD CROPPER, Esq., Liverpool.

J. C. EWART, Esq., Liverpool.

G. D'OLIER GOWAN, Esq., Copthall Court.

W. J. HAMILTON, Esq., Chesham Place.

LEWIS H. HARLEWOOD, Esq., Highgate.

T. H. HOPE, Esq., Piccadilly.

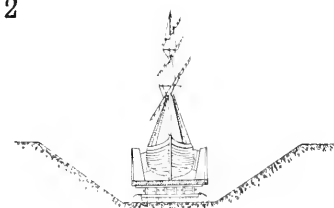
HUGH HORNBY, Esq., Chairman of the Chamber of Commerce of  
Liverpool.

ADMIRAL C. R. MOORHOM, R.N., Highfield, Birmingham.

CAPTAIN MACKINNON, R.N., 4, Hyde Park Place.

A. MONTEVO, Esq., Consul General for New Grenada.

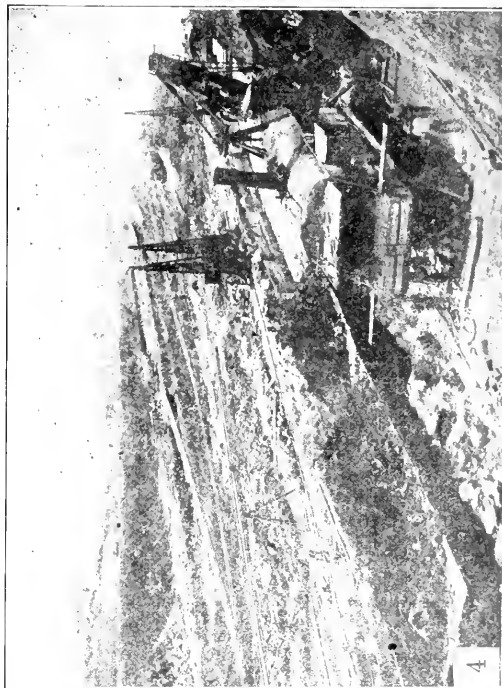
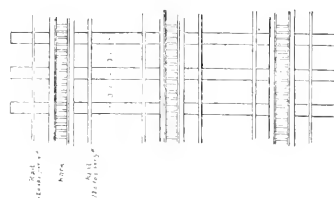
CROSS SECTION OF CHITING



CROSS SECTION OF PERMANENT WAY



PLAN OF PERMANENT WAY



## THE INTEROCEANIC CANAL.

No. 1. Prospectus of an English Company for an isthmian canal without locks, 1852.

No. 2. Proposed Honduras Interoceanic Ship Railway, 1865.

No. 3. View of the French workings on the Panama Canal, showing laborious way of loading cars by hand and wheel-barrow.

No. 4. View of the American workings (1907) near the same spot as picture 3, showing use of steam-shovel, etc.

### SOURCE-STUDY.—Continued.

Just let me interject one word as to a particular type of folly of which it ought not to be necessary to speak. We stop wasteful cutting of timber; that of course makes a slight shortage at the moment. To avoid that slight shortage at the moment, there are certain people so foolish that they will incur absolute shortage in the future, and they are willing to stop all attempts to conserve the forests, because of course by wastefully using them at the moment we can for a year or two provide against any lack of wood. That is like providing for the farmer's family to live sumptuously on the flesh of the milch cow. Any farmer can live pretty well for a year if he is content not to live at all the year after. . . .—Theodore Roosevelt, *Address to the Conference of Governors*, May 13, 1908; 60th Cong., 2nd Sess., House Documents, No. 1425.

The first of all considerations is the permanent welfare of our people; and true moral welfare, the highest form of welfare, can not permanently exist save on a firm and lasting foundation of material well-being. . . .

The policy of conservation is perhaps the most typical example of the general policies which this Government has made peculiarly its own during the opening years of the present century. The function of our Government is to insure to all its citizens, now and hereafter, their rights to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. If we of this generation destroy the resources from which our children would otherwise derive their livelihood, we reduce the capacity of our land to support a population, and so either degrade the standard of living or deprive the coming generations of their right to life on this continent. If we allow great industrial organizations to exercise unregulated control of the means of production and the necessities of life, we deprive the Americans of today and of the future of industrial liberty, a right no less precious and vital than political freedom. Industrial liberty was a fruit of political liberty, and in turn has become one of its chief supports, and exactly as we stand for political democracy so we must stand for industrial democracy.

The rights to life and liberty are fundamental, and like other fundamental necessities, when once acquired, they are little dwelt upon. The right to the pursuit of happiness is the right whose presence or absence is most likely to be felt in daily life. . . . The freedom of the individual should be limited only by the present and future rights, interests, and needs of the other individuals who make up the community. . . . The man who serves the community greatly should be greatly rewarded by the community; as there is great inequality of service, so there must be great inequality of reward; but no man and no set of men should be allowed to play the game of competition with loaded dice. . . .

The unchecked existence of monopoly is incompatible with equality of opportunity. The reason for the exercise of government control over great monopolies is to equalize opportunity. . . .

Our public-land policy has for its aim the use of the public land so that it will promote local development by

the settlement of home-makers; the policy we champion is to serve all the people legitimately and openly, instead of permitting the lands to be converted illegitimately and under cover, to the private benefit of a few. Our forest policy was established so that we might use the public forests for the permanent public good, instead of merely for temporary private gain. The reclamation act, under which the desert parts of the public domain are converted to higher uses for the general benefit, was passed so that more Americans might have homes on the land. . . .

The enactment of a pure-food law was a recognition of the fact that the public welfare outweighs the right to private gain, and that no man may poison the people for his private profit. The employers' liability bill recognized the controlling fact that while the employer usually has at stake no more than his profit, the stake of the employee is a living for himself and his family.

We are building the Panama Canal; and this means that we are engaged in the giant engineering feat of all time. We are striving to add in all ways to the habitability and beauty of our country. We are striving to hold in the public hands the remaining supply of unappropriated coal, for the protection and benefit of all the people. We have taken the first steps toward the conservation of our natural resources, and the betterment of country life, and the improvement of our waterways. We stand for the right of every child to a childhood free from grinding toil, and to an education; for the civic responsibility and decency of every citizen; for prudent foresight in public matters, and for fair play in every relation of our national and economic life. In international matters we apply a system of diplomacy which puts the obligations of international morality on a level with those that govern the actions of an honest gentleman in dealing with his fellow-men. Within our own border we stand for truth and honesty in public and private life, and war sternly against wrongdoers of every grade. All these attempts are integral parts of the same attempt, the attempt to en throne justice and righteousness, to secure freedom of opportunity to all of our citizens, now and hereafter, and to set the ultimate interest of all of us above the temporary interest of any individual, class, or group.

The nation, its government, and its resources exist, first of all, for the American citizen, whatever his creed, race, or birthplace, whether he be rich or poor, educated or ignorant, provided only that he is a good citizen, recognizing his obligations to the nation for the rights and opportunities which he owes to the nation.

. . . The application of common sense to common problems for the common good, under the guidance of the principles upon which this republic was based, and by virtue of which it exists, spells perpetuity for the nation, civil and industrial liberty for its citizens, and freedom of opportunity in the pursuit of happiness for the plain American, for whom this nation was founded, by whom it was preserved, and through whom alone it can be perpetuated. . . .—Theodore Roosevelt, *Special Message Transmitting the Report of the National Conservation Commission*, 60th Cong., 2nd Sess., Senate Doc. No. 676, pp. 3-6.

# Topic U 161. The Articles of Confederation

## OUTLINE OF TOPIC.

Proposed Articles of Confederation were debated in Congress from July 12, 1776, till November 15, 1777, when they were finally agreed to. Two days later they were submitted to the states. The first ratifications by the states were on July 9, 1778; the last one on March 1, 1781, when Maryland completed the unanimous consent necessary to put the Articles in operation.

*"Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union, between the States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.*

ARTICLE 1. The stile of this confederacy shall be "The United States of America."

ARTICLE 2. Each State retains its sovereignty, freedom and independence, and every power, jurisdiction, and right, which is not by this confederation expressly delegated to the United States, in Congress assembled.

ARTICLE 3. The said States hereby severally enter into a firm league of friendship with each other for their common defence, the security of their liberties and their mutual and general welfare; binding themselves to assist each other against all force offered to, or attacks made upon them, or any of them, on account of religion, sovereignty, trade, or any other pretence whatever.

ARTICLE 4. The better to secure and perpetuate mutual friendship and intercourse among the people of the different States in this union, the free inhabitants of each of these states, paupers, vagabonds, and fugitives from justice excepted, shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of free citizens in the several states; and the people of each State shall have free ingress and regress to and from any other State, and shall enjoy therein all the privileges of trade and commerce, subject to the same duties, impositions, and restrictions, as the inhabitants thereof respectively; provided, that such restrictions shall not extend so far as to prevent the removal of property, imported into any State, to any other State of which the owner is an inhabitant; provided also, that no imposition, duties, or restriction, shall be laid by any State on the property of the United States, or either of them.

If any person guilty of, or charged with treason, felony, or other high misdemeanor in any State, shall flee from justice and be found in any of the United States, he shall, upon demand of the governor or executive power, of the State from which he fled, be delivered up and removed to the State having jurisdiction of his offence.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each of these states to the records, acts, and judicial proceedings of the courts and magistrates of every other State.

ARTICLE 5. For the more convenient management of

the general interests of the United States, delegates shall be annually appointed in such manner as the legislature of each State shall direct, to meet in Congress on the 1st Monday in November in every year, with a power reserved to each State, to recall its delegates, or any of them, at any time within the year, and to send others in their stead for the remainder of the year.

No State shall be represented in Congress by less than two, nor by more than seven members; and no person shall be capable of being a delegate for more than three years in any term of six years; nor shall any person, being a delegate, be capable of holding any office under the United States, for which he, or any other for his benefit, receives any salary, fees, or emolument of any kind.

Each State shall maintain its own delegates in a meeting of the states, and while they act as members of the committee of the states.

In determining questions in the United States, in Congress assembled, each State shall have one vote.

Freedom of speech and debate in Congress shall not be impeached or questioned in any court or place out of Congress; and the members of Congress shall be protected in their persons from arrests and imprisonments, during the time of their going to and from, and attendance on Congress, *except for treason, felony, or breach of the peace.*

ARTICLE 6. No State, without the consent of the United States, in Congress assembled, shall send any embassy to, or receive any embassy from, or enter into any conference, agreement, alliance, or treaty with any king, prince, or state; nor shall any person, holding any office of profit or trust under the United States, or any of them, accept of any present, emolument, office or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state; nor shall the United States, in Congress assembled, or any of them, grant any title of nobility.

No two or more states shall enter into any treaty, confederation, or alliance, whatever, between them, without the consent of the United States, in Congress assembled, specifying accurately the purposes for which the same is to be entered into, and how long it shall continue.

No state shall lay any imposts or duties which may interfere with any stipulations in treaties entered into by the United States, in Congress assembled, with any king, prince, or state, in pursuance of any treaties already proposed by Congress to the courts of France and Spain.

No vessels of war shall be kept up in time of peace by any State, except such number only as shall be deemed necessary by the United States, in Congress assembled, for the defence of such State or its trade; nor shall any body of forces be kept up by any State, in time of peace, except such number only as, in the judgment of the United States, in Congress assembled, shall be deemed requisite to garrison the forts necessary for the

defence of such State; but every State shall always keep up a well regulated and disciplined militia, sufficiently armed and accoutred, and shall provide, and constantly have ready for use, in public stores, a due number of field pieces and tents, and a proper quantity of arms, ammunition and camp equipage.

No State shall engage in any war without the consent of the United States, in Congress assembled, unless such State be actually invaded by enemies, or shall have received certain advice of a resolution being formed by some nation of Indians to invade such State, and the danger is so imminent as not to admit of a delay till the United States, in Congress assembled, can be consulted: nor shall any State grant commissions to any ships or vessels of war, nor letters of marque or reprisal, except it be after a declaration of war by the United States, in Congress assembled, and then only against the kingdom or state, and the subjects thereof, against which war has been so declared, and under such regulations as shall be established by the United States, in Congress assembled, unless such State be infested by pirates, in which case vessels of war may be fitted out for that occasion, and kept so long as the danger shall continue, or until the United States, in Congress assembled, shall determine otherwise.

ARTICLE 7. When land forces are raised by any State for the common defence, all officers of or under the rank of colonel, shall be appointed by the legislature of each State respectively, by whom such forces shall be raised, or in such manner as such State shall direct; and all vacancies shall be filled up by the State which first made the appointment.

ARTICLE 8. All charges of war and all other expenses, that shall be incurred for the common defence or general welfare, and allowed by the United States, in Congress assembled, shall be defrayed out of a common treasury, which shall be supplied by the several states, in proportion to the value of all land within each State, granted to or surveyed for any person, as such land and the buildings and improvements thereon shall be estimated according to such mode as the United States, in Congress assembled, shall from time to time, direct and appoint.

The taxes for paying that proportion shall be laid and levied by the authority and direction of the legislatures of the several states, within the time agreed upon by the United States, in Congress assembled.

ARTICLE 9. The United States, in Congress assembled, shall have the sole and exclusive right and power of determining on peace and war, except in the cases mentioned in the 6th article; of sending and receiving ambassadors; entering into treaties and alliances, provided that no treaty of commerce shall be made, whereby the legislative power of the respective states shall be restrained from imposing such imposts and duties on foreigners as their own people are subjected to, or from prohibiting the exportation or importation of any species

of goods or commodities whatsoever; of establishing rules for deciding, in all cases, what captures on land or water shall be legal, and in what manner prizes, taken by land or naval forces in the service of the United States, shall be divided or appropriated; of granting letters of marque and reprisal in times of peace; appointing courts for the trial of piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and establishing courts for receiving and determining, finally, appeals in all cases of captures; provided, that no member of Congress shall be appointed a judge of any of the said courts.

The United States, in Congress assembled, shall also be the last resort on appeal in all disputes and differences now subsisting, or that hereafter may arise between two or more states concerning boundary, jurisdiction or any other cause whatever; which authority shall always be exercised in the manner following: whenever the legislative or executive authority, or lawful agent of any State, in controversy with another, shall present a petition to Congress, stating the matter in question, and praying for a hearing, notice thereof shall be given, by order of Congress, to the legislative or executive authority of the other State in controversy, and a day assigned for the appearance of the parties by their lawful agents, who shall then be directed to appoint, by joint consent, commissioners or judges to constitute a court for hearing and determining the matter in question; but if they cannot agree, Congress shall name three persons out of each of the United States, and from the list of such persons each party shall alternately strike out one, the petitioners beginning, until the number shall be reduced to thirteen; and from that number not less than seven, nor more than nine names, as Congress shall direct, shall, in the presence of Congress, be drawn out by lot, and the persons whose names shall be so drawn, or any five of them, shall be commissioners or judges to hear and finally determine the controversy, so always as a major part of the judges who shall hear the cause shall agree in the determination; and if either party shall neglect to attend at the day appointed, without showing reasons which Congress shall judge sufficient, or, being present, shall refuse to strike, the Congress shall proceed to nominate three persons out of each State, and the Secretary of Congress shall strike in behalf of such party absent or refusing; and the judgment and sentence of the court to be appointed, in the manner before prescribed, shall be final and conclusive; and if any of the parties shall refuse to submit to the authority of such court, or to appear or defend their claim or cause, the court shall nevertheless proceed to pronounce sentence or judgment, which shall, in like manner, be final and decisive, the judgment or sentence and other proceedings being, in either case transmitted to Congress, and lodged among the acts of Congress for the security of the parties concerned: provided, that every commissioner, before he sits in judgment, shall take an oath, to be administered by one of the judges of the supreme or superior court of the State where the cause

shall be tried, "well and truly to hear and determine the matter in question, according to the best of his judgment, without favour, affection, or hope of reward:" provided, also, that no State shall be deprived of territory for the benefit of the United States.

All controversies concerning the private right of soil, claimed under different grants of two or more states, whose jurisdiction, as they may respect such lands and the states which passed such grants, are adjusted, the said grants, or either of them, being at the same time claimed to have originated antecedent to such settlement of jurisdiction, shall, on the petition of either party to the Congress of the United States, be finally determined, as near as may be, in the same manner as is before prescribed for deciding disputes respecting territorial jurisdiction between different States.

The United States, in Congress assembled, shall also have the sole and exclusive right and power of regulating the alloy and value of coin struck by their own authority, or by that of the respective states; fixing the standard of weights and measures throughout the United States; regulating the trade and managing all affairs with the Indians not members of any of the states; provided that the legislative right of any State within its own limits be not infringed or violated; establishing and regulating post offices from one State to another throughout all the United States, and exacting such postage on the papers passing through the same as may be requisite to defray the expenses of the said office; appointing all officers of the land forces in the service of the United States, excepting regimental officers; appointing all the officers of the naval forces, and commissioning all officers whatever in the service of the United States; making rules for the government and regulation of the said land and naval forces and directing their operations.

The United States, in Congress assembled, shall have authority to appoint a committee to sit in the recess of Congress, to be denominated "a Committee of the States," and to consist of one delegate from each State, and to appoint such other committees and civil officers as may be necessary for managing the general affairs of the United States, under their direction; to appoint one of their number to preside, provided that no person be allowed to serve in the office of president more than one year in any term of three years; to ascertain the necessary sums of money to be raised for the service of the United States, and to appropriate and apply the same for defraying the public expenses; to borrow money or emit bills on the credit of the United States, transmitting, every half year, to the respective states, an account of the sums of money so borrowed or emitted; to build and equip a navy; to agree upon the number of land forces, and to make requisitions from each State for its quota, in proportion to the number of white inhabitants in such State; which requisitions shall be binding; and thereupon, the legislature of each State shall appoint the regimental officers, raise the men, and cloathe, arm, and

equip them in a soldier-like manner, at the expence of the United States; and the officers and men so clothed, armed, and equipped, shall march to the place appointed and within the time agreed on by the United States, in Congress assembled; but if the United States, in Congress assembled, shall, on consideration of circumstances, judge proper that any State should not raise men, or should raise a smaller number than its quota, and that any other State should raise a greater number of men than the quota thereof, such extra number shall be raised, officered, clothed, armed, and equipped in the same manner as the quota of such State, unless the legislature of such State shall judge that such extra number cannot be safely spared out of the same, in which case they shall raise, officer, cloathe, arm, and equip as many of such extra number as they judge can be safely spared. And the officers and men so clothed, armed, and equipped, shall march to the place appointed and within the time agreed on by the United States, in Congress assembled.

The United States, in Congress assembled, shall never engage in a war, nor grant letters of marque and reprisal in time of peace, nor enter into any treaties or alliances, nor coin money, nor regulate the value thereof, nor ascertain the sums and expences necessary for the defence and welfare of the United States, or any of them: nor emit bills, nor borrow money on the credit of the United States, nor appropriate money, nor agree upon the number of vessels of war to be built or purchased, or the number of land or sea forces to be raised, nor appoint a commander in chief of the army or navy, unless nine States assent to the same; nor shall a question on any other point, except for adjourning from day to day, be determined, unless by the votes of a majority of the United States, in Congress assembled.

The Congress of the United States shall have power to adjourn to any time within the year, and to any place within the United States, so that no period of adjournment be for a longer duration than the space of six months, and shall publish the journal of their proceedings monthly, except such parts thereof, relating to treaties, alliances or military operations, as, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the delegates of each State on any question shall be entered on the journal, when it is desired by any delegate; and the delegates of a State, or any of them, at his, or their request, shall be furnished with a transcript of the said journal, except such parts as are above excepted, to lay before the legislatures of the several states.

ARTICLE 10. The committee of the states, or any nine of them, shall be authorized to execute, in the recess of Congress, such of the powers of Congress as the United States, in Congress assembled, by the consent of nine states, shall, from time to time, think expedient to vest them with; provided, that no power be delegated to the said committee, for the exercise of which, by the articles of confederation, the voice of nine states, in the Congress of the United States assembled, is requisite.

ARTICLE 11. Canada acceding to this confederation, and joining in the measures of the United States, shall be admitted into and entitled to all the advantages of this union; but no other colony shall be admitted into the same, unless such admission be agreed to by nine states.

ARTICLE 12. All bills of credit, emitted, monies borrowed and debts contracted by, or under the authority of Congress before the assembling of the United States, in pursuance of the present confederation, shall be deemed and considered as a charge against the United States, for payment and satisfaction whereof the said United States and the public faith are hereby solemnly pledged.

ARTICLE 13. Every State shall abide by the determinations of the United States, in Congress assembled, on

all questions which, by this confederation, are submitted to them. And the articles of this confederation shall be inviolably observed by every State, and the union shall be perpetual; nor shall any alteration at any time hereafter be made in any of them, unless such alteration be agreed to in a Congress of the United States, and be afterwards confirmed by the legislatures of every State.

These articles shall be proposed to the legislatures of all the United States, to be considered, and if approved of by them, they are advised to authorize their delegates to ratify the same in the Congress of the United States; which being done, the same shall become conclusive.—*Journals of the Continental Congress* (Lib. of Cong. ed.), Vol. IX, pp. 907-925.



# Topic U 162. The Constitution of the United States.

WE THE PEOPLE of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common defence, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I.

SECTION 1. All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of twenty-five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other Persons. The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, and but each State shall have at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to chuse three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall chuse their Speaker and other Officers; and shall have the sole Power of Impeachment.

SECTION 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one third may be chosen every second Year; and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.

No Person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall chuse their other Officers, and also a President pro tempore, in the Absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two thirds of the Members present.

Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from Office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any Office of honor, Trust or Profit under the United States; but the Party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial, Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.

SECTION 4. The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed

in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the Places of chusing Senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

SECTION 5. Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behavior, and, with the Concurrence of two thirds, expel a Member.

Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the Journal.

Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the Emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his Continuance in Office.

SECTION 7. All Bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States; If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the Objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of both Houses shall be determined by Yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each House respectively. If any Bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same shall be a Law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.

Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the Same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

SECTION 8. The Congress shall have Power To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow Money on the Credit of the United States; To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;

To establish a uniform Rule of Naturalization, and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;

To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and current Coin of the United States;

To establish Post Offices and post Roads;

To promote the Progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries;

To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;

To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations;

To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;

To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;

To provide and maintain a Navy;

To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the Land and naval Forces;

To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings:—And

To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

SECTION 9. The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or Duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.

The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

No Capitation, or other direct Tax, shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another; nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.

No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States; And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.

SECTION 10. No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

No State shall, without the Consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection Laws; and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Control of the Congress.

No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of Delay.

## ARTICLE II.

SECTION 1. The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows.

Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole Number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two Persons, of whom one at least shall not be an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such Majority and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately chuse by Ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner chuse the President. But in chusing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote. A quorum for this Purpose shall consist of a Number or Members from two-thirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the person having the greatest Number of Votes of the Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall chuse from them by Ballot the Vice-President.

The Congress may determine the Time of chusing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No Person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation, or Inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION 2. The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any Subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for,

\* This paragraph was superseded by the 12th Article of the amendments.

and which shall be established by Law: but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

SECTION 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the Officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

#### ARTICLE III.

SECTION 1. The judicial Power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services, a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

SECTION 2. The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority;—to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls;—to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction;—to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party;—to Controversies between two or more States;—between a State and Citizens of another State;—between Citizens of different States;—between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

SECTION 3. Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attained.

#### ARTICLE IV.

SECTION 1. Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

SECTION 2. The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.

SECTION 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or Parts of

States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion; and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic Violence.

#### ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either Case, shall be valid to all Intents and Purposes, as Part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year One thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.

#### ARTICLE VI.

All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the Authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a Qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.

#### ARTICLE VII.

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same.

### ARTICLES IN ADDITION TO, AND AMENDMENT OF, THE CONSTITUTION.

#### ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no Law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

#### ARTICLE II.

A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

#### ARTICLE III.

No Soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by Law.

#### ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

#### ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or in public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or

limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

#### ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

#### ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

#### ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

#### ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

#### ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.\*

#### ARTICLE XI.

The Judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.†

#### ARTICLE XII.

The Electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate:—The President of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted:—The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the Presi-

dent. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.‡ But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.†

#### ARTICLE XIII.

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.§

#### ARTICLE XIV.

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION 2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the Executive and Judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such States, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion, or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SECTION 3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.¶¶

#### ARTICLE XV.

SECTION 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.‡‡

—Revised Statutes of the United States, 17-32.

\* The first ten amendments went into effect Nov. 3, 1791.

† In effect Jan. 8, 1793.

‡ In effect Sept. 25, 1864.

§ In effect Dec. 13, 1865.

¶ In effect July 28, 1868.

¶¶ In effect March 30, 1870.

# McKINLEY SERIES OF AIDS TO THE STUDY AND TEACHING OF HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY.

---

**McKINLEY'S ILLUSTRATED HISTORICAL TOPICS.** These topics contain a collection of illustrative material for history classes. The fields of history are divided into sub-topics, for each of which is given an outline or syllabus, references to collateral reading, illustrative pictures, an outline map, and source material. The most satisfactory means for enlivening history.

**McKINLEY'S DESK OUTLINE MAPS.** For classes in history and geography. Several hundred maps are now included in the series; there are three different sizes, and maps with varying amount of detail for various uses.

**McKINLEY'S OUTLINE ATLASES AND NOTEBOOKS FOR HISTORY CLASSES.** These consist of bound outline maps arranged for several fields of history, with or without blank leaves for notes.

**McKINLEY'S WALL OUTLINE MAPS.** A series of large wall outline maps, printed on a strong paper of neutral tint. Designed for depicting in class facts of geographical or historical importance.

**McKINLEY'S CROSS-RULED COÖRDINATE PAPER, WALL SIZE.** This is a cross-ruled paper, size 32 by 48 inches, for use in depicting statistical facts by lines and curves.

---

**McKinley Publishing Co.,**  
1619-1621 Ranstead Street,       -       -       -       Philadelphia, Pa.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 448 920 7